

*28d*

A

7

NEW SET  
OF  
EXERCISES  
Upon the VARIOUS PARTS of  
FRENCH SPEECH,

Calculated for the USE of such  
As are desirous of making FRENCH without the  
Help of any Grammar or Dictionary whatever.

---

By THOMAS DELETANVILLE,  
Teacher of the French and Latin Languages.

---

---

LONDON,  
Printed for J. Nourse, at the Lamb, against  
Katherine Street in the Strand.

---

M DCC LVIII.



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in cooperation with the British Library  
and the University of Michigan

---

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in cooperation with the British Library  
and the University of Michigan

---

16 OCTOBER

Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in cooperation with the British Library  
and the University of Michigan

MDCCCLXII

# P R E F A C E

**T**HIS book may be considered as a Practical Grammar, comprehending the Principles of the French Language, and a new set of Exercises adapted to them. Each part of speech being separately treated of therein, its formation is first shewn; then it's use and the the order in which it is to be ranged are pointed out; afterwards the whole is exemplified in short sentences; and lastly English exercises are printed in one column, in order to be translated into French according to the rules that are before laid down, with a Dictionary in the other, containing the French for those Exercises and explaining the nature of every word.

The Noun claiming the first place in speech is treated of first; and Rules are laid down to shew in what instances it is preceded by our first article, and in what by any of the other three.

Throughout, the Learner's understanding is never anticipated, nor is he supposed to be acquainted with any part of speech, till it has been explained to him.

Adjectives in English being placed before their nouns are attended with no difficulty in that language. But not so in the French, where some precede their nouns; some follow them; and some may indifferently be placed either before or after them. Were children to learn French, where no other language is spoken, they would soon know by practice in what order each adjective should be placed. But in an English school, where they have seldom an opportunity of conversing with their French teachers, and are left to speak only among themselves, it is impossible they should know the proper arrangement of adjectives without some rules to guide them. Such they will here find, which, with the exercises adapted to them,

## P R E F A C E.

them, will make them surmount that difficulty.

The tables of the French Pronouns, shew how those parts of speech are to be formed; and with what particles they are to be declined. As to the difficulties which foreigners find in placing them, they will soon vanish before any one that will take the trouble to read the rules that are laid down, and make the exercises joined to those rules.

Next follow the French verbs, the compounds of which are shewn to be easily formed with the two auxiliary verbs, and the single tenses are conjugated, according to the scheme of the celebrated *Abbé Girard*; which is so short that it may be learned in two or three hours; so plain, that it is not above the capacity of children; and so complete, that any one by the help of it may conjugate any French verb whatever.

Learners having been hitherto misled in relation to the order in which the French Adverbs are to be placed, it has been thought necessary to be very particular on that head. And no less so, on the French Prepositions and Conjunctions, which answering sometimes to one, sometimes to

vi P R E F A C E.

two or more English prepositions and conjunctions, and being sometimes englified otherwise than by prepositions and conjunctions, might puzzle the learner, if they were not fully explained.

Interjections, as they express a sudden passion common to all men, are much the same in all languages, and require little to be said of them.

Throughout, no Rule is laid down without being accompanied with some Exercises upon it, consisting generally of Moral Sentences; by which means children, at the same time that they learn the Rudiments of the French Language, imbibe the principles of virtue, and the properest maxims for the conduct of life.

The Exercises at the end of the book the reader will see are taken out of the Old and New Testament, and are designed for the use of those who have gone through the former part of the book.

Every exercise or set of exercises has a Dictionary peculiar to it, in which a repetition of the same word, being needless, seldom occurs. The

P R E F A C E . . . . . vii

Dictionaries do not often contain the Pronouns, because these parts of speech may be found in the Tables.

When Verbs Passive or Participles Passive make part of a sentence, instead of setting them down in the Dictionary, the Verbs Active, to which they belong, are only inserted therein, as being sufficient to make them known.



An

An explanation of the chief abbreviations made  
use of in this work.

Art.	Article.
n. m.	noun masculine.
n. f.	noun feminine.
n. m. plur.	noun masculine plural.
n. f. plur.	noun feminine plural.
adj.	adjective.
adj. und.	adjective undeclined.
adj. plur.	adjective plural.
pron.	pronoun.
pron. nom.	pronoun nominal.
pron. adj.	pronoun adjective.
pron. plur.	pronoun plural.
pron. conj.	pronoun-conjunctive.
v. aux.	verb auxiliary.
v. 1.	verb of the first conjugation.
v. 2.	verb of the second conjugation.
v. 3.	verb of the third conjugation.
v. 4.	verb of the fourth conjugation.
v. 5.	verb of the fifth conjugation.
v. 6.	verb of the sixth conjugation.
v. 1. 2. &c.	verbs of the first and second conjugation, &c.
v. 1. 1. &c.	verbs of the first conjugation, &c.
v. p.	verb passive.
p. P.	participle passive.
adv.	adverb.
prep.	preposition.
conj.	conjunction.
v.1. prep. & n.m. &c.	verb of the first conjugation, preposition and noun masculine, &c.

To form an Adjective excepted from the general rules, you need only add the letter or letters placed after the comma to those that come before it; for instance, when you find *bon, ne* good, in the Dictionary, or any where else, add *ne* to *bon*, and you will have *bonne* the feminine of *bon*.

But if the last letter of the Adjective is to be changed into another, add what is placed after the comma to what comes before the last consonant of the Adjective masculine; for instance, when you find *gracieux, ieuse*, gracious add *ieuse* to *grac*, and you will have *gracieuse* for the feminine of *gracieux*.

A N B W

EXERCISES

Upon the various Parts of  
FRENCH SPEECH.

**T**HERE are nine Parts of Speech in *French*, viz. Noun, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Preposition, Conjunction, and Interjection. To speak and write *French* well, we should know how to form these parts of Speech, in what order to place them, and make them agree with one another. When in treating of any one of them, I mention another without giving any rule concerning it, the learner ought to suppose that it answers in every respect to its *English*.

Of N O U N S.

**F**RENCH Nouns are either Masculine or Feminine, and commonly have a singular and a plural. Such as end in *s*, *x*, and *z*, have their singular and plural alike; and most of the others form their plural, by adding *an s* to their singular.

Our Grammarians don't agree about the words *de* and *à*, when joined to Nouns. Those who admit only one article, which they look upon to be undeclined, rank these words amongst the Prepositions; and the others decline our Nouns with them. I shall here follow the opinion of the last, not because it is the best, but because it renders our principles more easy to beginners. When I come to the Prepositions, I shall not scruple to place *de* and *à* amongst them; and in the course of these Exercises, I shall call them indifferently Articles or Prepositions; for it matters very little whether I say,

## 2 EXERCISES upon the

for instance, that such a Verb governs the genitive or dative, or that it requires the Preposition *de* or the Preposition *à*, before the Noun, provided I don't deviate from the principles of our language, and am understood.

We have then, according to the scheme of several Grammarians, four different articles, which, for distinction sake, may be called the first, second, third, and fourth Article.

### FIRST ARTICLE.

This article is *le* for the Masculine, and *la* for the Feminine in the singular, and *les* for both genders in the plural.

Nouns Masculine and Feminine beginning with a consonant, are thus declined with it in the singular.

#### Masculine.

- N. *Le bras*, the arm.  
G. *du bras*, of the arm.  
D. *au bras*, to the arm.  
Ac. *le bras*, the arm.  
V. *ô bras*, o arm.  
Ab. *du bras*, from the arm.

#### Feminine.

- N. *La main*, the hand.  
G. *de la main*, of the hand.  
D. *à la main*, to the hand.  
Ac. *la main*, the hand.  
V. *ô main*, o hand.  
Abl. *de la main*, from the hand.

But when these Nouns begin with a vowel, or an *b* not sounded, they are declined alike, thus :

- N. *L'âme*, the soul.  
G. *de l'âme*, of the soul.  
D. *à l'âme*, to the soul.
- Ac. *l'âme*, the soul.  
V. *ô âme*, o soul.  
Abl. *de l'âme*, from the soul.

All French Nouns, whether they be masculine or feminine, or they begin with a vowel, a consonant, or an *b* not sounded, are thus declined alike in the plural.

- N. *Les bras*, the arms.  
G. *des bras*, of the arms.  
D. *aux bras*, to the arms.
- Ac. *les bras*, the arms.  
V. *ô bras*, o arms.  
Ab. *des bras*, from the arms.

Observe, 1st, That *du*, *des*, *au*, and *aux*, are formed by contraction, from *de le*, *de les*, *à le* and *à les*.

2dly. The

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 3

2dly, That the genitive, which in *English* is placed sometimes before, and sometimes after its nominative, always comes after it in *French*.

### *Use of this Article.*

#### R U L E I.

This article is joined to such Nouns and Adjectives, as take or may take the Article *the* before them in *English*, as *le livre*, *the book*; *du dixième*, *of the tenth*.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

The king's 1 palace 2.	1 <i>Roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>palais</i> , n. m.
the queen's 1 picture 2.	1 <i>reine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>portrait</i> , n. m.
the ring 1 of the princess 2.	1 <i>bague</i> , n. f. 2 <i>princesse</i> , n. f.
the country 1 of the Amazons 2.	1 <i>pays</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Amazone</i> , n. f.
the fable 1 of the frogs 2.	1 <i>fable</i> , n. f. 2 <i>grenouille</i> , n. f.
the complements 1 of the season 2.	1 <i>compliment</i> , plur. <i>mens</i> , n. m. 2 <i>saison</i> , n. f.
the virtues 1 of the Romans 2.	1 <i>vertu</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Romain</i> , n. m.
the looks 1 of the assembly 2.	1 <i>regard</i> , n. m. 2 <i>assemblée</i> , n. f.
to go 1 to the park 2.	1 <i>aller</i> , v. i. 2 <i>parc</i> , n. m.
to speak 1 to the prince 2.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. i. 2 <i>prince</i> , n. m.
to send 1 to the town 2.	1 <i>envoyer</i> v. i. 2 <i>ville</i> , n. f.
to see 1 the battle 2.	1 <i>voir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>bataille</i> , n. f.
to speak 1 to the ladies 2.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. i. 2 <i>dame</i> , n. f.
to imitate 1 the ancients 2.	1 <i>imiter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>ancient</i> , plur. <i>cians</i> , n. m.
the first 1 of the book 2.	1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>livre</i> , n. m.
the third 1 of the page 2.	1 <i>troisième</i> , adj. 2 <i>page</i> , n. f.
the last 1 of the year 2.	1 <i>dernier</i> , adj. 2 <i>année</i> , n. f.

#### R U L E II.

It is joined to Nouns taken in a general and indefinite sense, though they have not the article *the* before them in *English*, as *le poivre*, pepper.

## EXERCISES upon the

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

To study 1 Geography 2.	1 <i>Etudier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Géographie</i> , n. f.
to apply one's self 1 to Astro-nomy 2.	1 <i>s'appliquer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Astro-nomie</i> , n. f.
to read 1 History 2.	1 <i>lire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>Histoire</i> , n. f.
to neglect 1 Painting 2.	1 <i>négliger</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Peinture</i> , n. f.
to imitate 1 Nature 2.	1 <i>imiter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>Nature</i> , n. f.
to avoid 1 idleness 2.	1 <i>éviter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>paresse</i> , n. f.
to love 1 virtue 2.	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. <i>vertu</i> , n. f.
to hate 1 vice 2.	1 <i>haïr</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>vice</i> , n. m.
to deprecate 1 merit 2.	1 <i>avilir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>mérite</i> , n. m.
to admire 1 beauty 2.	1 <i>admirer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>beauté</i> , n. f.
to kill 1 time 2.	1 <i>tuer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>tems</i> , n. m.
to work 1 for 2 glory 3.	1 <i>travailler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>pour</i> , prep. 3 <i>gloire</i> , n. f.
to live 1 in 2 plenty 3.	1 <i>vivre</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>abondance</i> , n. f.
to preach 1 temperance 2.	1 <i>précher</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>tempérance</i> , n. f.
to judge 1 mankind 2.	1 <i>juger</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>le genre hu-main</i> .
to declare 1 war 2.	1 <i>déclarer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>guerre</i> , n. f.
to proclaim 1 peace 2.	1 <i>publier</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>paix</i> , n. f.
gold 1, silver 2, iron 3.	1 <i>or</i> , n. m. 2 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 3 <i>fer</i> , n. m.
corn 1, wheat 2, barley 3.	1 <i>bled</i> , n. m. 2 <i>froment</i> , n. m. 3 <i>orge</i> , n. f.
salt 1, vinegar 2, oil 3.	1 <i>sel</i> , n. m. 2 <i>vinaigre</i> , n. m. 3 <i>huile</i> , n. f.

## RULE III.

It is placed before Nouns of dignity, declined with the second or no article in English, as *le roi Guillaume*, king William; *à la reine Jeanne*, to queen Joan.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

King 1 George 2. of queen 1 Mary 2.	1 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>George</i> , n. m. 1 <i>reine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Marie</i> , n. f.
--	---

to

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

5

to prince 1. Henry 2.	1 prince, n. m. 2 Henri, n. m.
count 1. Saxe 2.	1 comte, n. m. 2 de Saxe.
duke 1. William 2.	1 duc, n. m. 2 Guillaume, n. m.
marshal 1. d'Estrees 2.	1 maréchal, n. m. 2 d'Estrees.
general 1. Ligonier 2.	1 général, n. m.
captain 1. Gardiner 2.	1 capitaine, n. m.
of lieutenant 1. Gordon 2.	1 lieutenant, n. m.
to justice Fielding 1.	1 juge, n. m.

### R U L E IV.

It is used in the genitive after the word *bien*, much, a great deal, many; as *bien du monde*, many people.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

Much 1. time 2.	1 Bien, adv. 2 temps, n. m.
much trouble 1.	1 peine, n. f.
much noise 1.	1 bruit, n. m.
a great deal 1. of rain 2.	1 bien. 2 pluis, n. f.
a great deal of snow 1.	1 neige, n. f.
a great deal of hail 1.	1 grêle, n. f.
many 1. people 2.	1 bien. 2 gens, n. m. plur.
many learned men 1.	1 savant, plur. 2 vants, n. m.
many women 1.	1 femme, n. f.

### R U L E V.

It comes before the absolute numbers taken for the ordinal, as *le sept du mois*, the seventh of the month.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

The second 1. of last month 2.	1 Deux, adj. 2 du mois dernier.
the third 1. of the month 2.	1 trois, adj. 2 du mois.
the fourth 1. of this instant 2.	1 quatre, adj. 2 de ce mois.
the sixth 1. of next month 2.	1 six, adj. 2 du mois prochain.
the seven 1. of diamonds 2.	1 sept. n. m. 2 de carreau.
the eighth 1. of hearts 2.	1 huit, n. m. 2 de cœur.
the ten 1. of clubs 2.	1 dix, n. m. 2 de trefle.
the nine 1. of spades 2.	1 neuf, n. m. 2 de pique.

## EXERCISES upon the

## R U L E VI.

It is placed before such Nouns of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. as are in the nominative and dative, and in the accusative, without a preposition, as *la Terre ferme*, *Terra firma*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Europe 1, Asia 2.	1 Europe, n. f. 2 <i>Asie</i> , n. f.
Africa 1, America 2.	1 <i>Afrique</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Amérique</i> , n. f.
England 1, Scotland 2.	1 <i>Angleterre</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Ecosse</i> , n. f.
Ireland 1, France 2.	1 <i>Irelande</i> , n. f. 2 <i>France</i> , n. f.
Germany 1, Italy 2.	1 <i>Allemagne</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Italie</i> , n. f.
to Sweden 1, to Denmark 2.	1 <i>Suede</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Danemark</i> , n. m.
to Spain 1, to Poland 2.	1 <i>Espagne</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Pologne</i> , n. f.
to Turkey 1, to Hungary 2.	1 <i>Turquie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Hongrie</i> , n. f.
to discover 1 Peru 2, Chili 3, and 4 Japan 5.	1 <i>découvrir</i> , v. 2 <i>Pérou</i> , n. m. 3 <i>Chili</i> , n. m. 4 & conj. 5 <i>Japon</i> , n. m.

## R U L E VII.

It is placed before the Noun of a country, kingdom, province, &c. in the genitive, whenever this Noun does not denote the country of a Noun coming before it, as *le sort de la France*, the fate of France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The fate 1 of Portugal 2.	1 <i>Sort</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Portugal</i> , n. m.
Politeness 1 of France 2.	1 <i>politesse</i> , n. f. 2 <i>France</i> , n. f.
the friends 1 of Holland 2.	1 <i>ami</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Hollande</i> , n. f.
the enemies 1 of Russia 2.	1 <i>ennemi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Russie</i> , n. f.

## R U L E

## R U L E VIII.

When speaking of or to a person, we use the words *Monseigneur*, *Mylord*; *Monsieur*, Master; *Madame*, Mrs<sup>r</sup> and *Mademoiselle*, Miss, before a Noun denoting his or her title, office, trade, profession, and temper; we must place the first article before that Noun; as,

*Monsieur le prince.*

The prince.

*monsieur le docteur.*

doctor.

*madame la Courteuse.*

Mrs. Gad-about.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The dauphin 1.

*Dauphin*, n. m.

the dauphiness 1.

*dauphine*, n. f.

the physician 1.

*médecin*, n. m.

the ambassador 1.

*ambassadeur*, n. m.

the ambassadorress 1.

*ambassadrice*, n. f.

the duke 1.

*duc*, n. m.

the dutchess 1.

*duchesse*, n. f.

the marquess 1.

*marquis*, n. m.

the marchioness 1.

*marquise*, n. f.

the count 1.

*comte*, n. m.

the countess 1.

*comtesse*, n. f.

the baron 1.

*baron*, n. m.

Mr. Prattler 1.

*Babillard*, n. m.

## R U L E IX.

The first article is sometimes used in calling people, or speaking of a woman with a sort of freedom; as,

*La Mingotti chante bien.*

Signora Mingotti sings well.

*la Duprez est morte.*

Mrs. Duprez is dead.

*la femme aux pommes.*

apple-woman.

*parlez, l'homme, la femme.*

speak, man, woman.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Milk 2 woman.

*Au lait.*

butter 2 man.

*au beurre.*

oyster 2 woman.

*aux huîtres.*

green 2 woman.

*aux herbes.*

## EXERCISES upon the

fish 2 woman.

2 au poisson.

do you hear me 1, man.

1 m'entendez, vous.

come here 1, pretty girl 2.

1 venez ici. 2 belle fille.

## SECOND ARTICLE.

This article being *de* and *à* for the singular and plural, French Nouns are thus declined with it.

## In the Singular.

## Masculine.

N. *Pierre*, Peter.G. *de Pierre*, of Peter.D. *à Pierre*, to Peter.Ac. *Pierre*, Peter.V. *ó Pierre*, o Peter.Ab. *de Pierre*, from Peter.

## Feminine.

N. *Marie*, Mary.G. *de Marie*, of Mary.D. *à Marie*, to Mary.Ac. *Marie*, Mary.V. *ó Marie*, o Mary.Ab. *de Marie*, from Mary.

## In the Plural.

N. *gens*, people.Ac. *gens*, people. -G. *de gens*, of people.V. *ó gens*, o people.D. *à gens*, to people.Ab. *de gens*, from people.

In such of the French Nouns, as begin with a vowel, or an *b*, not sounded, the *e* of the Article is dropt, and supplied by an Apostrophe, as *d'André*, of Andrew.

## Use of this Article.

## R U L E I.

This Article must be joined to proper Names, as *le doigt de Marie*, Mary's finger.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Thomas's 1 hat 2.

1 *Thomas*, n. m. 2 *chapeau*

n. m.

John's 1 coat 2.

1 *Jean*, n. m. 2 *habit*, n. m.

Anthony's 1 waistcoat 2.

1 *Antoine*, n. m. 2 *veste*, n. f.

Charles's 1 shoes 2.

1 *Charles*, n. m. 2 *soulier*

n. m.

3 James's

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

19

James's 1 stockings 2.	1 <i>Jacques</i> , n. m. 2 <i>bas</i> , n. m.
Grace's 1 cap 2.	1 <i>Grace</i> , n. f. 2 <i>coiffure</i> , n. f.
Martha's 1 petticoat 2.	1 <i>Marthe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>juppe</i> , n. f.
Priscilla's 1 gown 2.	1 <i>Priscille</i> , n. f. 2 <i>robe</i> , n. f.
Sarah's 1 handkerchief 2.	1 <i>Sara</i> , n. f. 2 <i>mouchoir</i> , n. m.
to Stephen 1.	1 <i>Etienne</i> , n. m.
to Gregory 1.	1 <i>Grégoire</i> , n. m.
to Margaret 1.	1 <i>Marguerite</i> , n. f.
to Lucy 1.	1 <i>Lucie</i> , n. f.

### R U L E II.

It must come before the Words, *Monsieur*, *Mylord*; *Monsieur*, *Master*; *Madame*, *Lady*, *Mistress*; *Mademoiselle*, *Miss*; *Maitre*, *Master*; *Saint*, *Sainte*, *Saint*; as les titres de *Milord*, *My lord's titles*.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

My lord's equipage 1.	1 <i>Equipage</i> , n. m.
Mr. Smith's garden 1.	1 <i>jardin</i> , n. m.
Mr. Grove's sword 1.	1 <i>épée</i> , n. f.
Mr. Nelson's house 1.	1 <i>maison</i> , n. f.
Mrs. Garon's promise 1.	1 <i>promesse</i> , n. f.
Mrs. Titel's books 1.	1 <i>livre</i> , n. m.
Mrs. Smart's necklace 1.	1 <i>collier</i> , n. m.
lady Preston's jewel's 1.	1 <i>joyau</i> , plur. <i>aux</i> , n. m.
lady Nichol's laces 1.	1 <i>dentelle</i> , n. f.
miss Parson's apron 1.	1 <i>tablier</i> , n. m.
miss Fair's ruffles 1.	1 <i>manchette</i> , n. f.
the statue 1 of St. George 2.	1 <i>statue</i> , n. f. 2 <i>George</i> , n. m.
the life 1 of St. Ann. 2.	1 <i>vie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>Anne</i> , n. f.

### R U L E III.

It must always be placed after the following words, *viz.*

Abondance, plenty.	<i>disette</i> , want.
assez, enough.	<i>grand nombre</i> , great number.
autant, as much, as many.	<i>gueres</i> , little.
beaucoup, much, many.	<i>jamais</i> , never.
combien, how much, how ma-	<i>moins</i> , less.

ny.

B 5

*peu*,

## EXERCISES upon the

peu, little, few;

*quelque chose*, something.

plus, more.

*rien*, nothing.

point, pas, no.

*tant*, so much, so many.

quantité, a deal.

*trop*, too much, too many.

que, what.

As *assez de fruit*, fruit enough; *trop de pain*, too much bread.

## Exercises upon this Rule,

Plenty of grapes 1.

1 *Raisin*, n. m.

plenty of corn 1.

1 *ble*, n. m.

wheat 1 enough.

1 *froment*, n. m.

oats 1 enough.

1 *avoine*, n. f.

as much sugar 1.

1 *sucrerie*, n. m.

as many soldiers 1.

1 *soldat*, n. m.

much oil 1.

1 *huile*, n. f.

many pease 1.

1 *pois*, n. m.

how much money 1.

1 *argent*, n. m.

how many songs 1.

1 *chanson*, n. f.

want of hay 1.

1 *foin*, n. m.

want of men 1.

1 *homme*, n. m.

great number of goats.

1 *bouc*, n. m.

great number of turkeys.

1 *poulet d'Inde*, n. m.

little trouble 1.

1 *peine*, n. f.

little wit 1.

1 *esprit*, n. m.

never of him 1.

1 *lui*, pron. nom.

never of me 1.

1 *moi*, pron. nom.

les credit 1.

1 *crédit*, n. m.

les courage 1.

1 *courage*, n. m.

few people 1.

1 *gens*, n. m.

little prudence 1.

1 *prudence*, n. f.

more esteem 1.

1 *estime*, n. f.

more love 1.

1 *amour*, n. m.

no gold 1.

1 *or*, n. m.

no boys 1.

1 *garçon*, n. m.

a deal of straw 1.

1 *paille*, n. f.

what wealth 1.

1 *bien*, n. m.

something scarce 1.

1 *rare*, adj.

something good 1.

1 *bon*, adj.

nothing true 1.

1 *vrai*, adj.

nothing

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

II

nothing too much 1.	1 trop, n. m.
so much cloth 1.	1 drap, n. m.
so much linnen 1.	1 toile, n. f.
too much water 1.	1 eau, n. f.
too many sailors 1.	1 matelot, n. m.

### R U L E IV.

It must come before names of cities, towns, villages, &c as *de Naples*, from Naples.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

From London 1.	1 Londres, n. m.
of Bristol 1.	1 Bristol, n. m.
to Edinburg 1.	1 Edinbourg, n. m.
from Dublin 1.	1 Dublin, n. m.
of Paris 1.	1 Paris, n. m.
to Roan 1.	1 Rouen, n. m.
from Brentford 1.	1 Brentford, n. m.
of Hampstead 1.	1 Hampstead, n. m.
to Putney 1.	1 Putney, n. m.
to Islington 1.	1 Islington, n. m.

### R U L E V.

It must be joined to the absolute Numbers, which are un-declined adjectives; as *à dix*, to ten.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

Of ten 1. To eleven 2.	1 dix. 2 onze.
of twelve 1. To thirteen 2.	1 douze. 2 treize.
of fourteen 1. To fifteen 2.	1 quatorze. 2 quinze.
of sixteen 1. To seventeen 2.	1 seize. 2 dix sept.
of eighteen 1. To nineteen 2.	1 dix huit. 2 dix neuf.

### R U L E VI.

It must be placed after adjectives of number followed by a participle passive; as *vingt de brûlés*, twenty burnt.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

Twenty 1. finished 2.	1 Vingt. 2 finis.
thirty 1. begun 2.	1 trente. 2 <del>achevé</del> commence forty

## EXERCISES upon the

forty 1 done 2.

1 quarante. 2 faits.

fifty 1 lost 2.

1 cinquante. 2 perdus.

sixty 1 found 2.

1 soixante. 2 trouvés.

## RULE VII.

It is commonly placed before names of countries, kingdoms, provinces, &c. joined to words signifying coming to, going from, or living in them; as *Je viens d'Irlande*, I come from *Ireland*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Do you come 1 from France 2,  
from Italy 3, from Spain 4,  
from Portugal 5?

Do you go 1 to 2 Holland 3,  
to Germany 4, to Poland 5?

I live 1 in 2 England 3, in  
Scotland 4, in Ireland 5.

1 Venez vous. 2 France, n. f.  
3 Italie, n. f. 4 Espagne,  
n. f. 5 Portugal, n. m..  
1 Allez vous. 2 en prep. 3 Hol-  
lande, n. f. 4 Allemagne,  
n. f. 5 Pologne?  
1 je vis. 2 en, prep. 3 Angle-  
terre, n. f. 4 Ecoffe, n. f.  
5 Irlande, n. f.

## RULE VIII.

It must be used before such Nouns as express the cause, character, kind, matter, nature, quality or country of a Noun coming before them; as,

*Etoffe de laine.*

Wollen stuff.

*vin de France.*

French wine.

*une montre d'or.*

a gold watch.

*l'Empereur de Maroc.*

the Emperor of Morocco.

*une femme de bon sens.*

a woman of sense.

*un homme d'esprit.*

a man of wit.

The three last examples shew that the *English* Idiom, answers sometimes to the *French* one; and the three first proves that an *English* Noun or Adjective ought sometimes to be translated into a *French* Genitive.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Champain 1 wine 2.

1 Champagne, n.f. 2 vin, n. m.

Burgundy

Burgundy 1 wine.	1 Bourgogne, n. f.
Florence 1 wine.	1 Florence, n. f.
a 1 wine merchant 1.	1 un marchand
a 1 gold 2 box 1.	1 une boete, n. f. 2 or, n. m.
a 1 silver 2 spoon 1.	1 une cuillere, n. f. 2 argent, n. m.
a 1 copper 2 pot 1.	1 un pot, n. m. 2 cuivre, n. m.
a 1 house 2 roof 1.	1 toit, n. m. 2 maison, n. f.
a 1 thunder 2 clap 1.	1 coup, n. m. 2 tonnere, n. m.
a 1 marble 2 statue 1.	1 statue, n. f. 2 marbre, n. m.
a 2 silk waistcoat 1.	1 veste, n. f. 2 soie, n. f.
a 1 diamond 2 buckle 1.	1 boucle, n. f. 2 diamant, n. m.
a 1 country 2 house 1.	1 maison, n. f. 2 campagne, n. f.
a law-suit 1 of consequence 2.	1 un proces, n. m. 2 consequence, n. f.
a jewel 1 of worth 2.	1 un joyau, n. m. 2 prix, n. m.

## THIRD ARTICLE.

This article being *du*, *de la*, *de l'* in the singular, and *des* in the plural, French Nouns beginning with a consonant are thus declined with it in

## The Singular.

## Masculine.

- N. *Du vin*, wine.  
D. à *du vin*, to wine.  
Ac. *du vin*, wine.

## Feminine.

- N. *De la bierre*, beer.  
D. à *de la bierre*, to beer.  
Ac. *de la bierre*, beer.

But when they begin with a Vowel, or an *h* not sounded, they must be thus declined.

## Masculine.

- N. *De l'or*, gold.  
D. à *de l'or*, to gold.  
Ac. *de l'or*, gold.

## Feminine.

- N. *De l'huile*, oil.  
D. à *de l'huile*, to oil.  
Ac. *de l'huile*, oil.

In the plural all kinds of French Nouns are declined alike, with this article, thus,

- N. *Des savans*, learned men.  
D. à *des savans*, to learned men.  
Ac. *des savans*, learned men.

If

## EXERCISES upon the

If an Adjective is placed between the Article and the Noun, instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'* and *des*, we use *de*, thus

## Singular.

N. *De bon vin*, good wine.

D. *à de bon vin*, to good wine.

Ac. *de bon vin*, good wine.

## Plural.

N. *De grands hommes*, great men.

D. *à de grands hommes*, to great men.

Ac. *de grands hommes*, great men.

When the Adjective begins with a Vowel, or an *b* not sounded, *e* must be dropt in *de*, and supplied by an Apostrophe, as *d'excellent vin*, excellent wine.

## Use of this Article.

This Article answering to the English word *some*, either expressed or understood, the learner will not find much difficulty in making the following Exercises.

Give me 1 some bread 2.	1 <i>Donnez moi.</i> 2 <i>pain</i> , n. m.
some butter 1.	1 <i>beurre</i> , n. m.
some cheese 1.	1 <i>fromage</i> , n. m.
some eggs 1.	1 <i>oeuf</i> , n. m.
some veal 1.	1 <i>veau</i> , n. m.
some pork 1.	1 <i>porc</i> , n. m.
some mustard 1.	1 <i>moutarde</i> , n. f.
some beans 1.	1 <i>feve</i> , n. f.
gooseberries 1.	1 <i>groseille</i> , n. f.
apricocks 1.	1 <i>abricot</i> , n. m.
bad 1 tea 2.	1 <i>mauvais</i> , adj. 2 <i>thé</i> , n. m.
good 1 leather 2.	1 <i>bon</i> , adj. 2 <i>cuir</i> , n. m.
large 1 melons 2.	1 <i>gros</i> , adj. 2 <i>melon</i> , n. m.
small 1 fishes 2.	1 <i>petit</i> , 2 <i>poisson</i> , n. m.
unworthy 1 friends 2.	1 <i>indigne</i> , adj. 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.

## Fourth Article.

This Article being *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine in the singular, and having no plural, French Nouns are thus declined with it.

Masculine.

*Masculine.*

N. Un duc, a duke.  
G. *d'un duc*, of a duke.  
D. *à un duc*, to a duke.  
Ac. *un duc*, a duke.  
Ab. *d'un duc*, from a duke.

*Feminine.*

N. Une âme, a soul.  
G. *d'une âme*, of a soul.  
D. *à une âme*, to a soul.  
Ac. *une âme*, a soul.  
Ab. *d'une âme*, from a soul.

*Use of this Article.*

This article answering to the English article *a* and *an*, the following Exercises must appear very easy to the Learner.

A button hole 1.  
an angel 1.  
a prophet 1.  
a planet 1.  
a week 1.  
a moment 1.  
a beginning 1.  
a minute 1.

1 Boutonniere, n. f.  
1 ange, n. m.  
1 prophète, n. m.  
1 planète, n. f.  
1 semaine, n. f.  
1 moment, n. m.  
1 commencement, n. m.  
1 minute, n. f.

*A general Remark upon the French Articles.*

French articles must be repeated in French before all the Nouns in a sentence, altho' they are often omitted in English; as *le pere*, *la mere*, & *la fille*; the father, mother, and daughter.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The husband 1, wife 2 and 3	1 Mari, n. m. 2 femme, children 4.
the master 1, mistress 2 and servants 3.	1 maître, n. m. 2 maîtresse, n. f. 3 domestique, n. m.
the officers 1 and soldiers 2,	1 officier, n. m. 2 soldat, n. m.
the pilot 1 and sailors 2.	1 pilote, n. m. 2 matelot, n. m.
the brewer 1, butcher 2 and baker 3.	1 brasseur, n. m. 2 boucher, n. m. 3 boulanger, n. m.
a great deal 1 of rain 2 and snow 3.	1 beaucoup, adv. 2 pluie, n. f., 3 neige, n. f.
I writ 1 to Mr. Sharp and Miss Drum.	1 J'ai écrit.
speak 1 to Thomas and Paul.	1 parlez,

wishes

## EXERCISES upon the

wishes 1 and suspicions 2.

1 *souhait*, n. m. 2 *soupçon*  
n. m.

gloves 1 and muffs 2.

1 *gant*, n. m. 2 *manchon*,  
n. m.

milk 1 and cream 2.

1 *lait*, n. m. 2 *crème*, n. f.

fritters 1 and cakes 2.

1 *beignet*, n. m. 2 *gâteau*,  
n. m.

knives 1 and forks 2.

1 *couteau*, plur. *aux*, n. m. 2  
*fourchette*, n. m.

a man 1 and a woman 2.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *femme*, n. f.

a girl 1 and a boy 2.

1 *fille*, n. f. 2 *garçon*, n. m.

a dog 1 and a cat 2.

1 *chien*, n. m. 2 *chat*, n. m.

## Of ADJECTIVES.

**FRENCH.** Adjectives must agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Such of them as end with an *e* not sounded, have their masculine and feminine alike; and the others commonly add an *e* not sounded to their feminine, as *grand*, *grande*, great.

Such of the French Adjectives as end in *s* or *x* have their singular and plural alike; and the others, whether they be masculine or feminine, commonly form their plural by adding an *s* to their singulars, as *bon*, *bons*, good; *bonne*, *bonnes*, good.

When in my Exercises I use an Adjective excepted from the above rules, I take care to mark either its feminine or plural.

*Places of French Adjectives.*

Of French Adjectives, some are placed before, and some after their Nouns; and some come either before or after them.

*Of Adjectives placed before their Nouns.*

These Adjectives not being very numerous, may easily be reduced under the three following heads, *viz.*

1. The absolute numbers, as *un*, one; *deux*, two, &c.

2. The ordinal numbers, as *le premier*, the first, &c.

3. The following Adjectives, *viz.*

*Beau*, *belle*, handsome.  
*bel*, handsome.

*Bon*, *ne*, good.  
*grand*, great.

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

1817

*gros, se, large.*

*jeune, young.*

*vieux, vieille, old.*

*vieil, old.*

*saint, holy.*

*petit, small, little.*

Note, that *bel* and *vieil* are used only before Nouns masculine, beginning with a vowel or an *b* not sounded, as *un bel homme*, a handsome man.

### Exercises upon the absolute Numbers.

Twelve 1 sparrows 2.

1 Douze. 2 mointau, plur.  
eaux, n. m.

twenty 1 partridges 2.

1 vingt. 2 perdrix, n. f.

thirty 1 bottles 2.

1 trente. 2 bouteille, n. f.

thirty three 1 candles 2.

1 trente trois. 2 chandelle, n. f.

of forty 1 stones 2.

1 quarante. 2 pierre, n. f.

of fifty 1 glasses 2.

1 cinquante. 2 verre, n. m.

of sixty 1 chairs 2.

1 soixante. 2 chaise, n. f.

of seventy 1 dishes 2.

1 soixante & dix, 2 plat, n. m.

to eighty 1 napkins 2.

1 quatre vingts. 2 serviette, n. f.

to hundred 1 pistoles 2.

1 cent. 2 pistole, n. f.

to two hundred 1 corks 2.

1 deux cens. 2 bouchon, n. m.

to three hundred 1 bricks 2.

1 trois cens. 2 briqué, n. f.

### Exercises upon the ordinal Numbers.

The first 1 picture 2.

1 Premier. 2 tableau, n. m.

the second 1 street 2.

1 Second. 2 rue, n. f.

the third 1 book 2.

1 troisième. 2 livre, n. m.

the fourth 1 lady 2.

1 quatrième. 2 dame, n. f.

the fifth 1 pen 2.

1 cinquième. 2 plume, n. f.

the sixth 1 room 2.

1 sixième. 2 chambre, n. f.

the seventh 1 table 2.

1 septième. 2 table, n. f.

the eighth 1 victory 2.

1 huitième. 2 victoire, n. f.

the ninth 1 defeat 2.

1 neuvième. 2 défaite, n. f.

the tenth 1 battle 2.

1 dixième. 2 bataille, n. f.

the eleventh 1 skirmish 2.

1 onzième. 2 escarmouche, n. f.

the twelfth 1 general 2.

1 douzième. 2 général, n. m.

Observe that the ordinal number must be placed after its Noun, first, when it is used instead of a surname, as *George second*, *George the second*. Secondly, when a book, chapter, &c. is quoted, as *chapitre premier*, *chapter the first*.

### Exercises upon the ten foregoing Adjectives.

A handsome palace 1.

1 Palais, n. m.

a handsome woman 1.

1 femme, n. f.

a hand-

148 EXERCISES upon the

a handsome animal 1.	1 <i>animal</i> , n. m.
a good lock 1.	1 <i>serrure</i> , n. f.
a good opera 1.	1 <i>opera</i> , n. m.
- a great captain 1.	1 <i>capitaine</i> , n. m.
- a great action 1.	1 <i>action</i> , n. f.
a large tree 1.	1 <i>arbre</i> , n. m.
a large pear 1.	1 <i>poire</i> , n. f.
- a young child 1.	1 <i>enfant</i> , n. m.
a young girl 1.	1 <i>filie</i> , n. f.
an old hat 1.	1 <i>chapeau</i> , n. m.
an old officer 1.	1 <i>officier</i> , n. m.
an old mare 1.	1 <i>jument</i> , n. f.
saint Peter 1.	1 <i>Pierre</i> , n. m.
a holy man 1.	1 <i>personnage</i> , n. m.
a small bird 1.	1 <i>oiseau</i> , n. m.
- a small watch 1.	1 <i>montre</i> , n. f.

Observe, that when a small particle, or any other dependency is added to the foregoing Adjectives, they may be placed either before or after their Nouns, as *un très beau jour*, or *un jour très beau*, a very fine day.

Of Adjectives placed both before and after their Nouns.

These Adjectives are, first, such as express the moral qualities either good or bad, as *aimable*, *amiable*, for we say *un homme aimable*, and *un aimable homme*, an amiable man.

Exercises.

An excellent 1 work 2.
a detestable 1 pamphlet 2.
a learned 1 divine 2.
a prudent 1 Swede 2.
an impertinent 1 girl 2.
an impudent 1 servant 2.
an august 1 ceremony 2.
cruel 1 dispositions 2.
a faithful 1 friend 2.
a fearful 1 animal 2.
bad 1 verses 2.
an unworthy 1 deed 2.

1 <i>Admirable</i> . 2 <i>ouvrage</i> , n. m.
1 <i>abominable</i> . 2 <i>brochure</i> , n. f.
1 <i>savant</i> . 2 <i>théologien</i> , n. m.
1 <i>prudent</i> . <i>Suédois</i> , n. m.
1 <i>impertinent</i> . 2 <i>fille</i> , n. f.
1 <i>impudent</i> . 2 <i>valet</i> , n. m.
1 <i>auguste</i> . 2 <i>cérémonie</i> , n. f.
1 <i>cruel</i> , <i>le</i> . 2 <i>inclination</i> , n. f.
1 <i>fidele</i> . 2 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
1 <i>timide</i> . 2 <i>animal</i> , n. m.
1 <i>mauvais</i> . 2 <i>vers</i> , n. m.
1 <i>indigne</i> . 2 <i>action</i> , n. f.

Each

Each of the foregoing Exercises must make two French sentences, in the first whereof the Adjective ought to be placed before, and in the last after its Noun ; as,

A faithful friend.      { *Un fidele ami.*  
                                  *un ami fidele.*

Secondly, the Adjective *cher*, dear, denoting price, is placed after, and denoting affection, before its Noun ; as, *un livre cher*, a dear book ; *mon cher oncle*, my dear uncle.

### E X E R C I S E S.

#### Cher denoting Price.

A dear repast 1.	1 <i>Repas</i> , n. m.
a dear coat 1.	1 <i>habit</i> , n. m.
a dear knife 1.	1 <i>couteau</i> , n. m.
dear lands 1.	1 <i>terre</i> , n. f.

#### Cher denoting Affection.

My 1 dear father 2.	1 <i>M. 2 pere</i> , n. m.
my 1 dear mother 2.	1 <i>ma. 2 mere</i> , n. f.
my 1 dear wife 2.	1 <i>ma. 2 femme</i> , n. f.
my 1 dear children 2.	1 <i>mes. 2 enfant</i> , plur. n. m.

Thirdly, The Adjectives *juste* and *bas, se*, are placed before some Nouns, and after others ; as *la Basse Hongrie*, Lower Hungary ; *une maison basse*, a lower house.

### E X E R C I S E S.

#### The Adjectives *juste* and *bas*, placed before Nouns.

At 1 a reasonable 2 rate 3.	1 à, prep. 2 <i>juste</i> . 3 <i>prix</i> , n. m.
reasonable anger 1.	1. <i>colere</i> , n. f.
just 1 defence 2.	1 <i>juste</i> . 2 <i>defense</i> , n. f.
at a low 1 rate 2.	1 <i>bas</i> . 2 <i>prix</i> , n. m.
Low Languedoc 1.	1 <i>Languedoc</i> , n. m.
Low Normandy 1.	1 <i>Normandie</i> , n. f.

#### The same Adjectives coming after Nouns.

A just action 1.	1 <i>Action</i> , n. f.
a just man 1.	1 <i>bonne</i> , n. m.
a mean 1 action 2.	1 <i>bas</i> .
a low floor 1.	1 <i>plancher</i> , n. m.

Fourthly,

Fourthly, The Adjectives *mâitre*, *mûr*, *vif*, *vive*, and *pauvre* taken in their proper sense, are placed after; and taken figuratively, before the Nouns; as, *un chien mâitre*, a lean dog; *un pauvre dîner*, a poor dinner.

## EXERCISES.

## Proper Sense.

A lean 1. child 2.	1. <i>Mâitre</i> . 2. <i>enfant</i> , n. m.
ripe 1. apples 2.	1. <i>mûr</i> . 2. <i>pomme</i> , n. f.
a ripe melon 1.	1. <i>melon</i> , n. m.
a sharp 1. man 2.	1. <i>vif</i> . 2. <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a poor 1. woman 2.	1. <i>pauvre</i> . 2. <i>femme</i> , n. f.

## Figurative Sense.

Bad 1. cheer 2.	1. <i>Mâitre</i> . 2. <i>cheer</i> , n. f.
mature 1. deliberation 2.	1. <i>mûr</i> . 2. <i>délibration</i> , n. f.
sharp 1. pains 2.	1. <i>vif</i> . 2. <i>douleur</i> , n. f.
a sorry 1. fellow 2.	1. <i>pauvre</i> . 2. <i>homme</i> , n. m.

Fifthly, the Adjectives *sage*, *bonnête*, *galant*, *gros*, *je*, *certain*, *furieux*, *jeuse*, and *grand*, have a different meaning, according as they are placed before or after their Nouns, as *une honnête femme*, an honest woman; *une femme bonnête*, a well bred woman.

## EXERCISES.

## The foregoing Adjectives before Nouns.

A midwife 1.	1. <i>Sage femme</i> , n. f.
an honest 1. man 2.	1. <i>bonnête</i> . 2. <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a well bred 1. man 2.	1. <i>galant</i> .
a big 1. woman 2.	1. <i>gros</i> . 2. <i>femme</i> , n. f.
a sort of news 1.	1. <i>certaine nouvelle</i> .
a huge 1. creature 2.	1. <i>furieux</i> . 2. <i>animal</i> , n. m.
the ways of the great 1.	1. <i>la grand air</i> .

## The same Adjectives after Nouns.

A wise 1. woman 2.	1. <i>Sage</i> . 2. <i>femme</i> , n. f.
a civil 1. man 2.	1. <i>bonnête</i> . 2. <i>homme</i> , n. m.
a woman with 1. child 2.	1. <i>gros</i> .
a sure 1. news 2.	1. <i>certain</i> . 2. <i>nouvelle</i> , n. f.
a fierce 1. animal 2.	1. <i>furieux</i> . 2. <i>animal</i> , n. m.
a noble 1. aspect 2.	1. <i>grand</i> . 2. <i>air</i> , n. m.
a man complaisant 1. to the ladies 2.	1. <i>galant</i> .

Of

*Of Adjectives placed after their Nouns.*

The Adjectives which come before, and those which are placed either before or after the French Nouns being known, it is easy to distinguish those which ought to be placed after them. The chief of these Adjectives are those of nation, colour, figure, taste, hearing, and touching, the verbal Adjectives, those that denote physical and elementary qualities, and those ending in *ique*.

*Exercises upon the foregoing Adjectives.**Adjectives of Nations.*

English 1 politicks 2.	1 Anglois. 2 politique, n. f.
French 1 fashions 2.	1 François. 2 mode, n. f.
Italian 1 musick 2.	1 Italien, ne. 2 musique, n. f.
the Chinese 1 language 2.	1 Chinois. 2 langue, n. f.
a Roman 1 beauty 2.	1 Romain. 2 beauté, n. f.

*Adjectives of Colour.*

A red 1 cap 2.	1 Rouge. 2 bonnet, n. m.
a black 1 hat 2.	1 noir. 2 chapeau, n. m.
a white 1 coat 2.	1 blanc. 2 habit, n. m.
blue 1 stockings 2.	1 bleu. 2 bas, n. m.
a yellow 1 flower 2.	1 jaune. 2 fleur, n. f.

*Adjectives of Figure.*

A square 1 table 2.	1 Quarré. 2 table, n. f.
a round 1 ball 2.	1 rond. 2 balle, n. f.
an oval 1 picture 2.	1 ovale. 2 tableau, n. m.
a triangular 1 plan 2.	1 triangulaire. 2 plan, n. m.

*Adjectives of Taste.*

Bitter 1 herbs 2.	1 Amer. 2 herbe, n. f.
tart 1 fruit 2.	1 acre. 2 fruit, n. m.
sweet 1 wine 2.	1 doux. 2 vin, n. m.

*Adjectives of hearing and touching.*

A sonorous 1 instrument 2.	1 Sonare. 2 instrument, n. m.
an harmonious 1 voice 2.	1 harmonieux, iense. 2 voix, n. f.
tough 1 meat 2.	1 dur. 2 viande, n. f.
a liquid 1 mess 2.	1 liquide. 2 mets, n. m.
an uneven 1 road 2.	1 raboteux. 2 chemin, n. m.
dry 1 grapes 2.	1 sec. 2 raisin, n. m.

Verbal

*Verbal Adjectives.*

Burnt 1 wine 2.	1 Brûlé. 2 vin, n. m.
a rounded 1 figure 2.	1 arrondi. 2 figure, n. f.
a diverting 1 sight 2.	1 divertissant. 2 spectacle, n. m.
an over-ruling 1 passion 2.	1 dominant. 2 passion, n. f.

*Adjectives denoting physical and elementary qualities.*

Cold 1 weather 2.	1 Froid. 2 temps, n. m.
wholesome 1 weather 2.	1 sain.
a warm 1 wind 2.	1 chaud. 2 vent, n. m.
a bad 1 air 2.	1 méchant. 2 air, n. m.
a lame 1 girl 2.	1 boiteux, euse. 2 fille, n. f.
a maimed 1 soldier 2.	1 manchot. 2 soldat, n. m.
a moist 1 brain 2.	1 blutide. 2 cerveau, n. m.
a wholesome 1 food 2.	1 sain. 2 nourriture, n. f.
an ugly 1 fellow 2.	1 laid. 2 homme, n. m.

*Adjectives ending in ique.*

A peaceable 1 man 2.	1 Pacifique. 2 homme, n. m.
a magnificent 1 building 2.	1 magnifique. 2 bâtiment, n. m.
a lyric 1 poet 2.	1 lirique. 2 poète, n. m.
a soporiferous 1 drink 2.	1 soporifique. 2 potion, n. f.

*Of Nouns accompanied by two or more Adjectives.*

## R U L E I.

When a Noun is accompanied by two Adjectives, the surest way is to place these Adjectives after it, with the Conjunction & before the last; as, *un prince sage & prudent*, a wise and prudent king.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

A beautiful 1 and 2 modest 3 woman 4.	1 Beau, belle. 2 & conj. 3 modeste. 4 femme, n. f.
a just 1 and bountiful 2 God 3.	1 juste. 2 bienfaisant. 3 Dieu, n. m.
a sincere 1 and disinterested 2 friend 3.	1 sincère. 2 désintéressé. 3 ami, n. m.
a solid 1 and bright 2 genius 3.	1 solide. 2 brillant. 3 génie, n. m.

private

private 1 and base 2 de-	1 particulier. 2 honteux. 3 def-
signs 3.	sein, n. m.
a cruel 1 and revengeful 2	1 cruel. 2 vindicatif. 3 enuemi,
enemy 3.	n. m.
a monarchical 1 and despo-	1 monarchique. 2 despotique. 3
tic 2 government 3.	gouvernement, n. m.
a gross 1 and brutish 2 ig-	1 grossier. 2 brutal. 3 igno-
norance 3.	rance, n. f.
useful 1 and easy 2 discove-	1 util. 2 facile. 3 décou-
ries 3.	verte, n. f.
a mean 1 and despicable 2	1 bas, se. 2 méprisable. 3
expression 3.	expression, n. f.

## R U L E II.

When a Noun is accompanied by three or more adjectives, these adjectives must be placed after it, with the conjunction & before the last ; as, *un historien éloquent, judicieux & désintéressé*, an eloquent, judicious and impartial historian.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

A long 1 innocent 2 and	1 Long, ue, 2 innocent. 3 beau-
happy 3 life 4.	reux, euse. 4 vie, n. f.
a short 1 wicked 2 and un-	1 court. e 2 criminel, le. 3
happy 3 life.	malheureux, euse.
a covetous 1 cruel 2 and	1 avare. 2 cruel, le. 3 sangui-
bloody 3 prince 4.	naire. 4 prince, n. m.
a sober 1 virtuous 2 and	1 sobre. 2 vertueux, euse. 3 com-
complaisant 3 wife 4.	plaisant. 4 femme, n. f.
a sober, faithful 1 and indus-	1 fidèle. 2 industrieux, euse. 3
trious 2 servant 3.	domestique, n. m.

## Comparison of Adjectives.

We have but three comparatives, viz. *meilleur*, best; *pire*, worse; *moindre*, less; and three superlatives, viz. *le meilleur*, the best; *le pire*, the worst; and *le moindre*, the least.

When we have a mind to compare persons or things with each other, we place before our adjectives the following words, viz.

Plus

## 24 EXERCISES upon the

*Plus, more.*

*le plus, and la plus, the most.*

*aussi, as.*

*moins, less.*

*le moins, and la moins, the least.*

*si, so.*

*Très, very,*

*bien, very.*

*fort, very.*

*extremement, extremely.*

*prodigieusement, vastly.*

*infiniment, infinitely.*

*As plus beau, handsomer, or more handsome ; le plus beau, the handsomest, or the most handsome, &c.*

You must observe that *than* and *as* immediately placed after the comparing Adjective, must always be rendered into French by *que* ; *as*,

*Smaller than I.*

*as tall as you.*

*Plus petit que moi.*

*aussi grand que vous.*

### *Exercises upon the comparison of adjectives.*

*Julia 1 is*

*more handsome 2*

*than*

*as handsome as*

*less handsome than*

*I am 1 taller 2 than*

*as tall as*

*less tall than*

*She is 1 wiser 2 than*

*as wise as*

*less wise than*

*She is the most agreeable 1.*

*the most ugly 1.*

*the least proud 1.*

*the least witty 1.*

*the most innocent 1.*

*the most polite 1.*

*the most complaisant 1.*

*the most ridiculous 1.*

*We are not 1*

*so good 2*

*so bad 3*

*so diligent 4*

*so lazy 5*

*1 Julie est*

*2 beau, belle. 3 sa.*

*4 soeur, n. f.*

*1 Je suis. 2 grand. 3 vous.*

*1 elle est. 2 sage. 3 lui.*

*1 agreable.*

*1 laid.*

*1 orgueilleux, euse.*

*1 spirituel, le.*

*1 innocent.*

*1 poli.*

*1 complaisant.*

*1 ridicule.*

*1 nous ne sommes pas.*

*2 bon, bonne.*

*3 mechant.*

*4 diligent.*

*5 paresseux, euse. 6 eux.*

*they*

they are 1 very difficult 2.	1 <i>ils sont.</i> 2- <i>difficile.</i>
very neat 1.	1 <i>propre.</i>
very bald 1.	1 <i>chauve.</i>
very deaf 1.	1 <i>sourd.</i>
very unhappy 1.	1 <i>malheureux.</i>
very humoursome 1.	1 <i>fantasque.</i>
very troublesome 1.	1 <i>incommode.</i>
very vicious 1.	1 <i>vieieux.</i>
extreamly civil 1.	1 <i>civil.</i>
extreamly revengeful 1.	1 <i>vindicatif.</i>
vastly prodigal 1.	1 <i>prodigue.</i>
vastly covetous 1.	1 <i>avare.</i>
God is 1 infinitely just 2.	1 <i>Dieu est.</i> 2 <i>juste.</i>
infinitely wise 1.	1 <i>sage.</i>
infinitely great 1.	1 <i>grand.</i>
infinitely powerful.	1 <i>pissant.</i>

## Of PRONOUNS.

French Pronouns are either conjunctive or disjunctive. The first are such as take no article, and are always joined to the verbs, as will be seen hereafter.

The others are declined with the first or second article, and are either nominal or adjectives.

A list of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the First Article.

Sing. <i>Le mien, la mienne;</i> plur. <i>les miens, les miennes,</i> mine.	Sing. <i>le leur, la leur;</i> plur. <i>les leurs,</i> theirs.
Sing. <i>le tien, la tienne;</i> plur. <i>les tiens, les tiennes,</i> thine.	Sing. <i>lequel, laquelle;</i> plur. <i>lesquels,</i> which.
Sing. <i>le sien, la sienne;</i> plur. <i>les siens, les siennes,</i> his, her, its.	Sing. <i>l'un, l'une;</i> plur. <i>les uns, les unes,</i> the one.
Sing. <i>le nôtre, la nôtre;</i> plur. <i>les nôtres,</i> ours.	Sing. <i>l'autre,</i> the other.
Sing. <i>le vôtre, la vôtre;</i> plur. <i>les vôtres,</i> yours.	Sing. <i>le même, la même;</i> plur. <i>les mêmes,</i> the same.

The foregoing, and the other nominal pronouns being often joined to verbs in the discourse, I shall not give any Exercises upon them, before I have shewed the formation of

the last. I must however observe here, that the best way to learn the nominal pronouns, is to decline each of them with its respective article.

*A list of the Nominal Pronouns declined with the Second Article.*

Sing. <i>Moi, me</i> ; plur. <i>nous, us</i> .	sing. plur. <i>ce, he, she, it, they</i> .
sing. <i>moi-même, myself</i> ; plur. <i>nous-mêmes, ourselves</i> .	sing. <i>ceci, this</i> .
sing. <i>toi-même, thyself</i> ; plur. <i>vous-mêmes, yourselves</i> .	sing. <i>cela, that</i> .
sing. <i>lui, he, him</i> ; plur. <i>eux, they, them</i> .	sing. plur. <i>qui, who, which</i> .
sing. <i>lui-même, himself</i> ; plur. <i>eux-mêmes, themselves</i> .	sing. <i>ce qui, what</i> .
sing. <i>elle-même, herself</i> ; plur. <i>elles-même, themselves</i> .	sing. <i>ce que, what</i> :
sing. plur. <i>soi, one's self, him-self, herself, themselves</i> .	sing. <i>quelqu'un, somebody</i> ;
sing. plur. <i>soi-même, one's self, himself, herself, themselves</i> .	plur. <i>quelques uns, some</i> .
sing. <i>celui, he, him, that</i> ; plur. <i>ceux, they, those</i> .	sing. <i>aucun, none</i> .
sing. <i>celui-ci, this</i> ; plur. <i>ceux-ci, these</i> .	sing. <i>quoi, what</i> .
sing. <i>celui-là, that</i> ; plur. <i>ceux-là, those</i> .	<i>chacun, every body</i> .
sing. <i>celle, she, her, that</i> ; plur. <i>celles, they, those</i> .	sing. <i>pas un, not one</i> .
sing. <i>celle-ci, this</i> ; plur. <i>celles-ci, these</i> .	<i>quiconque, whosoever</i> .
sing. <i>celle-là that</i> ; plur. <i>celles-là, those</i> .	<i>nul, none</i> .
qui and quoi have <i>de qui, de quoi, and dont</i> , in their genitives.	<i>autrui, others</i> .
	<i>personne, no body</i> .
	<i>rien, nothing</i> .
	<i>tel, such</i> .
	<i>qui que ce soit, whosoever it is</i> .
	<i>quoi que ce soit, whatsoever</i> .
	<i>qui que ce fut, whosoever it was</i> .
	<i>quoi que ce fut, whatsoever it was</i> .
	<i>plusieurs, many</i> .
	<i>que, what, used without an article</i> .

*A list of the Pronouns Adjective declined with the First Article.*

sing. <i>Le même, la même, the same</i> ; plur. <i>les mêmes, the same</i> .
sing. <i>lequel, laquelle, who,</i>

whom, which ; plur. <i>lesquels, lesquelles, who, whom, which</i> .
---

*Exercises*

## Exercises upon the foregoing Pronouns.

## R U L E I.

*Le même, la même, les mêmes*, must always be placed before the nouns and adjectives, as *le même toit*, the same roof.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The same sun 1.	1 soleil, n. m.
of the same stars 1.	1 étoile, n. f.
to the same churches 1.	1 église, n. f.
the same person 1.	1 personne, n. f.
the same little 1 boy 2.	1 petit, adj. 2 garçon, n. m.
of the same square 2 tables 1.	1 table, n. f. 2 carré, adj.
to the same green 2 pease 1.	1 pois, n. m. 2 verd, adj.

## R U L E II.

*Même, himself, herself, itself, very ; and mêmes, themselves, very*, are often placed immediately after nouns and most pronouns, to encrease their energy, as *le Roi même*, the king himself.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Innocence itself.	Innocence, n. f.
virtue 1 itself.	1 vertu, n. f.
the English 1 themselves.	1 Anglois, n. m.
his very friends 1.	1 ami, n. m.
the laws 1 themself*. 1	1 loi, plur. loix, n. f.

## R U L E III.

*Lequel, laquelle, lesquels and lesquelles*, must be placed alone after their nouns, as *Les moutons à la dépouille desquels les hommes doivent leurs vêtemens*, the sheep to whose wool men owe their cloathing.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The Thames 1 in 2 the chan-	1 Tamise, n. f. 2 dans, prep.
nel 3 of which, &c.	3 lit, n. m.
the Lord 1 to whose protecti-	1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 protection,
on 2, &c.	n. f.
the sciences 1 to which, &c.	1 science, n. f.

EXERCISES upon the  
*A list of the Pronouns Adjective declined with the Second Article,*

Sing. <i>Mon, ma, my</i> ; plur. <i>mes</i> ,	sing. <i>leur, their</i> ; plur. <i>leurs,</i> <i>my.</i>
sing. <i>ton, ta, thy</i> ; plur. <i>tes, thy.</i>	sing. <i>quel, quelle, what, which;</i> sing. <i>son, sa, his, her, its</i> ; plur. <i>ses, his, her, its.</i>
sing. <i>notre, our</i> ; plur. <i>nos, our.</i>	sing. <i>certain, certaine, certain;</i> sing. <i>votre, your</i> ; plur. <i>vos,</i> <i>your.</i>
sing. <i>ce, cet, cette, this, that;</i> plur. <i>ces, these, those.</i>	sing. <i>autre, other</i> ; plur. <i>autres,</i> <i>other.</i>

*Exercises upon the foregoing Pronouns.*

R U L E I.

These pronouns must always be placed before their nouns,  
as *ma tabatiere, my snuff-box.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

<b>My grandfather</b> i.	<b>i grand pere, n. m.</b>
<b>to my uncle</b> i.	<b>i oncle, n. m.</b>
<b>thy brothers</b> i.	<b>i frere, n. m.</b>
<b>her sisters</b> i.	<b>i soeur, n. f.</b>
<b>to our house</b> i.	<b>i maison, n. f.</b>
<b>of your street</b> i.	<b>i rue, n. f.</b>
<b>this nobleman</b> i.	<b>i seigneur, n. m.</b>
<b>to this city</b> i.	<b>i ville, n. f.</b>
<b>of these reasons</b> i.	<b>i raison, n. f.</b>
<b>their relations</b> i.	<b>i parent, plur. ens, n. m.</b>
<b>what discourse</b> i.	<b>i discours, n. m.</b>
<b>a certain man</b> i.	<b>i quidam, n. m.</b>

R U L E II.

*Mon, ton, and son* must always be used before such of the nouns feminine as begin with a vowel, or an *b* not sounded, as *mon âme, my soul; mon honneur, my honour.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

<b>My plate</b> i.	<b>i Assiette, n. f.</b>
<b>thy ewer</b> i.	<b>i aiguiere, n. f.</b>
<b>her almond</b> i.	<b>i amande, n. f.</b>
<b>of my spouse</b> i.	<b>i épouse, n. f.</b>

of thy heires 1.	1 héritière, n. f.
of her alliance 1.	1 alliance, n. f.
to thy needle 1.	1 éguille, n. f.
to her emerald 1.	1 émeraude, n. f.

## R U L E III.

*Cet* must always be placed before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel, or an *h* not sounded, as *cet animal*, this animal; *cet homme là*, that man.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

This summer 1.	1 Eté, n. m.
this work 1.	1 ouvrage, n. m.
this bishop 1.	1 évêque, n. m.
that archbishop 1.	1 archevêque, n. m.

## R U L E IV.

The pronouns, declined with the second Article, must always be placed before the other adjectives, as *mon bel ange*, my pretty angel.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

My dear 1 friend 2.	1 Cher. 2 ami, n. m.
your good 1 neighbours 2.	1 bon. 2 voisin, n. m.
his bad 1 wine 2.	1 méchant. 2 vin, n. m.
our lovely 1 companion 2.	1 aimable. 2 compagne, n. f.
this fine 1 palace 2.	1 beau. 2 palais, n. m.
these long 1 walks.	1 long, ue. 2 promenade, n. f.
their little 1 bitch 2.	1 petit. 2 chienne, n. f.
what ugly 1 creature 2?	1 vilain. 2 créature, n. f.

## Of V E R B S.

There are six sorts of French verbs, viz. the Auxiliary, Active, Neuter, Passive, Impersonal and Reflected.

Four things may be distinguished in a French Verb, viz. its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

There are four moods, viz. the infinitive, indicative, imperative, and conjunctive.

The infinitive has two tenses, viz. the present, and its compound.

The indicative has ten, viz. the present, imperfect, preterite, future, conditional, and their compounds.

The imperative has one only, viz. the present.

## EXERCISES upon the

The conjunctive has four, viz. the present, the preterite, and their compounds.

There are in most of the French tenses two numbers, viz. the singular, which speaks of one; and the plural, which speaks of more than one.

Each of these numbers commonly has three persons, called the first, second, and third person.

The French verbs are conjugated with the conjunctive pronouns *je*, I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he; *elle*, she; *on*, one; *nous*, we; *vous*, ye; *ils*, they; *elles*, they; *on*, they.

The first person of the singular is *je*, I; the second *tu*, thou; and the third *il*, he; *elle*, she; and *on*, one.

The first person of the plural is *nous*, we; the second *vous*, you; and the third *ils*, they; *elles*, they; and *on*, they.

All the French nouns belong to the third persons of the verbs.

*The auxiliary verb Avoir, to have, conjugated in its single tenses.*

Infinitive. *Avoir*, to have.

Participle active. *Ayant*, having.

Participle passive. *Eu*, had.

*Indicative.*

Present. *J'ai*, I have.  
*tu as*, thou hast.

*il a*, he has.

*elle a*, she has.

*on a*, one has.

*nous avons*, we have.

*vous avez*, ye have.

*ils ont*, they have.

*elles ont*, they have.

*on a*, they have.

Imp. *J'avois*, I had.

*tu avois*, thou had'st.

*il avoit*, he had.

*nous avions*, we had.

*vous aviez*, ye had.

*ils avoient*, they had.

Pret. *J'eus*, I had.

*tu eus*, thou had'st.

*il eut*, he had.

*nous eumes*, we had.

*vous eutes*, ye had.

*ils eurent*, they had.

Fut. *J'aurai*, I shall, or will have.

*tu auras*, thou shalt have.

*il aura*, he shall have.

*nous aurons*, we shall have.

*vous aurez*, ye shall have.

*ils auront*, thou shalt have.

Conditional. *J'aurois*, I should, would, could, or might have; *tu aurois*, thou shouldest have; *il auroit*, he should have;

have ; *nous aurions*, we should have ; *vous auriez*, ye should have ; *ils auroient*, they should have.

*Imperative.*

Pres. <i>Aie, have.</i>	<i>ayez, have.</i>
<i>qu'il ait, let him have.</i>	<i>qu'ils aient, let them have.</i>
<i>ayons, let us have.</i>	

*Conjunctive.*

Pres. <i>Que j'ait, that I may have.</i>	Pret. <i>Que j'eusse, that I might have.</i>
<i>que tu aies, that thou mayest have.</i>	<i>que tu eusses, that thou mightest have.</i>
<i>qu'il ait, that he may have.</i>	<i>qu'il eût, that he might have.</i>
<i>que nous ayons, that we may have.</i>	<i>que nous eussions, that we might have.</i>
<i>que vous ayez, that ye may have.</i>	<i>que vous eussiez, that ye might have.</i>
<i>qu'ils aient, that they may have.</i>	<i>qu'ils eussent, that they might have.</i>

*Use of this Verb.*

This Verb serves to form the compounds of the auxiliary Verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, those of all the Verbs active and impersonal, and those of most Verbs neuter.

*Formation of the compounds of the Verb Avoir.*

*Rule.* To form these compounds, you need only add the participle passive *eu* after the foregoing parts of the infinitive, participle active, indicative, and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, as

Inf. *Avoir eu*, to have had.

Part. act. *Ayant eu*, having had.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *J'ai eu*, I have had ; *tu as eu*, *il a eu*, *nous avons eu* ; *vous avez eu*, *ils ont eu*.

Imp. *J'avois eu*, I had had ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive.

*Formation of the compounds of the other foregoing Verbs.*

These compounds are formed like those of the Verb *avoir*, viz. by adding the participle passive of the Verb you have a mind to conjugate after the single parts of the infinitive, participle active, indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*, as

*Avoir été*, to have been ; *ayant été*, having been ; *j'ai été*, I have been ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

*Avoir porté*, to have carried ; *ayant porté*, having carried ; *j'ai porté*, I have carried ; and so on to the end of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

*Exercises upon the verb Avoir, to have, and the compounds of the foregoing verbs.*

Before the learner sets about these and other Exercises upon the French Verbs, he must observe, first, that the conjunctive Pronouns *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*, and *on*, are nominative cases to the French Verbs.

Secondly, that when we affirm or deny, the nominative commonly comes before the Verb, as *la loi commande*, the law commands ; *les écoliers n'étudient pas*, the scholars don't study.

Thirdly, that in the same cases the accusative commonly follows the Verb, as *il aime la vertu*, he loves virtue ; *il n'aime pas le mensonge*, he does not love lying.

Fourthly, That the participles passive are declined like Adjectives ; for we say, *donné*, *donnée*, *donnés*, *données*, given.

I have some money 1.

1 *argent*, n. m.

he has prudence 1.

1 *prudence*, n. f.

Peter 1 has discretion 2.

1 *Pierre*, n. m. 2 *discretion*, n. f.

we have bibles 1.

1 *bible*, n. f.

ye have grammars 1.

1 *grammaire*, n. f.

they have trees 1.

1 *arbre*, n. m.

John 1 and Andrew 2 have

1 *Jean*, n. m. 2 *André*, n. m.

courage 3.

3 *courage*, n. m.

I had fine tulips 1.

1 *tulipe*, n. f.

he had large 1 plumbs 2.

1 *gros*, se, adj. 2 *prune*, n. f.

Mr. Dune had learning 1.

1 *savoir*, n. m.

-we had several 1 foes 2.

1 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 2 *ennemi*,

n. m.

ye had wealth 1.

1 *bien*, n. m.

they had modesty 1.

1 *modestie*, n. f.

I shall have a companion 1.

1 *companion*, n. m.

my master 1 will have a fine 2

1 *maitre*, n. m. 2 *beau*, adj.

garden 3.

3 *jardin*, n. m.

we

- we shall have a holyday 1.  
ye shall have your reward 1.  
they shall have the bastinado 1.  
I have proposed 1 my de-  
sign 2.  
thou hast sung 1 a song 2.  
he has comforted 1 the af-  
flicted 2.  
we have protected 1 the wi-  
dow 2 and orphan 3.  
ye have accused 1 the guil-  
ty 2.  
the English 1 have beat 2 the  
French 3.  
I had begun 1 my exercise 2.  
thou had done 1 your work 2.  
the king 1 of Prussia 2 had  
defeated 3 the Austrians 4.  
we had obtained 1 leave 2.  
ye had followed 1 good 2 ex-  
amples 3.  
ye had committed 1 great 2  
faults 3.  
they had visited 1 several  
countries 3.  
I shall have dined 1.  
thou wilt have built 1 thy  
house 2.  
Mr. 1 Duval will have end-  
ed 2 his journey 3.  
we shall have conquered 1  
our enemies 2.  
ye will have buried 1 your  
mother 2.  
they will have explained 1  
their meaning 2.  
I shou'd have discovered 1  
his shame 2.  
ye would have asked 1 par-  
don 2.  
we should have thought 1 o-  
therwise 2.
- 1 *congé*, n. m.  
1 *recompense*, n. f.  
1 *bastonnade*, n. f.  
1 *proposé*, p. p. 2 *déssein*, n. m.  
1 *chanté*, p. p. 2 *chanson*, n. f.  
1 *consolé*, p. p. 2 *affligé*, n. m.  
1 *protégé*, p. p. 2 *veuve*, n. f.  
3 *orphelin*, n. m.  
1 *accusé*, p. p. 2 *coupable*,  
n. m.  
1 *Anglois*, n. m. 2 *battu*, p. p.  
3 *Français*, n. m.  
1 *commencé*, p. p. 2 *thème*, n. m.  
1 *fait*, p. p. 2 *ouvrage*, n. m.  
1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *Prusse*, n. f.  
3 *défait*, p. p. 4 *Autrichien*.  
1 *obtenu*, p. p. 2 *permission*, n. f.  
1 *sui-vi*, p. p. 2 *bon*, adj. 3 *ex-  
emple*, n. m.  
1 *commis*, p. p. 2 *grand*, adj.  
3 *faute*, n. f.  
1 *visité*, p. p. 2 *plusieurs*, adj.  
plur. 3 *pays*, n. m.  
1 *diné*, p. p.  
1 *bâti*, p. p. 2 *maison*, n. f.  
1 *Monsieur*, n. m. 2 *achevé*,  
p. p. 3 *voyage*, n. m.  
1 *conquis*, p. p. 2 *ennemi*, n. m.  
1 *enterré*, p. p. *mère*, n. f.  
1 *expliqué*, p. p. 2 *pensée*, n. f.  
1 *découvert*, p. p. 2 *honte*, n. f.  
1 *demandé*, p. p. 2 *pardon*.  
1 *pensé*, p. p. 2 *autrement*.

they should have spelled 1      1 *épellé*, p. p.    2 *mot*, n. m.  
this word 2.

I might have refreshed 1 my      1 *rafraîchi*, p. p.    2 *mémoire*,  
memory 2.

you might have consulted 1      1 *consulté*, p. p.    2 *évêque*, n. m.  
the bishop 2.

we might have avoided 1 his      1 *évité*, p. p.    2 *piège*, n. m.  
snares 2.

they might have breakfasted 1      1 *déjeuné*, p. p.

they would have listened 1      1 *écouté*, p. p.

they would have paid 1 their      1 *payé*, p. p.    2 *dette*, n. f.  
debts 2.

*The auxiliary verb Etre, conjugated in its single tenses.*

Infinitive. *Etre*, to be.

Part. act. *Etant*, being.

Part. pas. *Êté*, been.

#### Indicative.

Pref. *Je suis*, I am.  
*tu es*, thou art.

*il est*, he is.

*nous sommes*, we are.

*vous êtes*, ye are.

*ils sont*, they are.

Imp. *J'étois*, I was.  
*tu étois*, thou wast.

*il étoit*, he was.

*nous étions*, we were.

*vous étiez*, ye were.

*ils étoient*, they were.

Cond. *Je serois*, I should be; *tu serois*, thou shouldest be;  
*il seroit*, he should be; *nous serions*, we should be; *vous seriez*, ye should be;  
*ils seroient*, they should be.

#### Imperative.

Pref. *Sois*, be.

*qu'il soit*, let him be.

*soyons*, let us be.

*soyez*, be.

*qu'ils soient*, let them be.

#### Conjunctive.

Pref. *Que je sois*, that I may be.  
*que tu sois*, that thou mayest be.  
*qu'il soit*, that he may be.

*que nous soyons*, that we may be.  
*que vous soyez*, that ye may be.  
*qu'ils soient*, that they may be.

Pret.

Pret. *Que je fusse*, that I might be. *que nous fussions*, that we might be.  
*que tu fusse*, that thou mightest be. *que vous fussiez*, that ye might be.  
*qu'il fût*, that he might be. *qu'ils fissent*, that they might be.

### *Exercises upon the foregoing Tenses.*

To make the following Exercises, it is necessary to know, that the Noun or Adjective, denoting what the nominative of the Verb *être* is, must also be put in the nominative, as *vous êtes sage*, you are wise.

I am the Lord 1 your God 2. 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*, n. m.  
 wisdom 1 is more precious 2 than rubies 3. 1 *sagesse*, n. f. 2 *précieux*, euse, adj. 3 *rubis*, n. m.

the fear 1 of the Lord is the beginning 2 of knowledge 3. 1  *crainte*, n. f. 2 *commencement*, n. m. 3 *sagesse*, n. f.

we are the children 1 of God. 1 *enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.  
 you are good 1 and wise 2. 1 *bon*, adj. 2 *sage*, adj.  
 the brave 1 are not cruel 2. 1 *les hommes courageux*. 2 *cruel*, adj.

William 1 the Conqueror 2 was king 3 of England 4. 1 *Guillaume*, n. m. 2 *conquérant*, n. m. 3 *roi*, n. m.  
 4 *Angleterre*, n. f.

Adam was the first 1 man 2. 1 *premier*, adj. 2 *homme*, n. m.  
 Solomon 1 was the wisest 2 of men. 1 *Salomon*, n. m. 2 *sage*, adj.

we were present 1 at the ceremony 2. 1 *présent*, plur. *ans*, adj. 2 à la cérémonie.

Cain and Abel were brothers 1. 1 *frere*, n. m.

the good 1 shall be rewarded 2. 1 *bon*, n. m. 2 *récompensé*, p. p.

the wicked 1 shall be punished 2. 1 *méchant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.  
 2 *puni*, p. p.

the poor 1 in spirit 2 shall be blessed 3. 1 *pauvre*, n. m. 2 *d'esprit*.  
 3 *glorifié*, p. p.

you should be more generous 1. 1 *généreux*, euse, adj.

Observe that the compounds of the Verb *être*, are liable to the same rules as its single tenses.

*Use of the verb Etre.*

With the Verbs *avoir* and *être*, we form the compounds of all the French Verbs. The first, as I have already shewed, serves to form its own compounds, those of the Verb *être*, those of all the active Verbs, and those of most Verbs neuter. The last, as I shall shew by and by, serves to form the compounds of the reflected Verbs, and those of few Verbs neuter.

*Of VERBS PASSIVE.*

To form a Verb passive, you need only add the participle passive of any Verb active after every single and compounded part of the Verb *être*, as

Inf. *Etre aimé*, to be loved. Comp. *avoir été aimé*, to have been loved.

Part. act. *Etant aimé*, being loved. Comp. *ayant été aimé*, having been loved.

*Indicative.**Single Tenses.*

Pres. *Je suis aimé*, I am loved ; *tu es aimé*, *il est aimé*, *nous sommes aimés*, *vous êtes aimés*, *ils sont aimés*.

Imp. *J'étais aimé*, I was loved ; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive \*.

*Compounds.*

Pres. *J'ai été aimé*, I have been loved ; *tu as été aimé*, *il a été aimé*, *nous avons été aimés*, *vous avez été aimés*, *ils ont été aimés*. *J'avois été aimé*, I had been loved ; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the Verb *être* ‡.

*Exercises upon the Verbs Passive.*

I am forsaken 1.

1 *Abandonné*, p. p.

thou art humbled 1.

1 *humilié*, p. p.

the tree 1 is pulled down 2.

1 *arbre*, n. m. 2 *abattu*, p. p.

we are detested 1.

1 *détesté*, p. p.

you are hated 1.

1 *hâi*, p. p.

they are killed 1.

1 *tué*, p. p.

the victims 1 were sacrificed 2.

1 *victime*, n. f. 2 *sacrifié*, p. p.

the prophecies 1 were fulfilled 2.

1 *prophétie*, n. f. 2 *accompli*,  
P. P.

\* See page 34, 35.

‡ See page 30, 31.

your

your advice I shall be fol-	<i>conseil</i> , n. m. 2 <i>suivi</i> , p. p.
lowed 2.	
you shall be admonished I.	I <i>admonestié</i> , p. p.
these laws I should be re-	I <i>loi</i> , plur. <i>loix</i> , n. f. 2 <i>re-</i>
peated 2.	<i>voqué</i> , p. p.
I have been esteemed I.	I <i>estimé</i> , p. p.
thou hast been believed I.	I <i>cru</i> , p. p.
our trespasses I have been	I <i>offense</i> , n. f. 2 <i>pardonné</i> ,
forgiven 2.	p. p.
we have been forgotten I.	I <i>oublié</i> , p. p.
you have been condemned I.	I <i>condamné</i> , p. p.
the towns I have been demo-	I <i>ville</i> , n. f. 2 <i>démoli</i> , p. p.
lished 2.	
we had been sent I.	I <i>envoyé</i> , p. p.
they had been burnt I.	I <i>brûlé</i> , p. p.
we shall have been imitated I.	I <i>imité</i> , p. p.
we should have been purged I.	I <i>purgé</i> , p. p.

### Conjugation of the French Verbs.

The Conjugation of a Verb consists in its various endings, denoting its moods, single tenses, numbers and persons.

We have six different Conjugations, all known by the ending of their respective infinitive.

The infinitive of the first ends in *er*, like *porter*, to carry.

That of the second ends in *ir*, like *finir*, to finish.

That of the third ends in *oir*, like *recevoir*, to receive.

The three others, ending in *e* not sounded, can only be distinguished from one another by the vowels and diphthongs coming immediately before the consonants of their respective ending.

The vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, help to form the ending of the fourth, as

*Battre*, to beat.

*mordre*, to bite,

*permettre*, to permit.

*conclure*, to conclude.

*construire*, to build.

The diphthongs *ai*, *oi*, and *ou*, help to form the ending of the fourth, as,

*Plaire*, to please.

*coudre*, to sow.

*boire*, to drink.

The nasal vowels *an*, *en*, *em*, *on*, *ain*, *ein*, and *oin*, help to form the ending of the last, as

*Répandre*,

## 38 EXERCISES upon the

*Répandre*, to spill  
*défendre*, to defend.  
*répondre*, to answer.

*craindre*, to fear:  
*peindre*, to paint.  
*joindre*, to join.

The infinitive is the root of the participles, and first persons singular of the single tenses; for from *aimer*, to love, come

*Aimant*, loving.  
*aimé*, loved.  
*j'aime*, I love.  
*j'aimois*, I did love.  
*j'aimai*, I loved.

*j'aimerai*, I shall love.  
*j'aimerois*, I should love.  
*que j'aime*, that I may love.  
*que j'aimasse*, that I might love.

As to the other five persons of every single tense, they are commonly derived, even in the irregular Verbs, from the first person of the tense they belong to. Therefore from *j'aime*, I love, are formed,

*Tu aimes*, thou lovest.  
*il aime*, he loves.  
*nous aimons*, we love.

*vous aimez*, ye love.  
*ils aiment*, they love.

The imperative of a Verb of the first conjugation is formed, as will be shewn afterwards, of the present of the indicative. As to those of the other conjugations, they are formed of the presents of the indicative and conjunctive, as  
*Finis*, finish.  
*qu'il finisse*, let him finish.  
*finissions*, let us finish.

*finissez*, finish.  
*qu'ils finissent*, let them finish.

### *First Conjugation.*

Inf. *Porter*, to carry.  
 Part. act. *Portant*, carrying.  
 Part. pas. *Porté*, carried.

#### *Indicative.*

Pref. *Je porte*, I carry; *tu portes*, *il porte*, *nous portons*,  
*vous portez*, *ils portent*,

Pret. *Je portai*, I carried; *tu portas*, *il porta*, *nous portames*, *vous portates*, *ils portarunt*.

Imp. *Je portois*, I did carry; *tu portois*, *il portoit*, *nous portions*,  
*vous portiez*, *ils portoient*.

Fut. *Je porterai*, I shall or  
 will carry; *tu porteras*, *il portera*, *nous porterons*, *vous porterez*, *ils porteront*.

Cond. *Je porterois*, I should, would, could, or might carry;  
*tu porterois*, *il porteroit*, *nous porterois*, *vous porteroiez*, *ils porteroient*.

*Imperative.*

*Imperative.*

<i>Porte, carry.</i>	<i>portez, carry.</i>
<i>qu'il porte, let him carry.</i>	<i>qu'ils portent, let them carry.</i>
<i>portons, let us carry.</i>	

*Conjunctive.*

<i>Pres. Que je porte, that I may carry ; que tu portes, qu'il porte, que nous portions, que vous portiez, qu'ils portent.</i>	<i>Pret. Que je portasse, that I might carry ; tu portasses, il portât, nous portassions, vous portassiez, ils portassent.</i>
--	--

*Exercises upon this Conjugation.*

You keep 1 the commandments 2 of God 3.

we avoid 1 the company 2 of the wicked 3.

ye honour 1 the king 2.

they change 1 their course of life 2.

we examined 1 their features 2.

Adam eat 1 the forbidden 3 fruit 2.

ye sung 1 the praises 2 of the Lord 3.

David reigned 1 forty seven 2 years 3.

I shall praise 1 the Almighty 2.

God will judge 1 the living 2

and the dead 3.

let him meditate 1 the precepts 2 of the gospel 3.

let us hear 1 the voice 2 of truth 3.

1 *Garder.* 2 *commandement,* plur. *ens,* n. m., 3 *Dieu,* n. m.

1 *éviter.* 2 *compagnie,* n. f. 3 *mechant,* plur. *ans,* adj.

1 *respecter.* 2 *roi.* n. m.

1 *changer.* 2 *maniere de vivre.*

1 *examiner.* 2 *trait,* n. m.

1 *manger.* 2 *fruit,* n. m. 3 *desendu,* p. p.

1 *chanter.* 2 *louange,* n. f. 3 *seigneur.*

1 *regner.* 2 *quarante sept,* adj. und. 3 *an,* n. m.

1 *louer.* 2 *tout puissant,* n. m.

1 *juger.* 2 *vivant,* plur. *ans,*

n. m. 3 *mort.* n. m.

1 *méditer.* 2 *précepte,* n. m. 3 *évangile,* n. m.

1 *écouter.* 2 *voix,* n. f. 3 *vérité,* n. f.

*Irregularities of the first Conjugation.*

This Conjugation has only two irregular Verbs, viz. *aller*, to go ; and *puer*, to stink. This last is only irregular in the present indicative, where we say, *je pus, tu pus, il pus*, instead of *je pue, tu pues, il pue*. As to the first, it is thus conjugated.

*Aller,*

*Aller*, to go. *Allant*, going. *Allé*, gone.

*Je vais*, or *je was*, I go ; *tu was*, *il va*, *nous allons*, *vous allez*, *ils vont*.

*J'allois*, I did go. *J'allai*, I went. *J'irai*, I shall go. *J'irois*, I should go.

*Va*, go ; *qu'il aille*, *allons*, *allez*, *qu'ils aillent*.

*Que j'aile*, that I may go.

*Que j'allasse*, that I might go.

What parts of the foregoing Verb I have designedly omitted may easily be formed by any one who can conjugate the Verb *porter*.

*Exercises upon some of the Irregularities of the Verb Aller.*

Thou shalt go, we shall go, they shall go, he should go, ye would go, they should go, that he may go, that ye may go, that they may go.

### Second Conjugation.

Inf. *Finir*, to finish.

Part. act. *Finissant*, finishing.

Part. pas. *Fini*, finished.

#### Indicative.

Pres. <i>Je finis</i> , I finish ; <i>tu finis</i> , you finish ; <i>nous finissons</i> , we finish ; <i>vous finissez</i> , you finish ; <i>ils finissent</i> , they finish.	Pret. <i>Je finis</i> , I finished ; <i>tu finis</i> , you finished ; <i>nous finimes</i> , we finished ; <i>vous finites</i> , you finished ; <i>ils finirent</i> , they finished.
---	---

Imp. <i>Je finissois</i> , I did finish ; <i>tu finissois</i> , you did finish ; <i>nous finissions</i> , we did finish ; <i>vous finissiez</i> , you did finish ; <i>ils finisoient</i> , they did finish.	Fut. <i>Je finirai</i> , I shall finish ; <i>tu finiras</i> , you shall finish ; <i>nous finirons</i> , we shall finish ; <i>vous finirez</i> , you shall finish ; <i>ils finiront</i> , they shall finish.
---	---

Cond. *Je finirois*, I should finish ; *tu finirois*, you should finish ; *nous finirions*, we should finish ; *vous finiriez*, you should finish ; *ils finiroient*, they should finish.

#### Imperative.

Pres. *Finis*, finish ; *qu'il finisse*, *finissons*, *finissez*, *qu'ils finissent*.

#### Conjunctive.

Pres. *Que je finisse*, that I may finish ; *que tu finisses*, that you may finish ; *que nous finissions*, that we may finish ; *que vous finissiez*, that you may finish ; *que ils finissent*, that they may finish.

Pret. *Que je finisse*, that I might finish ; *que tu finisses*, that you might finish ; *que nous finissions*, that we might finish ; *que vous finissiez*, that you might finish ; *que ils finissent*, that they might finish.

The

The Exercises, which I might give upon this, and the four following Conjugations, being grounded upon the same principles with those I have given upon the first, I shall only exercise the learner upon some of the irregularities which are found in those conjugations ; and since, as I have already observed, the five last persons of a tense are, even in the irregular Verbs, regularly derived from the first, it will be sufficient, in the four last Conjugations, to set down the first persons of such of the tenses as are not excepted from the general rule.

*Irregularities of this Conjugation.*

The irregular Verbs of this Conjugation are,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Bouillir</i> , to boil.              | 10. <i>couvrir</i> , to cover.            |
| 2. <i>sortir</i> , to go out, to come out. | 11. <i>cueillir</i> , to gather.          |
| 3. <i>dormir</i> , to sleep.               | 12. <i>tenir</i> , to hold, to keep.      |
| 4. <i>mentir</i> , to lie.                 | 13. <i>venir</i> , to come.               |
| 5. <i>sentir</i> , to feel.                | 14. <i>courir</i> , to run.               |
| 6. <i>mourir</i> , to die.                 | 15. <i>vêtir</i> , to cloath.             |
| 7. <i>offrir</i> , to offer.               | 16. <i>acquérir</i> , to acquire, to get. |
| 8. <i>souffrir</i> , to suffer.            | 17. <i>fuir</i> , to run away, to void.   |
| 9. <i>ouvrir</i> , to open.                |   |

and their compounds and derivatives, the irregular parts of which are thus conjugated:

1. *Bouillir*, to boil.

*Bouillant*, boiling. *Je bouis*, I boil ; *tu bouis*, *il bout*, *nous bouillons*, *vous bouillez*, *ils bouillent*. *Je bouillois*, I did boil. *Que je bouille*, that I may boil.

2. *Sortir*, to go out, to come out.

*Sortant*, going out. *Je sors*, I go out ; *tu sors*, *il sort*, *nous sortons*, *vous sortez*, *ils sortent*. *Je sortis*, I did go out. *Que je sorte*, that I may go out.

3. *Dormir*, to sleep.

*Dormant*, sleeping. *Je dors*, I sleep ; *tu dors*, *il dort*, *nous dormons*, *vous dormez*, *ils dorment*. *Je dormois*, I did sleep. *Que je dorme*, that I may sleep.

4. *Mentir*, to lie.

*Menant*, lying. *Je mens*, I lie ; *tu mens*, *il ment*, *nous mentons*,

42 EXERCISES upon the

*tons, vous mentez, ils mentent. Je mentoïs, I did lie. Que je mente,* that I may lie.

5. *Sentir, to feel.*

*Sentant, feeling. Je sens, I feel ; tu sens, il sent, nous sentons, vous sentez, ils sentent. Je sentoïs, I did feel. Que je sente, that I may feel.*

6. *Mourir, to die.*

*Mourant, dying. Mort, dead. Je meurs, I die ; tu meurs, il meurt, nous mourons, vous mourez, ils meurent. Je mourroïs, I did die. Je mourrai, I shall die. Je mourrois, I should die. Que je meure, that I may die.*

7. *Offrir, to offer.*

*Offrant, offering. Offert, offered. J'offre, I offer. Que j'offre, that I may offer.*

8. *Souffrir, to suffer.*

*Souffrant, suffering. Souffert, suffered. Je souffre, I suffer. Que je souffre, that I may suffer.*

9. *Ouvrir, to open.*

*Ouvrant, opening. Ouvert, opened. Tonnes, I open. Que j'ouvre, that I may open.*

10. *Couvrir, to cover.*

*Couvrant, covering. Couvert, covered. Je couvre, I cover. Que je couvre, that I may cover.*

11. *Cueillir, to gather.*

*Cueillant, gathering. Je cueille, I gather. Que je cueille, that I may gather.*

12. *Tenir, to hold.*

*Tenant, holding. Tenu, held. Je tiens, I hold ; tu tiens, il tient, nous tenons, vous tenez, ils tiennent. Je tenoïs, I did hold. Je tins, I held. Je tiendrai, I shall hold. Je tiendroïs, I should hold. Que je tienne, that I may hold. Que je tinsse, that I might hold.*

13. *Venir, to come.*

*Venant, coming. Venu, come. Je viens, I come, tu viens, il*

*il vient, nous venons, vous venez, ils viennent. Je venois, I did come. Je vins, I came. Je viendrai, I shall come. Je viendrois, I should come. Que je vienne, that I may come. Que je vinsse, that I might come.*

14. *Courir, to run.*

*Courant, running. Couru, run. Je cours, I run; tu cours, il court, nous courons, vous courrez, ils courent. Je courrois, I did run. Je courus, I ran. Je courrai, I shall run. Je courrois, I should run. Que je courre, that I may run. Que je couruisse, that I might run.*

15. *Vêtir, to cloath.*

*Vêtant, cloathing. Vêtu, cloathed. Je vets, I cloath. Je vêts, I cloathed.*

16. *Acquérir, to acquire.*

*Acquérant, acquiring. Acquis, acquired. J'acquiers, I acquire; tu acquiers, il acquiert, nous acquérons, vous acquérez, ils acquierent. J'acquerois, I did acquire. J'acquis, I acquired. J'acquerai, I shall acquire. J'acquerrois, I should acquire. Que j'acquiers, that I may acquire. Que j'acquisse, that I might acquire.*

17. *Fuir, to run away.*

*Fuyant, running away. Nous fuyons, we run away, vous fuyez, ils fuyent. Je fuyois, I did run away. Que je fuye, that I may run away.*

*Exercises upon the foregoing Irregularities.*

The pot 1 boils very fast. 1 *Pot*, n. m. 2 à gros bouillons.

I go out, come out with 1 1 *avec*. 2 *moi*, pron. nom. me.

he sleeps like 1 a top 2. 1 *comme*. 2 *sabot*, n. m.  
punish 1 your children 2, 1 *punir*, v. 2. 2 *enfant*, plur.  
when 3 they lie. 3 *quand*.

she feels great 1 pains 2. 1 *grand*, adj. 2 *douleur*, n. f.  
my uncle 1 is dead. 1 *oncle*, n. m.

I die with grief 1. 2 *de douleur*.

he

he will die to morrow 1.

1 *demain*.

I offer my services 1. to your friend 2.

1 *service*, n. m. 2 *ami*, n. m.

he suffers the extravagant 1 expences 2 of his son 3.

1 *fou*, *folle*, adj. 2 *dépense*, n. f. 3 *filz*, n. m.

Christ 1 has suffered the death 2 of the crois 3.

1 *Jesu Christ*, n. m. 2 *mort*, n. f. 3 *croix*, n. f.

the way 1 is open.

1 *chemin*, n. m.

she opens the door 1 of her chamber 2.

1 *porte*, n. f. 2 *chambre*, n. f.

darkness 1 covers the face 2 of the earth 3.

1 *les ténèbres*, n. f. plur. 2 *face*, n. f. 3 *terre*, n. f.

I gather beautiful 1 flowers 2.

1 *beau*, *belle*, adj. 2 *fleur*, n. f.

I hold the first rank 1.

1 *premier*, adj. 2 *rang*, n. m.

I shall keep my word 1.

1 *parole*, n. f.

she shall come immediately 1.

1 *sur le champ*.

he has got a great 1 name 2.

1 *grand*, adj. 2 *réputation*, n. f.

they avoid the company 1 of the wicked 2.

1 *compagnie*, n. f. 2 *méchant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.

### Third Conjugation.

*Recevoir*, to receive.

*je recevois*, I should receive.

*recevant*, receiving.

*que je reçoive*, that I may re-

*reçu*, received.

ceive ; *que tu recevres*, qu'il

*je reçois*, I receive ; *tu reçois*,

*recoire*, que nous recevions,

*il reçoit*, *nous recevons*, *vous*

*que vous receviez*, qu'ils re-

*recevez*, *ils reçoivent*.

coivent.

*je recevois*, I did receive.

*que je refusse*, that I might re-

*je reçus*, I received.

ceive.

*je recevrai*, I shall receive.

### Irregularities of this Conjugation.

The irregular verbs of this conjugation are,

*Choir*, to fall.

*vouloir*, to be willing.

*déchoir*, to decay.

*pouvoir*, to be able.

*échoir*, to expire.

*movoir*, to move.

*voir*, to see.

*savoir*, to know.

*s'asseoir*, to sit down.

*ravoir*, to get again.

*valoir*, to be worth.

*pleuvoir*, to rain.

*Ravoir* is used only in the infinitive. *Choir*, *déchoir*, and *échoir* want several tenses, and have in their participle passive

passive *chu*, fallen; *déchu*, decayed; *échu*, expired; and in the preterite of the indicative, *je chus*, I fell; *je déchus*, I decayed; *j'échus*, I expired. The other foregoing verbs are thus conjugated.

1. *Voir*, to see.

<i>Voir</i> , to see.	<i>je voyois</i> , I did see.
<i>voyant</i> , seeing.	<i>je vis</i> , I saw.
<i>vû</i> , seen.	<i>je verrai</i> , I shall see.
<i>je vois</i> , I see; <i>tu vois</i> , <i>il voit</i> ,	<i>je verrois</i> , I should see.
<i>nous voyons</i> , <i>vous voyez</i> , <i>ils voient</i> .	<i>que je voie</i> , that I may see. <i>que je visse</i> , that I might see.

2. *S'asseoir*, to sit down.

<i>S'asseoir</i> , to sit down.	<i>je m'asseoirai</i> , I shall sit down.
<i>s'asseoyant</i> , sitting down.	<i>je m'asseoirois</i> , I should sit down.
<i>je m'asseoiois</i> , I sit down, <i>tu t'asseoiois</i> , <i>il s'asseoit</i> , <i>nous nous assayoions</i> , <i>vous vous assayoiez</i> , <i>ils s'asseoyent</i> .	<i>que je m'asseoye</i> , that I may sit down.
<i>je m'asseayoais</i> , I did sit down.	<i>que je m'assisse</i> , that I might sit down.
<i>je m'assis</i> , I sat down.	

This Verb being reflected, must not be learned before one is acquainted with the reflected Verbs. It is otherwise conjugated by some.

3. *Valoir*, to be worth.

<i>Valoir</i> , to be worth.	<i>je valoisi</i> , I was worth.
<i>valant</i> , being worth.	<i>je valus</i> , I was worth.
<i>valu</i> , been worth.	<i>je vaudrai</i> , I shall be worth.
<i>je vaus</i> , I am worth; <i>tu vaus</i> ,	<i>je vaudrois</i> , I should be worth.
<i>il vaut</i> , <i>nous valons</i> , <i>vous valez</i> , <i>ils valent</i> .	<i>je vaille</i> , I may be worth. <i>je valusse</i> , I might be worth.

4. *Vouloir*, to be willing.

<i>Vouloir</i> , to be willing.	<i>je vouloisi</i> , I was willing.
<i>voulant</i> , being willing.	<i>je voulus</i> , I was willing.
<i>voulu</i> , been willing.	<i>je voudrai</i> , I shall be willing.
<i>je veux</i> , I am willing; <i>tu veux</i> ,	<i>je voudrois</i> , I should be willing.
<i>il veut</i> , <i>nous voulons</i> , <i>vous voulez</i> , <i>ils veulent</i> .	<i>je veuille</i> , I may be willing. <i>je voulusse</i> , I might be willing.

5. *Pouvoir*,

## 5. Pouvoir, to be able.

*Pouvoir*, to be able.*pouvant*, being able.*pu*, been able.*je peux*, or *je puis*, I am able;*tu peux, il peut, nous pouvons,**vous pouvez, ils peuvent.**je pouvois*, I was able.*je pus*, I was able.*je pourrai*, I shall be able.*je pourrois*, I should be able.*je puisse*, I may be able.*je pussi*, I might be able.

## 6. Mouvoir, to move.

*Mouvoir*, to move.*mouvant*, moving.*mû*, moved.*je meus*, I move; *tu meus*, *il**meut*, *nous mouvons*, *vous**mouvez*, *ils meuvent*.*je mouvois*, I did move.

## 7. Savoir, to know.

*Savoir*, to know.*sachant*, knowing.*sû*, known.*je fais*, I know; *tu fais*, *il**sait*, *nous savons*, *vous**savent*.*je saivois*, I did know.*je fus*, I knew.*je saurai*, I shall know.*je saurois*, I should know.*je sache*, I may know.*je fusse*, I might know.

## 8. Pleuvoir, to rain, a verb impersonal.

*Pleuvoir*, to rain.*il pleut*, it rains.*il pleuwoit*, it did rain.*il plut*, it rained.*il pluvra*, it will rain.*il pluvroit*, it would rain.*il pluwe*, it may rain.*il plus*, it might rain.

*Prévaloir*, to prevail; and *émouvoir*, to stir up, are conjugated like their single verbs.

## Fourth Conjugation.

The verbs of this conjugation must be formed after the following patterns.

## The vowel A in the ending.

*Battre*, to beat.*battant*, beating.*battu*, beaten.*je bats*, I beat; *tu bat*, *il bat*,*nous battons*, *vous battez*,*ils battent*.

*je battois*, I did beat.  
*je battis*, I beat.  
*je battrai*, I shall beat.

*je battrois*, I should beat.  
*je batte*, I may beat.  
*je battisse*, I might beat.

*E in the ending.*

*Mettre*, to put.  
*mettant*, putting.  
*mis*, put.  
*je mets*, I put; *tu mets*, *il met*, *nous mettons*, *vous mettez*, *ils mettent*.

*je mettais*, I did put.  
*je mis*, I put.  
*je mettrai*, I shall put.  
*je mettrois*, I should put.  
*je mette*, I may put.  
*je misse*, I might put.

*I in the ending.*

*Construire*, to build.  
*construisant*, building.  
*construit*, built.  
*je construis*, I build; *tu construis*, *il construit*, *nous construisons*, *vous construisez*, *ils construisent*.

*je construisois*, I did build.  
*je construisis*, I built.  
*je construirai*, I shall build.  
*je construairois*, I should build.  
*je construise*, I may build.  
*je construisisse*, I might build.

*O in the ending.*

*Mordre*, to bite.  
*mordant*, biting.  
*mordu*, bit.  
*je mords*, I bite; *tu mords*, *il mord*, *nous mordons*, *vous mordez*, *ils mordent*.

*je mordots*, I did bite.  
*je mordis*, I bit.  
*je mordrai*, I shall bite.  
*je mordrois*, I should bite.  
*je morde*, I may bite.  
*je mordisse*, I might bite.

*U in the ending.*

*Conclure*, to conclude.  
*concluant*, concluding.  
*conclu*, concluded.  
*je conclus*, I conclude; *tu conclus*, *il conclut*, *nous concluons*, *vous concluez*, *ils concluent*.

*je concluois*, I did conclude.  
*je conclus*, I concluded.  
*je conclurai*, I shall conclude.  
*je conclurois*, I should conclude.  
*je conclue*, I may conclude.  
*je conclusse*, I might conclude.

*Irregularities of this Conjugation.*

The irregular verbs of this conjugation are  
*Perdre*, to lose.      *Suivre*, to follow.

*vivre*, to live.  
*lire*, to read.  
*clore*, to shut.

*éclore*, to come to light.  
*dire*, to say.  
*écrire*, to write.

1st, *Perdre*, *suivre*, *vivre*, and *lire*, have in their participle passive, *perdu*, *suivi*, *vécu*, and *lu*.

2dly, *Clore* and *éclore* are not used in their single tenses, and have in their participle passive *clos* and *éclos*.

3dly, *Dire* has *veus dites*, in the second person plural of the present indicative, and *je dis*, I told, *que je diffe*, that I might tell, in the two preterites.

4thly, *Ecrire* is thus conjugated,

<i>Ecrire</i> , to write.	<i>j'écrivois</i> , I did write.
<i>écrivant</i> , writing.	<i>j'écrivis</i> , I writ.
<i>écrit</i> , wrote.	<i>j'écrirai</i> , I shall write.
<i>j'écris</i> , I write; <i>tu écris</i> , <i>il</i> <i>écrit</i> ,	<i>j'écrirois</i> , I should write.
<i>nous écrivons</i> , <i>vous écrivez</i> , <i>ils écrivent</i> .	<i>j'écrive</i> , I may write. <i>j'écrivisse</i> , I might write.

### Fifth Conjugation.

The verbs of this conjugation must be formed after the following examples.

*The diphthong ai in the ending.*

<i>Plaire</i> , to please.	<i>je plaisois</i> , I did please.
<i>plaisant</i> , pleasing.	<i>je plus</i> , I pleased.
<i>plu</i> , pleased.	<i>je plairai</i> , I shall please.
<i>je plais</i> , I please; <i>tu plais</i> , <i>il</i> <i>plait</i> ,	<i>je plairois</i> , I should please.
<i>nous plaisons</i> , <i>vous plaisez</i> , <i>ils plaisent</i> .	<i>je plaise</i> , I may please. <i>je plusse</i> , I might please.

1.

<i>Faire</i> , to do.	<i>je faisois</i> , I did do.
<i>faissant</i> , doing.	<i>je fis</i> , I did.
<i>fait</i> , done.	<i>je ferai</i> , I shall do.
<i>je fais</i> , I do; <i>tu fais</i> , <i>il fait</i> ,	<i>je ferois</i> , I should do.
<i>nous faisons</i> , <i>vous faites</i> , <i>ils font</i> .	<i>je fasse</i> , I may do. <i>je fisse</i> , I might do.

2.

3.

*Naitre*, to be born.

*naissant*, being born.

*né*, born.

*je naiss*, I am born; *tu naiss*,

*il naît*; *nous naissions*, *vous*

*naissiez*, *ils naissent*.

*je naïssois*, I was born.

*je naquis*, I was born.

*je naîtrai*, I shall be born.

*je naîtreois*, I should be born.

*je naïsse*, I may be born.

*je naquise*, I might be born.

### The diphthong *oi* in the ending.

#### 1.

*Boire*, to drink.

*buvant*, drinking.

*bu*, drunk.

*je bois*, I drink; *tu bois*, *il*

*boit*; *nous buvons*, *vous bu-*

*vez*, *ils boivent*.

*je buvois*, I did drink.

*je bus*, I drank.

*je boirai*, I shall drink.

*je boirois*, I should drink.

*je boive*, I may drink.

*je boisse*, I might drink.

#### 2.

*Croire*, to believe.

*croyant*, believing.

*cru*, believed.

*je crois*, I believe; *tu crois*, *il*

*croit*; *nous croyons*, *vous*

*croyez*, *ils croient*.

*je croyois*, I did believe.

*je crus*, I believed.

*je croirai*, I shall believe.

*je croirois*, I should believe.

*je croye*, I may believe.

*je crusse*, I might believe.

#### 3.

*Connoître*, to know.

*connoissant*, knowing.

*connu*, known.

*je connois*, I know; *tu connois*,

*il connoît*; *nous connoissons*,

*vous connoissez*, *ils connoissent*.

*je connoïssois*, I did know.

*je connus*, I knew.

*je connoîtrai*, I shall know.

*je connoîtrois*, I should know.

*je connoisse*, I may know.

*je connusse*, I might know.

### The diphthong *ou* in the ending.

#### 1.

*Coudre*, to sew.

*cousant*, sewing.

*cousu*, sewed.

*je couds*, I sew; *tu couds*, *il*

*coud*; *nous cousons*, *vous*

*cousez*, *ils cousent*.

*je cousois*, I did sew.

*je cousus*, I sewed.

*je coudrai*, I shall sew.

*je coudrois*, I should sew.

*je coupe*, I may sew.

*je couusse*, I might sew.

*Moudre*, to grind. I

*moulant*, grinding. I

*moulu*, ground.

*je mouds*, I grind; *tu mouds*,

*il moud*: *nous moupons*, *vous*

*moulez*, *ils mouent*.

*je moulais*, I did grind.

*je mules*, I ground.

*je moudrai*, I shall grind.

*je moudrois*, I should grind.

*je moule*, I may grind.

*je moulisse*, I might grind.

### Sixth conjugation.

This conjugation is divided into two branches; the first of which is made up of such verbs as take a vowel before the letter *n* in their ending, as *défendre*, to defend; and the other comprehends such verbs as have a diphthong before the same letter *n*, as *craindre*, to fear.

#### First branch.

*Défendre*, to forbid.

*défendant*, forbidding.

*défendu*, forbidden.

*je défens*, I forbid; *tu défens*,

*il défend*: *nous défendons*,

*vous défandez*, *ils défendent*.

*je défendois*, I did forbid.

*je défendis*, I forbad.

*je défendrai*, I shall forbid.

*je defendrois*, I should forbid.

*je défendo*, I may forbid.

*je défendisse*, I might forbid.

2.

*Répondre*, to answer.

*répondant*, answering.

*répondu*, answered.

*je répons*, I answer; *tu répons*,

*il répond*, *nous répondons*,

*vous répondez*, *ils répondent*.

*je répondais*, I did answer.

*je répondis*, I answered.

*je répondrai*, I shall answer.

*je répondreis*, I should answer.

*je répondie*, I may answer.

*je répondisse*, I might answer.

#### Irregularities of this branch.

The Verb *prendre*, to take, and its compounds, are thus conjugated.

*Prendre*,

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH, 51

*Prendre*, to take.

*prénant*, taking.

*pris*, taken.

*je prens*, I take; *tu prens*; *il prend*: *nous prénons*, *vous prenez*, *ils prennent*.

*je prénois*, I did take.

*je pris*, I took.

*je prendrai*, I shall take.

*je prendrois*, I should take.

*je prenne*, I may take.

*je prisse*, I might take.

### Second Branch.

1.

*Craindre*, to fear.

*craignant*, fearing.

*craint*, feared.

*je crains*, I fear; *tu crains*; *il craint*: *nous craignons*, *vous craignez*, *ils craignent*.

*je craignois*, I did fear.

*je craignis*, I feared.

*je craindrai*, I shall fear.

*je craindrois*, I should fear.

*je craigne*, I may fear.

*je craignisse*, I might fear.

2.

*Peindre*, to paint.

*peignant*, painting.

*peint*, painted.

*je peins*, I paint; *tu peins*; *il peint*: *nous peignons*, *vous peignez*, *ils peignent*.

*je peignois*, I did paint.

*je peignis*, I painted.

*je peindrai*, I shall paint.

*je peindrois*, I should paint.

*je peigne*, I may paint.

*je peignisse*, I might paint.

3.

*Joindre*, to join.

*joignant*, joining.

*joint*, joined.

*je joins*, I join; *tu joins*; *il joint*: *nous joignons*, *vous joignez*, *ils joignent*.

*je joignois*, I did join.

*je joignis*, I joined.

*je joindrai*, I shall join.

*je joindrois*, I should join.

*je joigne*, I may join.

*je joignisse*, I might join.

*Exercises upon the Irregularities of the four last conjugations.*

They have lost their credit 1. *Illesont débû de 2 crédit*, p. m. the time 1. of payment 2. is

expired 3.

I see men 1, women 2, and

children 3.

you will see wonderful 1

things 2.

1 *Illesont débû de 2 crédit*, p. m.

1 *tems*, n. m. 2 *payment*.

n. m 3. *échu*, p. p.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *femme*, n. f.

3 *enfant*, plur. *enfants*, m. m.

1 *merveilleux*, *enfie*, adj. 2 *chose*,

n. f.

this sword 1 is worth a hundred 2 guineas 3.

he is willing to pay 1 his debts 2.

I do 1 what I can 2.

I know my lesson 1 by heart 2.

it rains very hard 1.

he has lost his money 1 and his reputation 2.

he has followed the army 1.

I have read the works 1 of doctor 2 Swift.

I write many 1 pages 2 every day 3.

I have wrote all 1 my letters 2.

I approve 1 what you say.

I drink 1 tea 2 every morning 3.

1 épée, n. f. 2 cent, adj. und.

3 guinée, n. f.

1 payer, v. i. dette, n. f.

1 faire, v. 5. 2 pouvoir, v. 3.

1 leçon, n. f. 2 par cœur.

1 à verse.

1 argent, n. m. 2 réputation, n. f.

1 armée, n. f.

1 œuvre, n. f. 2 docteur, n. m.

1 plusieurs, adj. plur. 2 page, n. f. 3 par jour.

1 tout, adj. 2 lettre, n. f.

1 approuver, v. i.

1 prendre, v. 6. 2 tôt, n. m. 3 tous les matins.

### Of Verbs Neuter.

The Verbs neuter and reflected belong to the above conjugations, as well as the active.

The reflected Verbs are distinguished from the verbs active, by their being joined to, and conjugated with the conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, &c.

The best way to know whether a Verb is active or neuter, is to try whether *quelqu'un*, somebody; or *quelque chose*, something, may be placed after it. If one of these words may be placed after a Verb, it is a verb active; if not, it is a verb neuter. For instance, *donner*, to give, is a verb active, because I may say, *donner quelque chose*; and *dormir*, to sleep, is a verb neuter, because I cannot say, *dormir quelqu'un* or *quelque chose*.

The compounds of most Verbs neuter, are formed with the verb *avoir*; but the following, viz.

*Accourir*, to run to.

*aller*, to go.

*échoir*, to fall.

*décider*, to die.

*mourir*, to die.

*naitre*, to be born.

*partir*, to set out.

*sortir*,

*Sortir*, to go out. *arriver*, to arrive ;  
*tomber*, to fall ; *venir*, to come ;

and the compounds, of these Verbs, are conjugated with the Verb *être*, as *je suis accouru*, I have run to, &c.

*Croître*, to grow, &c. *monter*, to come up ;  
*descendre*, to come down ;  
 may be conjugated with both the auxiliary, as *je suis cru*,  
*j'ai cru*, I am grown.

A Verb impersonal is only a verb active conjugated in the third person singular only, as *il éclaire*, it lightens.

#### *Exercises upon the foregoing Verbs.*

He is fallen, they are dead, he is born, they are set out,  
 she is fallen, you are arrived, we are come, he is grown, she  
 is come down, they are come up.

#### *Remarks upon the undeclined parts of Speech.*

I have hitherto avoided, as much as I could, to introduce into my Exercises, such of the French parts of speech as I had not explained ; but as on the one hand, the learner, by this time, may be supposed to have made some improvements, and on the other, it is very difficult to treat of our pronouns and verbs, without meddling with our adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions ; I must here say of these last parts of speech, what is necessary for the understanding of the following Exercises.

An Adverb is a word denoting some circumstances of a verb, an adjective, or a participle, as

*Marcher lentement.*

to walk slowly.

*un très long voyage.*

a very long journey.

*un habit bien fait.*

a well made suit of cloaths.

French Adverbs are placed in speech, 1st, before adjectives, as *toujours mauvais*, always bad.

2dly, After the single parts of a verb, as *il lit souvent*, he reads often.

3dly, In the compounds it is commonly placed between the auxiliary verb and participle, as *j'ai bien mangé*, I have eat well.

Two adverbs meet sometimes together in a sentence, as *vous allez bien vite*, you go very fast.

A Preposition is a word placed before other words, to shew the relation one thing has with another; as, when I say, *je suis dans ma chambre*, I am in my room, *dans* shews a kind of relation between me and my room.

A Conjunction is a word serving to join the parts of a sentence together, as when I say, *mes frères, mes sœurs, & tous mes parents m'ont abandonné*, my brothers, sisters, and all my relations, have forsaken me, and is a Conjunction, because it joins the parts of the sentence together.

To enable the learners to make the remaining part of my Exercises upon the Pronouns and Verbs, I shall give them here some Exercises upon the undeclined parts of speech.

### Exercises upon the undeclined parts of Speech.

#### Adverbs.

A good 1 servant 2 serves 3. 1 Bon, adj. 2 domestique, his master 5 faithfully 4. 1. adj. 2. m. 3 servir, v. 2. 4 fidèlement, adv. 5 maître, n. m.

The rain 1 sometimes 3. 1 pluie, n. f. 2 gâter, v. t. spoils 2 the corn 4. 1. adj. 2. m. 3 quelquefois, adv. 4 blé,

we often 2 forget 1 the 1 oublier, 2 souvent, adv. v. laws 3 of God 4. 1. adj. 2. m. 3 loi, plur. loix, n. f.

4 Dieu, n. m.

the favours 1 of the wicked 2. 1 faveur, n. f. 2 méchant, adj. are often hurtful 3.

good books 1 are very 2. 1 livre, n. m. 2 très, adv. useful 3 to mankind 4. 1. adj. 2. m. 3 utile, adj. 4 au genre humain.

he has served 1 his prince 3. 1 servir, v. 2. 2 bien, adv. well 2. 1. adj. 2. m. 3 prince, n. m.

#### Prepositions.

Politeness 1 reigns 2 in 3. 1 Politesse, n. f. 2 régner, v. 1.

France 4. 1. adj. 2. m. 3 en, prep. 4 France, n. f.

we

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

55

- we live 1 under 2 a good 1 *vivre*, v. 4. 2 *sous*, prep.  
 prince 3. 3 *prince*, n. m.
- we are between 1 fear 2 and 1 *entre*, prep. 2 *craindre*, v. f.  
 hope 3. 3 *espérance*, n. f.
- the Christian 1 lives accord- 1 *Chrétien*, n. m. 2 *suivant*,  
 ing to 2 the maxims 3 of 3 *maxime*, n. f. 4 *é-  
 the gospel 4. *vangile*, n. m.*

### *Conjunctions.*

- He has neither 1 friends 2 1 *ni*, conj. 2 *ami*, n. m. 3 *ni*,  
 nor 3 foes 4. conj. 4 *ennemi*, n. m.
- they will fight 1, provided 2 1 *se battre*, v. 4. 2 *pourvu*,  
 they are paid 3. conj. 3 *qu'on les paye*.
- the lady 1 speaks 2 much 3, 1 *madame*, n. f. 2 *parler*, v. 1.  
 but 4 she speaks well. 3 *beaucoup*, adv. 4 *mais*,  
 conj. *et* *cependant* *malgré* *ce que*

### *Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal, conjugated with the negative particles ne, pas or point.*

#### R U L E I.

In the single parts of these Verbs *ne* must be placed immediately before, and *pas* or *point* after the Verb.

Inf. *N'avoir pas*, or *n'avoir point*, not to have.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas*, not having.

#### *Indicative.*

Pref. *Je n'ai pas*, I have not ; *tu n'as pas*, *il n'a pas* : *nous n'avons pas*, *vous n'avez pas*, *ils n'ont pas*.

Imp. *Je n'avois pas*, I had not ; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of the Verb *avoir*.

Inf. *N'être pas*, not to be.

*N'étant pas*, not being.

#### *Indicative.*

Pref. *Je ne suis pas*, I am not ; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

Part. act. *Ne portant pas*, not carrying.

D 4

*Indicative.*

*Indicative.*

*Je ne porte pas,* I don't carry ; and so on to the end of the indicative, imperative, and conjunctive of this Verb.

Observe, that in the infinitive of the Verbs active, neuter, and impersonal, we place *ne* and *pas*, or *point* before the Verb, as *ne pas porter*, not to carry.

*Exercises upon the foregoing rule.*

- You have not the fear 1 of 1 *craindre*, n. f. 2 *Dieu*, n. m.  
God 2 before 3 your 3 *devant*, conj. 4 *les yeux*,  
eyes 4.
- a good 1 Christian 2 is not 1 *bon*, adj. 2 *Chrétien*, n. m.  
revengeful 3. 3 *vindicatif*, adj.
- the eclipse 1 of the sun 2 1 *éclipse*, n. f. 2 *soleil*, n. m.  
will not be visible 3. 3 *visible*, adj.
- we shall not be your enemies 1. 1 *ennemi*, n. m.
- be not unjust 1 towards 2 1 *injuste*, adj. 2 *touss*, prép.  
your neighbour 3. 3 *prochain*, n. m.
- the sun does not shine 1 1 *luire*, v. 4. 2 à présent  
now 2.
- we did not lay 1 at Paris 2. 1 *coucher*, v. i. 2 à, prep.  
the ungodly 1 shall not inherit 1 *mechant*, n. m. 2 *hériter*,  
heir 2 the kingdom 3 of 3 *royaume*, n. m.  
heaven 4. 4 *des ciels*.
- you shall not steal 1. 1 *dérober*, v. i.
- you shall not commit 1 adultery 2. 1 *commettre*, v. 4. 2 *adultero*,  
n. m.
- do not despise 1 the poor 2. 1 *mépriser*, v. i. 2 *pauvre*, n. m.  
give 1 not what 2 is holy 3. 1 *donner*, v. i. 2 *ce qui*, 3 *saint*,  
to the dogs 4. 4 *chiens*, n. m.
- cast 1 not your pearls 2 before 3 swine 4. 1 *jetter*, v. i. 2 *perle*, n. f.  
3 *devant*, prep. 4 *porc*, plur *taux*, n. m.

## RULE II.

To form the compounds of the foregoing Verbs, you must place their participles passive after the *pas* or *point* of the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively, as Inf.

Inf. *N'avoir pas eu*, not to have had.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas eu*, not having had.

*Indicative.*

*Je n'ai pas eu*, I have not had ; *tu n'as pas eu*, *il n'a pas eu* ;  
*nous n'avons pas eu*, *vous n'avez pas eu*, .

*Je n'avois pas eu*, I had not had ; and so on to the end of  
 the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the  
 Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

Inf. *N'avoir pas été*, not to have been.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas été*, not having been.

*Indicative.*

*Je n'ai pas été*, I have not been ; and so on to the end of  
 the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of the  
 Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

Inf. *N'avoir pas porté*, not to have carried.

Part. act. *N'ayant pas porté*, not having carried.

*Indicative.*

*Je n'ai pas porté*, I have not carried ; and so on to the  
 end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive of  
 the Verb *avoir*, conjugated negatively.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I had not time 1.

1 *Temps*, n. m.

I have not been at 1 his house.

1 *chez* *lui*.

the Jews 1 have not ac-

1 *Juif*, n. m. 2 *reconnître*,

nowledged 2 Christ 3 as 4

v. 5. 3 *Jésus Christ*, n. m.

the true 5 Messiah 6.

4 *comme*, prep. 5 *vrai*, adj.

6 *Messie*, n. m.

you have not done 1 your  
duty 2.

1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *devoir*, n. m.

you have not called upon 1  
the Lord 2.

1 *invoyer*, v. 1. 2 *Seigneur*,  
n. m.

they have not learned 1 their  
lesson 2.

1 *apprendre*, v. 6. 2 *leçon*,  
n. f.

we have not waited for 1  
your brother 2.

1 *attendre*, v. 6. 2 *frère*,  
n. m.

I have not yet 1 wrote 2 my  
letters 3.

1 *encore*, adv. 2 *écrire*, v. 4.  
3 *lettre*, n. f.

I have not seen 1 my son 2. 1 voir, v. 3. 2 fils, n. m.  
I have not yet married 1 my 1 marier, v. 1. 2 fille, n. f.  
daughters 2.

*Of Verbs passive conjugated with the negative particles, ne, pas, or point.*

**R U L E I.**

To conjugate a Verb passive with the particles *ne*, *pas*, or *point*, you must add the participle passive of any verb active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être* conjugated negatively, as

Inf. *N'être pas porté*, not to be carried. *N'avoir pas été porté*, not having been carried.

Part. act. *N'stant pas porté*, not being carried.

Comp *N'ayant pas été porté*, not having been carried.

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Je ne suis pas porté*, I am not carried; and so on to the end of the Verb.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Bad 1. deeds 2. are not 3. Mauvais, adj. 2 action, n. f.  
ways 3. concealed 4. toujours, adv. 4 cacher,  
V. 1.

virtue 1. is not always rewarded 2. 1 vertu, n. f. 2 récompenser,  
V. 1.

vice 1. is not always punished 2. 1 vice, n. m. 2 punir, v. 2.

wealth 1. gotten 2. by 3. vanity 4. shall be diminished 5. 1 richesses, n. f. 2 acquérir,  
V. 2. 3 par, prep. 4 vanité, n. f. 5 diminuer, V. 1.

I have not been conquered 1. 1 vaincre, v. 6.  
America 1. has not been discovered 2. by 3. the ancients 4. 1 Amérique, n. f. 2 découvrir,  
V. 2. 3 par, prep. 4 ancien,  
n. m.

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

**R U L E I.**

In the single tenses the pronouns must be placed after the Verb, as

Ind.

*Indicative.*

Pref. *Ai-je?* have I ? *as-tu?* *a-t-il?* *avons-nous?* *aven-*  
*vous?* *ont-ils?*

Imp. *Avais-je?* had I ? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pref. *Suis-je?* am I ? *es-tu?* *est-il?* *sommes-nous?* *étes-*  
*vous?* *sont-ils?*

Imp. *Etais-je?* was I ? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pref. *Porte-je?* do I carry ? *portes-tu?* *porte-t-il?* *portons-*  
*nous?* *portez-vous?* *portent-ils?*

*Portais-je?* did I carry ? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Note, that when the Verb ends in *e* or *ai*, *et* between two hyphens must be inserted, as above, between the Verb and pronoun, in order to soften the pronunciation.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Have you a dictionary 1 and<br>a grammar 2 ? | 1 <i>Dictionnaire</i> , n.m. 2 <i>gram-</i><br><i>maire</i> , n. f. |
| have they a fine 1 house 2 ?                 | 1 <i>beau</i> , <i>belle</i> , adj. 2 <i>maison</i> , n.f.          |
| are we your slaves 1 ?                       | 1 <i>esclaves</i> , n. m.   |
| are you the first 1 of your<br>form 2 ?      | 1 <i>premier</i> , adj. 2 <i>classe</i> , n. f.                     |
| does he speak 1 the truth 2 ?                | 1 <i>dire</i> , v. i. 2 <i>vérité</i> , n.f.                        |
| does she love 1 study 2 ?                    | 1 <i>aimer</i> , v. i. 2 <i>étude</i> , n.f.                        |
| do you speak 1 correctly 2 ?                 | 1 <i>parler</i> , v. i. 2 <i>correcte-</i><br><i>ment</i> , adv.    |
| do they wish for 1 peace 2 ?                 | 1 <i>souhaiter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>paix</i> , n.f.                     |
| shall we have a holiday 1 ?                  | 1 <i>congé</i> .  |
| shall we be in 1 your coun-<br>try house 2 ? | 1 <i>dans</i> , prep. 2 <i>maison de</i><br><i>campagne</i> .       |
| shall you go 1 to 2 Vaux-<br>hall ?          | 1 <i>aller</i> , v. i. 2 <i>à</i> , prep.                           |
| would you forgive 1 the re-<br>bels 2 ?      | 1 <i>pardonner</i> , v. i. 2 <i>aux re-</i><br><i>belles</i> .      |

**R U L E II.**

In the compounds of the foregoing Verbs, the participle

must be placed after the single parts of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, as

*Indicative.*

Pref. *Ai je eu?* have I had? *ai-je été?* have I been? *ai-je porté?* have I carried? and so on to the end of the indicative of the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Have you been at Ranelagh? 1 à, prep.  
 has he spent 1 his money 2 ? 1 dépenser, v. t. 2 argent, n. m.  
 has she married 1 her cou- 1 épouser, v. t. 2 cousin, n. m.  
 sin 2 ?  
 have we despised 1 your 1 mépriser, v. t. 2 conseil,  
 dis counsels ? n. m.  
 have you relieved 1 the 1 soulager, v. t. 2 indigent,  
 needy 2 ? n. m.  
 have they inherited 1 their 1 hériter, v. t. 2 bien, n. m.  
 father's 2 estate 3 ? 3 pers., n. m., a boy avail  
 have they shed 1 innocent 2 1 répandre, v. b. 2 sang, n. m.  
 blood 3. 3 innocent, adj.

R U L E III.

When in asking a question, either affirmatively or negatively, a Noun is the nominative case to the Verb, that Noun must be placed at the head of the phrase, and the pronoun kept, as *le roi vient-il?* does the king come?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- Has your brother 1 any 1 1 Frere, n. m. 2 des enfans  
 children 3 ?  
 has this lady 1 a daughter 2 ? 1 dame, n. f. 2 fille, n. f.  
 is Mr. Lang here 1 ? 1 ici, adv.  
 are the English 1 at 2 war 3 1 Anglois, n. m. 2 en, prep.  
 with 4 the French 5 ? 2 guerre, n. f. 4 avec, prep.  
 5 François, n. m.  
 will the duke 1 dine 2 with 1 duc, n. m. 2 dîner, v. t.  
 us to day 3 ? 3 aujourd'hui, adv.  
 has the princess 1 break- 1 princesse, n. f. 2 déjeuner,  
 fasted 2 this 3 morning 3 ? v. t. 3 ce matin.  
 have

have your scholars 1 seen 2 1 *écolier*, n. m. 2 *voir*, v. 3.  
your library 3 3 *bibliothèque*, n. f.

*Of verbs passive conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

R U L E.

To conjugate these Verbs, you must add the participles passive of the Verbs active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être* conjugated affirmatively, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *Suis-je porté?* am I carried? and so on to the end of the single and compounded parts of the indicative of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Are you converted 1?	1 <i>Convertir</i> , v. 2.
is poverty 1 despised 2?	1 <i>pauvreté</i> , n. f. 2 <i>mépriser</i> , v. 1.
is this gentleman 1 well 2 known 3?	1 <i>monsieur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv. 3 <i>connoître</i> , v. 5.
is the prisoner 1 acquitted 2?	1 <i>prisonnier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ren- voyer absous</i> , v. 1.
are they rewarded 1?	1 <i>recompenser</i> , v. 1.
have you been instructed 1?	1 <i>instruire</i> , v. 4.
have the murderers 1 been punished 2?	1 <i>meurtrier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>punir</i> , v. 2.

*Of Verbs auxiliary, active, neuter, and impersonal,  
conjugated with an interrogation negative.*

R U L E I.

In the single tenses you must place the negative *ne* before any one of these Verbs conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, and *pas* or point after the pronouns, as

*Indicative.*

Pres. *N'ai-je pas?* have I not? *n'as-tu pas?* *n'a-t-il pas?*  
*n'avons-nous pas?* *n'avez-vous pas?* *n'ont-ils pas?*

Imp. *N'avais-pas?* had I not? and so on to the end of the indicative.

Pres.

## EXERCISES upon the

Pref. *Ne suis-je pas?* I am not 1 *n'es-tu pas?* *n'est-il pas?*  
*ne sommes-nous pas?* *n'êtes-vous pas?* *ne sont-ils pas?*

Imp. *N'étois je pas?* was I not 1 and so on to the end of  
 the indicative.

Pref. *Ne porte-je pas?* don't I carry? *ne portes-tu pas?* *ne*  
*porte-t-il pas?* *ne portons-nous pas?* *ne portez-vous pas?* *ne*  
*portent-ils pas?*

Imp. *Ne portois-je pas?* did I not carry? and so on to the  
 end of the indicative.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Have I not your consent 1 *Consentement*, n. m.

have you not your *dis-<sup>1</sup>cong<sup>2</sup>e*, n. m.

charge *charge*, n. m. to arrasq. *obligation* bue sgn. sgn.

am I not your brother 1 *frere*, n. m.

are we not the children of *enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m.

God 2?

*Dieu*, n. m.

does it not rain 2?

*il*, pron. conj. 2 *p'euvoir*,

v. 3-

does it not snow 1?

*neiger*, v. 1.

don't they expect 1 the *attendre*, v. 6, 2 *Juge*, n. m.  
 judges 2?

shan't you ask 1 my leave 2? *demander*, v. 1. 2 *permis-*  
*sion*, n. f.

shan't we receive 1 our wa- *recevoir*, v. 3. 2 *gage*, n. m.  
 ges 2?

## RULE II.

In the compounds you must place the participles passive  
 of the foregoing Verbs after the single parts of the Verb  
*avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation negative, as

## Indicative.

Pref. *N'ai-je pas eu?* have I not had? *N'ai-je pas été?*  
 have I not been? *N'ai-je pas porté?* have I not carried?  
 and so on to the end of the single parts of the indicative of  
 the Verb *avoir*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Have I not given 1 my *1 donner*, v. 1. 2 *voix*, n. f.

vote 2?

have I not sung 1 well 2? *1 chanter*, v. 1. 2 *bien*, adv.

has not David reigned 1 in 2 *1 regner*, v. 1. 2 *dans*, prep.  
 Judea 3?

has not Elisha 1 anointed 2 *1 Elise*, n. m. 2 *aindre*, v. 6.  
 Jehu?

has

has he not diverted 1 the 1 divertir, v. 2. 2 ville, n. f.  
town 2?

have we not kept 1 our 2. 1 tenir, v. 2. 2 paro. word 2?

have we not washed 1 your 2 lover, v. 1. 2 pied, n. m.  
feet 2?

have you not said 1 your 1 dire, v. 4. 2 priere, n. f.  
prayers 2?

have they not confessed 1 the 1 avouer, v. 3. 2 vérité, n. f.  
truth 2?

have they not received 1 their 1 recevoir, v. 2. 2 gage, n. m.  
wages 2?

*Of verbs passive conjugated with an interrogative negative.*

### R U L E

To conjugate these Verbs, you must add the participles passive of the verbs active, after the single and compounded parts of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative, as

*Ne suis-je pas porté?* am I not carried? and so on to the end of the single and compounded parts of the indicative of the Verb *être*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Am I not cheated 1?                      | 1 Tromper, v. 1.                      |
| is not the son 1 of man 2                | 1 fils, p. m. 2 homme, n. m.          |
| glorified 3?                             | 3 glorifier, v. 1.                    |
| are we not hated 1?                      | 1 haïr, v. 2.                         |
| are you not forsaken 1?                  | 1 abandonner, v. 1.                   |
| are not your companions 1 known 2?       | 1 companion, n. m. 2 connître, v. 5.  |
| have I not been admitted 1?              | 1 admettre, v. 4.                     |
| has he not been turned out 1?            | 1 chasser, v. 1.                      |
| have his services 1 not been rewarded 2? | 1 service, n. m. 2 récompenser, v. 1. |

### Of reflected Verbs.

The reflected Verbs differ from the active, only in their being joined to and conjugated with the conjunctive Pronouns *me*, *myself*; *te*, *thyself*; *se*, *one's self*, *himself*, *herself*, *themselves*; *nous*, *ourselves*; and *vous*, *yourselves*; which Pronouns are not sometimes translated into English; for we say, *je me repens*, *I repent*, &c.

Of

EXERCISES upon the  
Of reflected Verbs conjugated affirmatively.

R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the conjunctive pronouns immediately before the Verb, as

Inf. *S'aime*, to love one's self.

Part. act. *S'aimant*, loving one's self.

*Indicative.*

Pref. *Je m'aime*, I love myself; *tu t'aimes*, thou lovest thyself; *il s'aime*, he loves himself; *nous nous aimons*, we love ourselves; *vous vous aimez*, ye love yourselves; *ils s'aiment*, they love themselves.

Imp. *Je m'aimois*, I did love myself; and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative and conjunctive.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I forget myself 1.

1 *s'oublier*, v. 1.

he comes 1 near 2 the door 3.

1 *s'approcher*, v. 1. 2 *de* prep.

3 *porte*, n. f.

He sits 1 upon 2 a bench 3.

1 *s'asseoir*, v. 3. 2 *sur*, prep.

3 *banc*, n. m.

we love ourselves too much 1.

1 *trop*, adv.

you flatter yourselves 1 sometimes 2.

1 *se flatter*, v. 1. 2 *quelque fois*, adv.

they forsake 1 their ill 2 habits 3.

1 *se corriger de*, v. 1. 2 *mauvais*,

adj. 3 *habitude*, n. f.

he explained himself 1 in 2

two 3 words 4.

3 *deux*, adj. 4 *mot*, n. m.

we went 1 to 2 his apartment 3.

1 *se rendre*, v. 6. 2 *a* prep.

3 *appartement*, n. m.

they seized upon 1 his most 2

valuable 2 effects 3.

3 *effet*, n. m.

my mother 1 will marry a-

gain 2 in a fortnight 3.

1 *mere*, n. f. 2 *se remarier*,

v. 1. 3 *dans quinze jours*.

R U L E II.

The imperative must be formed thus: *Aime toi*, love thyself. *Qu'il s'aime*, let him love himself. *aimons nous*, let us love ourselves. *Aimez vous*, love yourselves. *Qu'ils s'aiment*, let them love themselves.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Let us rise 1 quickly 2.	1 Se lever, v. i. 2 prompt- ment, adv.
present yourselves 1 before 2 my eyes 3.	1 se présenter, v. i. 2 à, prep. 3 œil, plur. yeux, n. m.
retire 1 from hence 2.	1 se retirer, v. i. 2 d'ici.
amuse yourselves 1 in 2 my room 3.	1 s'amuser, v. i. 2 dans, prep. 3 chambre, n. f.
let them appear 1 imme- diately 2.	1 se montrer, v. i. 2 sur le champ.

### R U L E III.

To form the compounds of the reflected Verbs conjugated affirmatively, you must place the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous*, immediately before the Verb *être*, with which these compounds ought to be formed, as

**Inf.** *S'être aimé*, to have loved one's self.

**Part. act. S'etant aimé, having loved one's self.**

### *Indicative.*

*Pref. Je me suis aimé, I have loved myself ; tu t'es aimé, thou hast loved thyself ; il s'est aimé, he has loved himself ; nous nous sommes aimés, we have loved ourselves ; vous vous êtes aimés, ye have loved yourselves ; ils se sont aimés, they have loved themselves.*

Imp. *Je m'itois aimé*, I had loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the reflected Verb - *s'aimer*, to love one's self.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have got rid 1 of my mule 2.	1 <i>Se défaire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>mule</i> , n. f.
I have walked 1 in 2 the park 3.	1 <i>se promener</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>parc</i> , n. m. ob evw
I have yielded 1 to their promises 2.	1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>promesse</i> , n. f. ob evw
he has washed himself 1 in 2 the Thames 3.	1 <i>se baigner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>dans</i> , prep. 3 <i>Tamise</i> , n. f. nov
he has defended himself 1 well 2.	1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv.

## 26 EXERCISES upon the

he has talked 1 with 2 him	1 s'entretenir, v. 2. 2 avec, for 3 three hours 3.	prep. 3 durant trois heures.
he has retired 1 into 2 the country 3.	1 se retirer, v. 1. 2 à, prep. 3 campagne.	
We have stopped 1 in the way 2.	1 s'arrêter, v. 1. 2 en chemin.	
we have been merry 1.	1 se réjouir, v. 2.	
they have waked 1 suddenly 2.	1 se réveiller, v. 1. 2 en sur- saut.	

## Of the same Verbs conjugated negatively.

## R U L E I.

To conjugate the single tenses of these Verbs negatively, you must place *pas* or *point* after the Verb, and *ne* between the two pronouns, or before the pronouns *je*, *nous*, *vous*, and *ils*, when the pronouns in the nominative are omitted, as

Part. act. *Ne, j'aime pas*, not loving one's self.

## Indicative.

Pres. *Je ne m'aime pas*, I don't love myself; *tu ne t'aimes pas*, thou dost not love thyself; *il ne s'aime pas*, he does not love himself; *nous ne nous aimons pas*, we do not love ourselves; *vous ne vous aimez pas*, ye do not love yourselves; *ils ne s'aiment pas*, they do not love themselves.

Imp. *Je ne m'aime pas*, I did not love myself; and so on to the end of the single tenses of this Verb.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I don't complain 1.	1 Se plaindre, v. 6.
I don't repent 1.	1 se repentir, v. 2.
he does not get drunk 1.	1 s'éivrir, v. 1.
she does not rise 1.	1 se lever, v. 1.
we do not lose patience 1.	1 s'impatienter, v. 1.
we do not recant 1.	1 se retrancher, v. 1.
you do not take too much li- berty 1.	1 s'émanciper, v. 1.
you don't take offence 1 ea- sily 2.	1 se scandaliser, v. 1. 2 ais- ément, adv.
they do not make haste 1.	1 se dépêcher, v. 1.

I shall

I shall not make myself uneasy. *I se chagrinier, v. 1.*  
 She will not vex herself. *I s'affliger, v. 1.*  
 we shall not expose ourselves. *I s'exposer, v. 1.*  
 they will not be obstinate. *I s'obstiner, v. 1.*

Observe, that in the infinitive we say, *ne pas s'aimer*, not to love one's self.

### R U L E II.

To conjugate the compounds of the reflected Verbs negatively, we must place the negative particle *ne*, before the Pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous*, and the particles *pas* and *point*, between the auxiliary verb and the participle passive,  
*Inf. Ne s'êtes pas aimé, not to have loved one's self.*  
*Part. act. Ne s'étant pas aimé, not having loved one's self.*

Pref. *Je ne me suis pas aimé, I have not loved myself;*  
*tu ne t'es pas aimé, thou hast not loved thyself; il ne s'est pas aimé, he has not loved himself; nous ne nous sommes pas aimés, we have not loved ourselves; vous ne vous êtes pas aimés, ye have not loved yourselves; ils ne se sont pas aimés, they have not loved themselves.*

Imp. *Je ne m'étais pas aimé, I had not loved myself; and so on to the end of the compounds of the indicative and conjunctive of the verb *s'aimer*, to love one's self, conjugated negatively.*

### Exercises upon this Rule.

- I have not engaged myself. *I s'engager, v. 1.*  
 thou hast not presented thyself. *I se présenter, v. 1.*  
 he has not employed him-self. *I s'occuper, v. 1.*  
 she has not been obstinate. *I s'opiniâtrer, v. 1.*  
 we have not refreshed ourselves. *I se refraîchir, v. 2.*  
 you have not flattered yourselves. *I se flatter, v. 2.*

## 68 EXERCISES upon the

you have not been surprised. 1 *s'étonner*, v. i.  
 they have not boasted 1. 1 *se vanter*, v. i.  
 they have not grown proud 1. 1 *s'enorgueillir*, v. i.  
 -they have not been disheartened 1. 1 *se rebouter*, v. i.

### *Of the same Verbs conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.*

#### R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of these Verbs, we must place the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous* and *vous* before the verbs active, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, as

#### *Indicative.*

Pref. *M'aime-je?* do I love myself? *t'aimes-tu?* dost thou love thyself? *s'aime-t-il?* does he love himself? *nous aimons-nous?* do we love ourselves? *vous aimez-vous?* do you love yourselves? *s'aiment-ils?* do they love themselves?

Imp. *M'aimois-je?* did I love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Dost thou take shipping 1?              | 1 <i>s'embarquer</i> , v. i.  |
| does he move forward 1?                 | 1 <i>s'avancer</i> , v. i.  |
| does he stop 1?                         | 1 <i>s'arrêter</i> , v. i.  |
| does he mistake 1?                      | 1 <i>se tromper</i> , v. i.   |
| does he sit down 1?                     | 1 <i>s'affoair</i> , v. 3.  |
| do you defend yourselves 1?             | 1 <i>se défendre</i> , v. 6.  |
| do you surrender 1?                     | 1 <i>se rendre</i> , v. 6.  |
| do they grow tired 1?                   | 1 <i>se lasser</i> , v. i.  |
| do these swords 1 lose their<br>rust 2? | 1 <i>épée</i> , n. f. 2 <i>se dérouiller</i> ,<br>v. i.                       |
| shall you be undeceived 1?              | 1 <i>se défausser</i> , v. i.   |
| will you allay your passion 1?          | 1 <i>s'appaiser</i> , v. i.   |
| will these birds 1 grow tame<br>2?      | 1 <i>oiseau</i> , plur. <i>œaux</i> , n. m.<br>2 <i>s'apprivoiser</i> , v. i. |
| will these balls 1 become<br>round 2?   | 1 <i>balle</i> , n. f. 2 <i>s'arrondir</i> ,<br>v. 2.                         |

#### R U L E II.

To form the compounds of these verbs, we must place the pronouns

pronouns *me*, *ts*, *se*, *nous* and *vous*, before the single tenses of the indicative of the verbs passive conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, as

## Indicative.

Pref. *Me suis-je aimé?* have I loved myself? *t'es-tu aimé?* hast thou loved thyself? *s'est-il aimé?* has he loved himself? *nous sommes nous-aimés?* have we loved ourselves? *vous êtes-vous aimés?* have you loved yourselves? *se sont-ils aimés?* have they loved themselves?

Imp. *M'étais je aimé?* had I loved myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the verb *être aimé*, to be loved, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Have I fallen asleep?	1. <i>s'endormir</i> , v. 2.
hast thou equipped thyself?	1. <i>s'équiper</i> , v. 1.
has he grown bold?	1. <i>s'enhardir</i> , v. 2.
has she grown rich?	1. <i>s'enrichir</i> , v. 2.
have you lifted?	1. <i>s'enrôler</i> , v. 1.
have you made yourselves hoarse?	1. <i>s'enrouer</i> , v. 1.
have you praised yourselves?	1. <i>se louer</i> , v. 1.
are the swords grown rusty?	1. <i>épée</i> , n. f. 2. <i>s'enrouiller</i> , v. 1.
are the chickens grown fat?	1. <i>poulet</i> , n. m. 2. <i>s'engraiffer</i> , v. 1.
are the stars grown dark?	1. <i>étoile</i> , n. f. 2. <i>s'obscurcir</i> , v. 2.

## Of the same Verbs conjugated with an interrogation negative.

## R U L E I.

To form the single tenses of the reflected Verbs with an interrogation negative, you must place the negative *ne* before the single tenses of the same verbs, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative, and *pas* or *point* after the pronouns in the nominative, as

## Indicative.

Pref. *Ne m'aime-je pas?* don't I love myself? *ne t'aimes-tu pas?* dost thou not love thyself? *ne s'aime-t-il pas?* does he not

## EXERCISES upon the

not love himself? *ne nous aimons-nous pas?* do we not love ourselves? *ne vous aimez-vous pas?* do you not love yourselves? *ne s'aiment-ils pas?* do they not love themselves?

Imp. *Ne m'aimais-je pas?* did I not love myself? and so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the Verb *s'aimer*, conjugated with an interrogation affirmative.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Dost thou not get strength 1?	<i>1 se fortifier</i> , v. 1.
don't your pulse 1 grow weak 2?	<i>1 pousse, n. m. 2 s'affaiblir</i> , v. 2.
does not our army 1 gather strength 2?	<i>1 armée, n. f. 2 se renforcer</i> , v. 1.
does not the enemy 1 surrender 2?	<i>1 ennemi, n. m. 2 se rendre</i> , v. 6.
don't the child 1 fall asleep again 2?	<i>1 enfant, n. m. 2 se rendormir</i> , v. 2.
don't we retire 1?	<i>1 je retirer</i> , v. 1.
don't you list again 1?	<i>1 se renégier</i> , v. 1.
don't your servants 1 stir 2?	<i>1 domestique, n. m. 2 se remuer</i> , v. 1.
don't the besieged 1 surrender?	<i>1 assiégié, n. m.</i>
don't this cloth 1 grow straiter 2?	<i>1 drap, n. m. 2 se retrancher</i> , v. 2.

## RULE II.

To form the compounds of the same verbs, you must place the pronouns *me*, *ta*, *se*, *nous* and *vous* between the particle *ne*, and the auxiliary verb of the single tenses of verbs passive, conjugated with an interrogation negative, as

## Indicative.

Pref. *Ne me suis-je pas aimé?* have I not loved myself? *ne t'es-tu pas aimé?* hast thou not loved thyself? *ne s'est-il pas aimé?* has he not loved himself? *ne nous sommes-nous pas aimés?* have we not loved ourselves? *ne vous êtes-vous pas aimés?* have you not loved yourselves? *ne se sont-ils pas aimés?* have they not loved themselves?

Imp. *Ne m'étais-je pas aimé?* had I not loved myself? and so

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

21

so on to the end of the single tenses of the indicative of the verb passive *être aimé*, conjugated with an interrogation negative.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

Have I not gone out of my way 1 for 2 you?	1 <i>se détourner</i> , v. i. 2 <i>pour</i> , prep.
haſt thou not reſted thyſelf 1 ?	1 <i>ſe reposer</i> , v. i.
has not your ſon 1 ſacrificed himſelf 2 for his mother 3 ?	1 <i>ſiſl</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ſe ſacrifier</i> , v. i. 3 <i>mère</i> , n. f.
have we not behaved 1 well 2 ?	1 <i>ſe comporter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>bien</i> , adv.
have you not tried yourſelves 1 ?	1 <i>ſ'éprauver</i> , v. i.
have not these flowers 1 blown 2 ?	1 <i>fleur</i> , n. f. 2 <i>ſ'épanouir</i> , v. i.
have not the prisoners 1 made their escape 2 ?	1 <i>prisonnier</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ſ'échapper</i> , v. i.
had we not met together 1 ?	1 <i>ſ'assembler</i> , v. i.
had they not flattered themſelves 1 in vain 2 ?	1 <i>ſe flatter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>envain</i> , adv.

### Of French Verbs conjugated with conjunctive Pronouns.

Besides the conjunctive pronouns already taken notice of, French verbs are conjugated with other pronouns, which are thus declined.

#### Singular.

Nom. *en*, some.

Gen. { *en*, of me; of thee, of  
him, of her, of it.

*me*, to me.

*te*, to thee.

*lui*, to him, to her,

Dat. *à* to it.

*so*, to one's self, to him-  
self, to herſelf, to  
itſelf.

#### Plural.

Nom. *en*, some.

Gen. { *en*, of us, of you, of  
them.

*nous*, to us,

*vous*, to you,

*leur*, to them.

*ſe*, to one's self, to  
themselves.

#### Singular.

## EXERCISES upon the

*Singular.*

*Acc.*      { *me, me.*  
{ *te, thee.*  
{ *le, him, it.*  
{ *la, her, it.*  
{ *en, some.*

*Abl.*      { *en, from me, from*  
{ *thee, from him,*  
{ *from her, from it.*

*Plural.*

*Acc.*      { *nous, us.*  
{ *vous, you.*  
{ *les, them.*  
{ *les, them.*  
{ *en, some.*

*Abl.*      { *en, from us, from you,*  
{ *from them.*

These pronouns constantly keep in French verbs the same places which the pronouns *me, te, se, nous* and *vous*, have in the reflected one's; so that whosoever can conjugate a reflected verb, knows how to place the conjunctive pronouns in French verbs. Let one example serve for all; we always say

*Nous la tenons.*  
*nous ne la tenons pas*  
*la tenons-nous ?*  
*ne la tenons-nous pas ?*

*we keep it.*  
*we don't keep it.*  
*do we keep it ?*  
*don't we keep it ?*

### Exercises upon these pronouns.

My wife 1 loves 2 me.	1 femme, n. f. 2 aimer, v. 1.
don't you love him much 1 ?	1 beaucoup, adv.
this tree 1 is dead 2 ; the	1 arbre, n. m. 2 mourir, v. 2.
frost 3 has killed 4 it.	3 gelée, n. f. 4 faire mourir, v. 5. 2.
come 1 into 2 our room 3 ; it	1 entrer, v. 1. 2 dans prep. 3
is open 4.	chambre, n. f. elle est ouverte.
this house 1 is too 2 little 3 ;	1 maison, n. f. 2 trop, adv.
sell 4 it.	3 petit, adj. 4 vendre, v. 6.
I tell 1 the truth 2 , and you	1 dire, v. 4 2 viritt, n. f.
won't believe 3 me.	3 croire, v. 5.
I see 1 him, and speak 2 to	1 voir, v. 3. 2 parler, v. 1.
him every day 3.	3 tous les jours.
my aunt 1 is in her room ;	1 tante, n. f. 2 interrompre,
don't disturb 2 her.	v. 6.

my

- my sister 1 is in 2 the country 3, I shall write 4 to her to morrow 5.  
do you speak to me, sir 1 ?  
I speak to you.  
I hate 1 him as 2 much as 2.  
I love her.  
answer 1 me ; don't answer them.  
you say 1 it ; I believe you.  
won't you believe us ?  
why do you believe him ?  
your daughter 1 repents 2,  
forgive 3 her her fault 4.  
  
If I repent, will you forgive  
me ?  
here is 1 a fine 2 book 3,  
shew 4 it.  
I shan't shew you my  
buckles 1.  
may the Lord 1 hear 2 you,  
and defend 3 you.  
honour 1 your father 2 and  
mother 3, and obey 4 them.  
correct 1 your son 2, and he  
shall give 3 you rest 4.  
here is an excellent 1 letter 2,  
have you wrote it ?  
I send 1 you some 2 reflections 3 upon 4 the education 5 of children 6.  
accustom 1 your sons to 2 study 3, and take 4 them with 5 you, when 6 you visit 7 honest men 8.
- 1 *sœur*, n. f. 2 à, prep. 3 *campagne*, n. f. 4 *écrire*, v. 4.  
5 *demain*, adv. 1 *monsieur*, n. m.  
1 *hair*, v. 2. 2 *autantque*, conj.  
1 *répondre*, v. 6.  
1 *dire*, v. 4.  
1 *file*, n. f. 2 *se repentir*, v. 2.  
3 *pardonner*, v. 1. 4 *faute*, n. f.  
1 *voici*, adv. 2 *beau*, adj.  
3 *livre*, n. m. 4 *montrer*, v. 1.  
1 *boucle*, n. f.  
1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *entendre*, v. 6. 3 *défendre*, v. 6.  
1 *honorer*, v. 1. 2 *pere*, n. m.  
3 *mere*, n. f. 4 *obéir*, v. 2.  
1 *corriger*, v. 1. 2 *fils*, n. m.  
3 *donner*, v. 1. 4 *repos*, n. m.  
1 *excellent*, adj. 2 *lettre*, n. f.  
1 *envoyer*, v. 1. 2 *quelque*, adj.  
3 *réflexion*, n. f. 4 *sur*, prep.  
5 *éducation*, n. f. 6 *enfants*, plur.ans. n. m.  
1 *accoutumer*, v. 1. 2 à, prep.  
3 *étude*, n. f. 4 *prendre*, v. 6.  
5 *avec*, prep. 6 *quand*, conj.  
7 *rendre visite à*, v. 6.  
*d'honnêtes gens*

E

I do

- I do 1 him the justice 2 which 3 he deserves 4.      1 rendre, v. 6. 2 justice, n. f.  
 do you think 1 us fit 2 for 3 the bar 3?      3 que, pron. 4 mériter, v. 1.  
 I am sorry 1 to 2 find you 2 so 3 sick 4.      1 croire, v. 5. 2 propre, adj.  
 will you have 1 pears 2, I have some at 3 your service 4.      3 au barreau.  
 these men 1 are not virtuous 2, don't receive 3 them in 4 your family 5.      1 facile, adj. 2 de vous trouver.  
 here are 1 beautiful 2 verses 3, I have learn't 4 them by heart 5.      3 si. 4 malade, adj.  
 this book is full 1 of good 2 things 3, read 4 it.      1 vouloir, v. 3. 2 poire, n. f.  
 I am always 1 angry 2, when 3 I see them.      3 à, prep. 4 service, n. m.  
 If you like 1 it, take 2 it.      1 gens, n. m. plur. 2 vertueux,  
 If you hate 1 them, don't buy 2 them.      adj. 3 recevoir, v. 3. 4 dans,  
 these stockings 1 are very 2 good, shall I buy them?      prep. 5 famille, n. f.  
 have you done 1 it?      1 zoici, adv. 2 beau, ne, adj.  
 he was about 1 some pictures 2, has he finished 3 them?      3 vers, n. m. 4 apprendre,  
 you owed 1 a hundred 2 guineas 3, have you paid 4 them?      v. 6. 5 par cœur.  
 you have seen 1 her, has she pleased 2 you?      1 plein, adj. 2 bon, ne, adj.  
 you have not consulted 1 me.      1 faire, v. 5.  
 have you not employed 1 him with 2 success 3?      1 travailler à, v. 1. 2 tableau,  
 plur. eaux, n. m. 3 finir, v. 2.  
 1 devoir, v. 3. 2 cent, adj.  
 3 guinée, n. f. 4 payer, v. 1.  
 1 voir, v. 3. 2 plaisir, v. 5.  
 1 consulter, v. 1.  
 1 employer, v. 1. 2 avec, prep.  
 3 succès, n. m.

Remarks

## Remarks upon the Conjunctive Pronouns.

## R U L E I.

When a Verb is attended with two of these pronouns, *me*, *nous*, *te*, and *vous*, must be placed before the accusatives *le*, *la*, and *les*; as

*Il me la donne.*

he gives it me.

*il ne nous le dit pas.*

he does not tell it us.

*il te les a envoyés.*

he has sent them to thee.

*il ne vous les a pas pris.*

he has not taken them from you.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I know 1 good 2 news 3,

1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *bon*, *ne*, adj.

I shall tell 4 them to you.

3 *nouvelle*, n. f. 4 *dire*, v. 4.

I have found 1 your fan 2,

1 *trouver*; v. 1. 2 *éventail*,

do you give it 3 me?

n. m. 3 *donner*, v. 1

you shall have my snuff-box 1,

1 *tabatiere*, n. f. 2 *promettre*,

I promise 2 it to you

v. 4.

I have fine 1 carps 2, I shall  
send 3 them to you.

1 *beau*, *belle*, adj. 2 *carpe*,  
n. f. 3 *envoyer*, v. 1.

he has married 1 his grand  
daughter 2 to 3 my brother 4,  
and he had destined 5 her for 6 a wife 7  
for me.

1 *marier*, v. 1. 2 *petite fille*,  
n. f. 3 à, prep. 4 *frere*, n.m.  
5 *destiner*, v. 1. 6 *pour*,  
prep. 7 *femme*, n. f.

he has sold 1 his trees 2, and  
yet 3 he had promised  
them to us.

1 *vendre*, v. 6. 2 *arbre*, n. m.  
3 *cependant*, conj.

you have my horses 1; when 2  
will you send 3 them  
back 3 to me?

1 *cheval*, plur. *aux*, n. m.  
2 *quand*, adv. 3 *renvoyer*,  
v. 1.

## R U L E II.

In the same case, *lui* and *leur* must be placed after the same accusatives, as

*Nous les lui donnons.*

we give them to him.

*nous ne la leur donnons pas.*

we don't give it to them.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

If they ask 1 your protection 2,    1 demander, v. i. 2 protection,  
     will you refuse 3 it them?    n. f. 3 refuser, v. i.  
 you have his money 1, give 2    1 argent, n. m. 2 rendre, v. 6.  
     it him back 2.  
 as 1 soon as 1 I knew 2 the    1 aussi-tôt que. 2 apprendre, v. 6.  
     death 3 of their uncle 4,    3 mort, n. f. 4 oncle, n. m.  
     I told 5 it them.    5 faire savoir, v. 5. 3.  
 they ask for 1 my friendship 2,    1 demander, v. i. 2 amitié,  
     I grant 3 it them.    n. f. 3 accorder, v. i.

## RULE III.

*T* and *en* must be placed after all the conjunctive pronouns,  
 - 29 -

*Je vous en donnerai.*    I shall give you some.  
*ne vous y fiez pas.*    don't trust him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You have bought 1 cherries 2,    1 acheter, v. i. 2 cerise, n. f.  
     give 3 us some.    3 donner, v. i.  
 when 1 have money 1, I    1 argent, n. m.  
     give you some.  
 If you have wine 1, give    1 vin, n. m.  
     them some.  
 he hates 1 the park 2, don't    1 baür, v. 2. 2 parc, n. m.  
     carry 3 him there.    3 mener, v. i.  
 these conditions 1 are too 2    1 condition, n. f. 2 trop, adv.  
     hard 3, I don't submit 4 to    3 dur, adj. 4 se soumettre,  
     them.    v. 4.

## RULE IV.

The disjunctive pronoun *moi* being used after the second person of the imperative of any reflected verb, conjugated affirmatively, *en* and *y* must be placed before it, as  
*Donnez en moi.*    give me some.  
*menez y moi.*    carry me thither.

*Exercises*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

If you have too much 1 *1 trop*, adv. 2 *bien*, n. m.  
wealth, 2 give me some.  
have 1 you got 1 too many 2 *1 avoir*, v. 3. 2 *trop*. 3  
guineas 3, lend 4 me some. *guinée*, n. f. 4 *prêter*, v. 1.  
Vauxhall is not far 1 from 2 *1 loin*, adv. 2 *de*, prep. 3 *ici*,  
hence 3, conduct 4 me *adv. 4 conduire*, v. 4.  
there.

## R U L E V.

When *y* and *en* meet together in a sentence, *y* must be placed first, as *je vous y en porterai*, I shall carry some for you there.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You have no 1 fish 1 at 2 *1 point de poisson*. 2 *à*, prep.  
Hampstead, my brother 3 *3 frère*, n. m. 4 *porter*, v. 1.  
will carry 4 some for you there.  
as they had no tea 1 at their 1 *thé*, n. m. 2 *maison de  
country house* 2, I have *campagne*, n. f. 3 *envoyer*,  
sent 3 them some thither. v. 1.

## Of French Moods.

The Infinitive denotes any thing without affirming, as *manger*, to eat.

The Indicative shews and affirms, as *il mange*, he eats.

The Imperative commands, prays and exhorts, as *mangez*, eat; *ne mangez pas*, don't eat.

The Conjunctive comes after the conjunction *que*, that; or such like words following a verb, as *il faut que je fasse un discours*, I must make a speech.

## Use of the French Tenses.

## Single Tenses of the Indicative.

## The Present.

This tense denotes that a thing is, or is done at the time wherein we speak, as *je marche*, I walk; it answers to the

## 78 EXERCISES upon the

*English present of the indicative, I walk, I do walk, I am walking.*

### *Exercises upon this Tense.*

Wisdom 1 is the principal 2	thing 3.	1 <i>Sageſſe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>principal</i> , adj. 3 <i>choſe</i> , n. f.
wisdom dwells 1 with 2	prudence 3.	1 <i>habiter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>avec</i> , prep. 3 <i>prudence</i> , n. f.
hatred 1 stirreth up 2	strifes 3.	1 <i>baine</i> , n. f. 2 <i>cauſer</i> , v. i. 3 <i>dispute</i> , n. f.
the labour 1 of the righteous 2	tendeth 3 to life 4.	1 <i>travail</i> , n. m. 2 <i>juſte</i> , n. m. 3 <i>tendre</i> , v. 6. 4 <i>vie</i> , n. f.
the tongue 1 of the just is	as 2 choice 4 filver 3.	1 <i>langue</i> , n. f. 2 <i>comme</i> , conj. 3 <i>argent</i> , n. m. 4 <i>pur</i> , adj.
the righteous is 1 more 2 ex-	cellent 1 than 2 his neigh-	1 <i>vaut mieux</i> . 2 <i>que</i> , conj. 3 <i>voiſin</i> , n. m.
bour 3.		

### *The Imperfet.*

This tense is used, 1ſt, to denote that the thing we speak of was present in a past time ſpecified, as *j'étudiois quand il entra*, I was ſtudying when he came in. When thus used, it answers to the English imperfect, *I was walking*.

2dly, It is used to express the inclinations or qualities a person had, or what he at certain times did, in a time entirely past, as

*Hérode étoit cruel.*

*mon pere faifoit la même choſe.*

Herod was a cruel man.

my father did the ſame thing.

3dly, It is used after the conjunction *ſi*, to denote the thing that ſhould be, that another thing might happen, as *je litrois, ſi j'avrois des livres*, I ſhould read, if I had books.

### *Exercises upon this Tense.*

I was ſick 1, when 2 he 1	came 3.	<i>malade</i> , adj. 2 <i>quand</i> , conj. 3 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.
was you not at 1 home 1	when he ſet out 2?	1 <i>au logis</i> . 2 <i>partir</i> , v. 2.
my father 1 was abroad 2	when my mother 3 died 4.	1 <i>pere</i> , n. m. 2 <i>en ville</i> . 3 <i>merte</i> , n. f. 4 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2.

this

this woman 1 was handsome 2	1 femme, n. f. 2 beau, belle, adj. 3 dans, prep. 4 jeu-
in 3 her youth 4.	neffe, n. f.
Boadicea 1 was a warlike 3	1 Boadicee, n. f. 2 princesse, princess 2.
the late 1 king 2 was a	1 feu, adj. 2 roi, n. m. 3 bon, good 3 prince 4.
if he loved 1 my sister 2, he	1 aimer, v. i. 2 sœur, n. f. would marry 3 her.
should he fear 1 me, he	1 craindre, v. 6. 2 faire, v. 5. would do 2 his duty 3.
if he went 1 there 2, he	1 aller, v. i. 2 y pron. conj. would be punished 3.
	3 punir, v. 2.

*The Preterite.*

This tense is used to denote a thing past, in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it happened, as *je fus malade l'année dernière*, I was sick last year.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

I went 1 yesterday 2 to 3 the	1 aller, v. i. 2 bier, adv. play 4.
we danced 1 the 2 day before	3 à, prep. 4 comédie, n. f.
yesterday 2 during 3	1 danser, v. i. 2 avant bier.
three 4 hours 5..	3 pendant, prep. 4 trois, adj. 5 heure, n. f.
we supped 1 last 3 week 2	1 souper, v. i. 2 semaine, n. f.
at 4 Ranelagh.	3 dernier, adj. 4 à, prep.
Alexander 1 conquered 2	1 Alexandre, n. m. 2 conquérir, Darius.
Cæsar 1 came 2, saw 3, and	v. 2.
conquered.	1 César, n. m. 2 venir, v. 2. 3 voir, v. 3.
Pyrrus 1 I defeated 2 the	1 Pirrus, n. m. 2 défaire,
Romans 3.	v. 5. 3 Romain, n. m.

*The Future.*

This tense denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come, as *je parlerai*, I shall speak, and answers to the English future, *I shall or will walk, &c.*

## EXERCISES upon the

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

The expectation 1 of the wicked 2 shall perish 3.  
wealth 1 gotten 2 by 3 vanity 4 shall be diminished 5.

the house 1 of the wicked  
shall be overthrown 2.

a false 1 witness 2 shall not  
be unpunished 3.

the sluggard 1 will not plow 2  
by 3 reason of the cold 3;  
therefore 4 he shall beg 5  
in 6 harvest 6, and have  
nothing 7.

1 *espérance*, n. f. 2 *méchants*  
plur. *ans*, n. m. 3 *périr*, v. 2.  
1 *richesses*, plur. n. f. 2 *ac-  
quérir*, v. 2. 3 *par*, prep.  
4 *vanité*, n. f. 5 *diminuer*,  
v. 1.

1 *maison*, n. f. 2 *renverser*,  
v. 1.  
1 *faux*, adj. 2 *témoin*, n. m.  
3 *impuni*, adj.  
1 *pareillement*, n. m. 2 *labourer*,  
v. 1. 3 *à cause du froid*.  
4 *c'est pourquoi*. 5 *mandier*,  
v. 1. 6 *pendant la moisson*.  
7 *rien*, n. m.

*The Conditional.*

The conditional or uncertain time denotes a thing that would, should or could be in an unspecified and uncertain time, and depends of another uncertain thing, as *je serrois votre fortune, si j'étois roi*, I should make your fortune, if I was a king.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

My father 1 would love 2  
my sister 3, if 4 she was  
more modest 5.

I would marry 1 her, if  
she was handsome 2.

I would not go 1 to London 2,  
if I was in 3 your place 4.

I would give 1 you a place 2,  
if you had done 3 your  
duty 4.

1 *pere*, n. m. 2 *aimer*, v. 1.  
3 *sœur*, n. f. 4 *si*, conj.  
5 *modeste*, adj.

1 *épouser*, v. 1. 2 *beau, belle*,  
adj.

1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *Londres*, n. m.  
3 *à*, prep. 4 *place*, n. f.

1 *donner*, v. 1. 2 *poste*, n. m.  
3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *devoir*,  
n. m.

*Compounds of the Indicative.**The First Compound.*

This tense denotes a thing that is past, but in such a manner that a part still remains of the time wherein that thing has

has happened, as *j'ai perdu cette année cent pistoles*, I have lost a hundred pistoles this year. *J'ai perdu* denotes a thing that is past; but it has happened *cette année*; and there still remains a part of this year to slide away.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

How many 1 guineas 2 1 combien, adv. 2 *guinée*, n. f.  
have you won 3 to day 4? 3 *gagner*, v. i. 4 *aujourd'hui*, adv.

I have read 1 Telemachus 2 1 *lire*, v. 4 2 *Télémaque*,  
this week 3. n. m. 3 *semaine*, n. f.

I have seen 1 the prince 2 1 *voir*, v. 3. 2 *prince*, n. m.  
twice 3 this month 4. 3 *deux fois*. 4 *mois*, n. m.  
the king 1 of Prussia 2 has 1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *Prusse*, n. f.  
defeated 3 the French 4 3 *battre*, v. 4. 4 *François*,  
and Austrians 5 this year 6. n. m. 5 *Autrichien*, n. m.  
6 *année*, n. f.

our age 1 has produced 2 1 *siecle*, n. m. 2 *produire*, v. 4.  
great 3 poets 4. 3 *grand*, adj. 4 *poete*, n. m.

*Remark upon the preterite and first compound.*

When the time wherein a thing has happened is entirely past, and is not specified, we may indifferently use these two tenses, as *Alexandre fut*, or *a été un grand capitaine*, Alexander was, or has been a great general.

*Exercises wherein the preterite or first compound may be indifferently used.*

The duke 1 of Marlborough 1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *souvent*, adv.  
has often 2 beaten 3 the 3 *battre*, v. 4.  
*French*.

the fruits 1 of the earth 2 1 *fruit*, n. m. 2 *terre*, n. f.  
have been the food 3 of 3 *nourriture*, n. f. 4 *premier*,  
the first 4 men 5. adj. 5 *homme*, n. m.

Christ 1 has driven 2 the 1 *Jesus Christ*, n. m. 2 *chasser*,  
traders 3 out 4 of the v. i. 3 *marchand*, n. m.  
temple 4. 4 *du temple*.

water 1 was changed 2 into 3 1 *eau*, n. f. 2 *changer*, v. i.  
wine 4 at 5 the wedding 3 *en*, prep. 4 *vin*, n. m.  
of Cana 5. 5 *aux noces de Cana*.

## EXERCISES upon the

Joseph has interpreted 1 Pha- 1 *interpréter*, v. i. 2 *songe*, n.m.  
rao's 3 dreams 2. 3 *Pharaon*, n. m.  
Cain killed 1 his brother 2 1 *tuer*, v. i. 2 *frere*, n. m.  
Abel.

*The Second Compound.*

This tense is used to denote, that, in a certain specified time that is past, the thing spoken of was also past, as *j'avois fait mon thème, quand vous entrez*, I had done my exercise when you came in.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

The king 1 had ended 2 his  
speech 3, when 4 I enter-  
ed 5 into 6 the house 7  
of lords 8.

you had sold 1 your estate 2,  
when I married 3.

the captain 1 had paid 2 his  
debts 3, when he died 4.

the duke 1 had left 2 the  
army 3 when we took 4  
Tournay.

1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *finir*, v. 2.  
3 *discours*, n. m. 4 *quand*,  
conj. 5 *entrer*, v. i. 6 *dans*,  
prep. 7 *chambre*, n. f.  
8 *pair*, n. m.

1 *vendre*, v. 6. 2 *bien*, n. m.  
3 *se marier*, v. i.  
1 *capitaine*, n. m. 2 *payer*,  
v. i. 3 *dette*, n. f. 4 *mourir*,  
v. 2.  
1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *quitter*, v. i.  
3 *armée*, n. f. 4 *prendre*,  
v. 6.

*The Third Compound.*

This tense, like the preterite, expresses a thing quite past, and is commonly construed with

*quand*, when.

*aussitôt que*, as soon as.

*lorsque*, when.

*après que*, when.

*dès que*, as soon as.

*à peine*, scarce.

as *quand j'eus parlé*, *chacon se leva*; when I had spoken,  
every one got up.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

When he had finished 1 his  
history 2, she began 3 her 4  
own 4.

1 *finir*, v. 2. 2 *histoire*, n. f.  
3 *commencer*, v. i. 4 *la  
fianne*.

when

when the king 1 was come 2,	I roi, n. m.	2 venir, v. 2.
they began the play 3.	3 comédie, n. f.	
as soon as Cæsar 1 was en- tered 2 into 3 the senate 4	I Cæsar, n. m.	2 entrer, v. 1.
house 4, the conspirators 5	3 dans, prep.	4 senat, n. m.
fell 6 upon 7 him and	5 conjuré, n. m.	6 tomber, v. 1.
killed 8 him.	7 sur, prep.	8 tuer, v. 1.

### *The Fourth Compound.*

This tense denotes a time to come, wherein the thing spoken of will be over, as *j'aurai fini mon ouvrage, quand vous commencerez le vôtre*, I shall have finished my work, when you begin yours.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

I shall have dined 1, when 2 you come 3.	I <i>diner</i> , v. i. 2 <i>quand</i> , conj. 3 <i>venir</i> , v. 2.
when I have done 1 my task 2, I shall go 3 to 4 my brothers 4.	1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5 2 <i>tâche</i> , n. f. 3 <i>aller</i> , v. i. 4 <i>chez</i> moh <i>frere</i> .
I shall study 1 my lesson 2, when I have finished 3 my exercise 4.	1 <i>étudier</i> , v. i. 2 <i>leçon</i> , n. f. 3 <i>finir</i> , v. 2. 4 <i>thème</i> , n. m.

### *The Fifth Compound.*

This tense denotes a thing that would, could or should have happened, had it not been for some other conditional thing, as *vous auriez réussi*, *si vous aviez suivi mon conseil*, you would have succeeded, if you had followed my advice.

### *Exercises upon this Tense.*

The prince 1 would have preferred 2 him, if 3 he had behaved 4 better 5.  
you would have won 1 if you had played 2.  
his mistress 1 would not have forgiven 2 him; had 3 she not been 3 a good 4 woman 5.

*Single Tenses of the Conjunctive.**The Present,*

This tense is used when the Verb coming before it is either in the present or future, as

*Croyez vous qu'ils viennent 1 ? Do you think that they will come 1 ?*  
*il faudra que je le fasse. I shall be obliged to do it.*

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

We must 1 come to 2 a resolution 3.	1 <i>Il faut</i> , v. imp. 3. 2 <i>prendre</i> , v. 6. 3 <i>resolution</i> , n. f.
you must repeat 1 your lesson 2.	1 <i>répéter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>leçon</i> , n. f.
they must write 1 their letters 2.	1 <i>écrire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>lettre</i> , n. f.
you will be obliged 1 to sell 2 your estate 3.	1 <i>il faudra</i> , v. imp. 3. 2 <i>vendre</i> , v. 6. 3 <i>bien</i> , n. m.
will they not be obliged to help 1 him ?	1 <i>secourir</i> , v. 2.

*The Preterite.*

This tense is used, when the Verb coming before it is in any one of the past, or conditional tenses, as

<i>Je voulois qu'il entrât.</i>	I was willing he should enter.
<i>il ordonna qu'on le mit à mort.</i>	he ordered him to be put to death.
<i>elle voudroit que vous y allâfiez.</i>	she wishes you would go there.
<i>j'ai ordonné qu'on le laissât aller.</i>	I have commanded to let him go.
<i>vous aviez empêché qu'on ne m'insultât.</i>	you had hindered my being insulted.
<i>auriez-vous voulu qu'il accusât son frère ?</i>	would you have had him accuse his brother.

*Exercises upon this Tense.*

We were not willing 1 that he should expose 2 his life 3.	1 <i>Vouloir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>exposer</i> , v. 1. 3 <i>vie</i> , n. f.
---	--

would

would 1 you have 1 him 1 *wouloir.* 2 *courir,* v. 2.  
run 2 the risk 3 of 4 lose 3 *risque,* n. m. 4 *de perdre,*  
sing 4 his estate 5. 5 *bien,* n. m.

he ordered 1 them to be hanged 2 immediately 3. 1 *ordonner,* v. 1. 2 *pendre,* v.  
6. 3 *sur le champ.*

I wish 1 you would study 2 more 3 than 4 you do 5. 1 *je voudrois.* 2 *étudier,* v. 1.  
3 *plus,* adv. 4 *que,* conj.  
5 *vous ne faites.*

we wish your master 1 would teach 2 you the first 3 principles 4 of the French 6 tongue 5. 1 *maitre,* n. m. 2 *enseigner,*  
v. 1. 3 *premier,* adj. 4 *principe,* n. m. 5 *langue,* n. f.  
6 *Français,* adj.

I have ordered him to be punished 1. 1 *punir,* v. 2.

I have hindered 1 your being imposed upon 2. 1 *empêcher,* v. 1. 2 *tromper,*  
would you have had 1 us lose 2 our time 3? 1 *auriez vous voulu.* 2 *perdre,*  
v. 4. 3 *tems,* n. m.

### Compounds of the Conjunctive.

#### The first Compound.

This tense is used, when the Verb coming before it, is either in the present, first compound, or future of the indicative, as

*Je doute qu'aucun philosophe ait jamais connu l'origine des vents.* I doubt whether any of the philosophers ever knew the cause of the winds.

*il a fallu que j'aie sollicité mes juges.* I have been obliged to wait upon my judges.

*je n'entreprendrai rien que je n'aie consulté mon avocat.* I shall undertake nothing before I have consulted my lawyer.

#### Exercises upon this Tense.

Do you doubt 1 that he has behaved 2 well 3? 1 *Douter,* v. 1. 2 *se comporter,*  
v. 1. 3 *bien,* adv.

I don't doubt but he has done 1 his duty 2. 1 *faire,* v. 5. 2 *devoir,* n. m.

I have been obliged 1 to reconcile 2 them. 1 *il a fallu,* v. imp. 3. 2 *reconcilier,* v. 1.

I shall

I shall say 1 nothing 2 before you have spoken 3.

1 dire, v. 4. 2 rien, n. m.  
3 parler, v. 1.

I shall not forgive 1 you before you have asked 2 pardon 3.

1 pardonner, v. 1. 2 demander,  
v. 1. 3 pardon, n. m.

### The Second Compound.

This tense is used after the imperfect, preterite, conditional, and the first, second, and fifth compounds, as

*J'ignorais que vous eussiez appris l'Arithmétique.*

I did not know that you had learned Arithmetick.

*il ne crut pas qu'on lui eût tendu un piege.*

he did not believe that they had laid a snare for him.

*vous trouveriez mauvais, que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.*

you would take it ill, if we had disobeyed your orders.

*il n'a pas cru qu'on lui eût tendu un piege.*

he did not believe that they had laid a snare for him.

*nous avions ignoré que le roi nous eût accordé cette grace.*

we did not know that the king had granted you that favour.

*vous auriez trouvé mauvais que nous eussions contrevenu à vos ordres.*

you would have taken it ill, if we had disobeyed your orders.

### Exercises upon this Tense.

I did not know 1 that you had taught 2 philosophy 3. he did not believe 1 that they had discovered 2 where 3 he was.

1 Savoir, v. 3. 2 enseigner,  
v. 1. 3 philosophie, n. f.  
1 croire, v. 5. 2 découvrir, v.  
2. 3 où, adv.

I should have taken 1 it ill 1, if you had not assisted 2 your countryman 3.

1 trouver mauvais, v. 1. 2 assister, v. 1. 3 compatriote, n. m.

we did not believe that he had done 1 it.

1 faire, v. 5.

we did not know that the dutchess 1 had rewarded 2 that lady 3.

1 duchesse, n. f. 2 récompenser,  
v. 1. 3 dame, n. f.

we should have taken it ill, 1 *cultiver*, v. i. 2 *esprit*, n. m.  
if you had not improved 1  
your mind 2.

The French and English imperative denoting the same thing, there need no remarks upon them.

### Tenses of the Infinitive.

#### The Present.

This tense denotes the present, past, and future time, as

<i>Vous me voyez danser.</i>	You see me dance.
<i>vous m'avez entendu parler.</i>	you have heard me speak.
<i>vous m'entendrez chanter.</i>	you will hear me sing.

#### Exercises upon this Tense.

Are you willing 1 to go 2 to 3	1 <i>Vouloir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>aller</i> , v. 1.
· York 4 ?	3 à, prep. 4 <i>Yorke</i> , n. m.
can 1 you speak 2 French 3 ?	1 <i>savoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>parler</i> , v. 1.
	3 <i>François</i> , n. m.
we expect 1 to have a good 2	1 <i>compter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>bon</i> , n.,
crop 3.	adj. 3 <i>recolte</i> , n. f.
I am 1 to receive 2 my rents 3.	1 <i>devoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>recevoir</i> , v. 3.
	3 <i>rente</i> , n. f.
we are to dance 1 this even-	1 <i>dancer</i> , v. i. 2 <i>soir</i> , n. m.
ing 2.	
be pleased 1 to grant 2 me a	1. <i>daigner</i> , v. i. 2 <i>accorder</i> ,
favour 3.	v. i. 3 <i>faveur</i> , n. f.

#### Compound of the Present.

This tense denotes a time past, relatively to the tense of the verb coming before it, as

<i>Vous paroissez avoir perdu vo-</i>	You look as if you had lost
<i>tre argent.</i>	your money.
<i>j'ai cru être arrivé trop tard.</i>	I thought I was come too late.

#### Exercises upon this Tense.

They look 1 as if they	1 <i>Paroître</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>avoir en-</i>
had 2 a mind 2 to suc-	vie. 3 <i>de réussir</i> . 4 <i>en-</i>
ceed 3 in their undertak-	<i>treprise</i> , n. f.
ings 4.	

*she pretends* 1 that she has  
lost 2 her money 3 at 4  
play 4.

*he thought* 1 he was gone  
out 2 too 3 soon 4.

1 prétendre, v. 6. 2 perdre, v.  
4. 3 argent, n. m. 4 au  
jeu.

1 croire, v. 5. 2 sortir, v. 2.  
3 trop, adv. 4 tôt, adv.

### Use of the Participle Active.

You must observe, first, that this participle is always un-declined, as

*Un homme craignant Dieu.*

A man fearing God.

*une femme aimant son mari.*

a wife loving her husband.

Secondly, that when it denotes a past time, it takes a participle passive after it, as *ayant cherché*, having sought.

Thirdly, that when *en* is placed before it, this word signifies *as*, *when* or *whilst*, as

*En me parlant, i. pensoit à au-  
tre chose.*

When he was speaking to  
me, he was thinking of o-  
ther things.

*je vous le dirai, en allant.*

I shall tell it you, as we go.

### Exercises upon this Participle.

*Philosophers* 1 knowing 2 the  
truth 3, ought 4 not to  
conceal 5 it.

1 Philosophe, n. m. connoître,  
v. 5. 3 vérité, n. f. 4 de-  
voir, v. 3. 5 cacher, v. 1.

*I met* 1 some people 2 sing-  
ing 3 psalms 4.

1 rencontrer, v. 1. 2 gens, plur.  
n. m. 3 chanter, v. 1.  
4 psaume, n. m.

*Alexander* 1, having defeat-  
ed 2 Darius, seized upon 3  
his kingdom 4.

1 Alexandre, n. m. 2 défaire,  
v. 5. 3 se rendre maître de,  
v. 6. 4 royaume, n. m.

*he spoke* 1 to me several 2  
times 3, as he walked 4.

1 parler, v. 1. 2 plusieurs, adj.  
plur. 3 fois, n.f. 4 marcher, v. 1.

*he died* 1 as he was speak-  
ing.

1 mourir, v. 2.

### Use of the Participle Passive.

This participle is sometimes declined, and sometimes un-declined.

It

It is declined, first, in the verbs passive, as

<i>Il est chéri.</i>	He is beloved.
<i>elle est chérie.</i>	she is beloved.
<i>nous sommes chéris.</i>	we are beloved.
<i>elles sont chéries.</i>	they are beloved.

Secondly, in the compounds of the reflected verbs, as

<i>Il s'est caché.</i>	He has hid himself.
<i>elle s'est cachée.</i>	she has hid herself.
<i>nous nous sommes cachés.</i>	we have hid ourselves.
<i>elles se sont cachées.</i>	they have hid themselves.

Thirdly, after the Verb *avoir*, when this verb has a pronoun in the accusative before it, as

<i>Les vers que j'ai faits, je vous les donne.</i>	I give you the verses which I have made.
--	--

It is undeclined, first, after the verb *avoir*, when this verb has no pronoun in the accusative before it, as

<i>J'ai lu Gil-blas.</i>	I have read Gil-blas.
--------------------------	-----------------------

Secondly, when its nominative comes after it, as

<i>La peine qu'ont pris les savans.</i>	The trouble which the learned have taken.
---	---

Thirdly, when it governs, and is placed before an infinitive without a preposition between them, as

<i>Les femmes que j'ai entendu chanter.</i>	The women whom I heard sing.
---	------------------------------

Fourthly, after a Verb conjugated in its compounds with the Verb *être*, and governing a conjunctive pronoun in the dative, as

<i>Elle s'est prescrit cette règle.</i>	She has made this her rule.
---	-----------------------------

Fifthly, when in the same sentence it is followed by *que* or *qui*, as

<i>Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'ap-</i>	The reasons which he thought
<i>prouvois.</i>	I approved of.

Sixthly, in the Verbs impersonal, as

<i>La pluie qu'il a fait.</i>	The rain which has fallen.
	<i>Exercises</i>

*Exercises upon the declined Participle Passive.*

Having already given several Exercises upon this participle, when I treated of the passive and reflected Verbs, I shall now content myself with setting down here a few Exercises upon the third Remark.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| The speech 1 which 2 I have<br>made 3. I present 4 to you. | 1 <i>Harangue</i> , n. f. 2 <i>que</i> .<br>3 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. 4 <i>présenter</i> , v. 1. |
| the sums 1 which I have<br>borrowed 2, I return<br>back 3. | 1 <i>somme</i> , n. f. 2 <i>emprunter</i> ,<br>v. 1.. 3 <i>rendre</i> , v. 6.                 |
| the cause 1 which I have<br>defended 2, I forsake 3.       | 1 <i>cause</i> , n. f. 2 <i>défendre</i> , v. 6.<br>3 <i>abandonner</i> , v. 1.               |

*Exercises upon the undeclined Participle Passive.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| I have not yet 1 read 2 the<br>history 3 of England 4.   | 1 <i>Encore</i> , adv. 2 <i>lire</i> , v. 4.<br>3 <i>histoire</i> , n. f. 4 <i>Angle-<br/>terre</i> , n. f.  |
| do you know 1 the trouble 2<br>which 3 my 5 brother 5 has<br>taken 4 to 6 serve you 6 ?<br>here is 1 the child 2 whom 3<br>I have heard 4 speak 5. | 1 <i>savoir</i> , v. 3. 2 <i>peine</i> , n. f.<br>3 <i>que</i> . 4 <i>prendre</i> , v. 6. 5 <i>mon<br/>frere</i> . v. 1. 6 <i>pour vous servir</i> .<br>1 <i>voila</i> , adv. 2 <i>enfant</i> , n. m.<br>3 <i>que</i> . 4 <i>entendre</i> , v. 6.<br>5 <i>parler</i> , v. 1. |
| I have made 1 several 2<br>rules 3 to myself 1.  | 1 <i>se prescrire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>plusieurs</i> ,<br>adj. plur. 3 <i>regle</i> , n. f.  |
| I have read the books 1<br>which 2 you thought 3 I<br>approved of 4.   | 1 <i>livre</i> , n. m. 2 <i>que</i> . 3 <i>croire</i> ,<br>v. 5. 4 <i>approuver</i> , v. 1.  |
| the wind 1 which 2 has<br>blown 2 for 3 two days 3,<br>has unrooted 4 several<br>trees 5.  | 1 <i>vent</i> , n. m. 2 <i>qu'il a fait</i> .<br>3 <i>pendant deux jours</i> . 4 <i>de-<br/>raciner</i> , v. 1. 5 <i>arbre</i> , n. m.   |

---

**Of ADVERBS.**

What has been said before concerning the undeclined particles is to be understood only of such as are met with in the foregoing Exercises; I must now treat of them in a more particular manner.

*Adverb.*

First,

First, the French Adverbs may be divided into eight classes, viz. Adverbs of *manner*, *order*, *place*, *distance*, *time*, *quantity*, *distribution*, and *motive*.

### *Adverbs of manner.*

The adverbs of *manner* are formed from their respective adjectives, by adding *ment* after each of them, as

*Fortement*, strongly.  
*tendrement*, tenderly.  
*promptement*, quickly.

*aisément*, easily.  
*hardiment*, boldly.  
*absolument*, absolutely.

And several others, to which we must add,

*En vain*, in vain.  
*exprès*, purposely.  
*mal*, badly.

*bien*, well.  
*ainsi*, thus.  
*demême*, so, thus.

The adverbs of *manner* are compared like adjectives with the words

*Plus*, more.  
*le plus*, the most.  
*aussi*, as.  
*si*, so.

*Moins*, less.  
*très*, very.  
*fort*, very.

But the adverb *mieux*, better, is the comparative of the adverb *bien*, well; and *pis*, worse, is that of *mal*, badly.

The Adverbs of *manner* are seldom placed before any other adverbs, but sometimes take adverbs of quantity before them, as

<i>Cet homme traite bien fière-</i>	<i>This man uses his inferiors</i>
<i>ment ses infériturs.</i>	<i>in a very proud manner.</i>
<i>vous parlez peu décentement des</i>	<i>you speak with little decency</i>
<i>femmes.</i>	<i>of the women.</i>

They are placed, first, before the adjectives, as

<i>Parfaitement belle.</i>	<i>Perfectly handsome.</i>
<i>Secondly</i> , after the single tenses of the Verbs, as	
<i>Il parle modestement de lui-</i>	<i>He speaks modestly of him-</i>
<i>même.</i>	<i>self.</i>

Thirdly, in the compounds, between the auxiliary and participle, as

<i>Vous vous êtes bien comporté.</i>	<i>you have behaved well.</i>
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------

*Exercises*

92. EXERCISES upon the

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

She behaves 1 more politely 2 than 3 her sister 4.

1 se comporter, v. i. 2 poli-  
ment. 3 que, conj. 4 sœur,  
n. f.

he speaks 1 more judiciously 2 than the other 3.  
your country-man 1 has served 2 me the most faithfully 3 in 4 the world 4.

1 parler, v. i. 2 sensément.  
3 autre, pron. nom.  
1 compatriote, n. m. 2 servir,  
v. 2. 3 fidèlement. 4 du  
monde.

he composes 1 verses 2 as easily 3 as 4 Voltaire.  
don't behave so impudently 1.  
we are lodged 1 less conveniently 2 than you.

1 composer, v. i. 2 vers, n. m.  
3 facilement. 4 que, conj.  
1 effrontément.  
1 loger, v. i. 2 commodément.

he has served his king 1 very faithfully.

1 roi, n. m.

you don't work 1 better than I.

1 travailler, v. i.

you speak very 1 indiscreetly 2.

1 bien, adv. 2 imprudemment.

this lady 1 is perfectly 2 handsome 3, and speaks modestly 4 of herself 5.

1 dame, n. f. 2 parfaitement.  
3 beau, belle, adj. 4 modeste-  
ment. 5 d'elles même.

I have strongly 1 opposed 2 his designs 3.

1 fortement. 2 opposer, v. i.  
3 dessein, n. m.

*Adverbs of Order.*

These adverbs being

Prémierement, first.

Devant, before.

Secondelement, secondly.

derrière, behind.

Troisiemement, thirdly.

ensuite, afterwards, then.

Quatriemement, fourthly, &c.

auparavant, before.

d'abord, at first.

enfin, at last.

après, after.

are never used with adjectives, and are placed before or after the Verb, as the smoothness of the sentence requires it. When they come after it, they are not

to

to be separated from it, whereas when they come before it, they may be placed at the head of the sentence. All this will appear by the following examples.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Parlez d'abord à mon frere ; ensuite je lui dirai ce que je pense.</i> | Speak first to my brother; I shall tell him afterwards what I think. |
| <i>Dieu créa d'abord l'homme ; ensuite il créa la femme.</i>              | God created the man first, and afterwards he created the woman.      |

### *Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

We must 1 first do 2 our duty 3; secondly, we 4 must only take 4 lawful 6 pleasures 5.

You ought 1 first to love 2 God 3 above 4 all 5 things 6; secondly, you ought to love your neighbour 7 as 8 yourself 9.

First, the king 1 is not absolute 2 in 3 England 4; secondly, we have the happiness 5 to live 6 under 7 a good 8 prince 9.

Our eyes 1 admire 2 at first beauty 3, then our senses 4 covet 5 it, and our heart 6 gives 7 itself over 7 to 8 it 8 afterwards.

1 *Il faut*, v. imp. 3. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *devoir*, n. m. 4 *nous ne devons prendre que*, 5 *plaisir*, n. m. 6 *permis*, adj.

1 *devoir*, v. 3. 2 *aimer*, v. 1. 3 *Dieu*, n. m. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *tout*, adj. 6 *chose*, n.f. 7 *prochain*, n. m. 8 *comme*, conj. 9 *vous-même*, pron. nom.

1 *roi*, n. m. 2 *absolu*, adj. 3 *en* prep. 4 *Angleterre*, n. f. 5 *bonheur*, n. m. 6 *vivre*, v. 4. 7 *sous*, prep. 8 *bon*, adj. 9 *prince*, n. m. 1 *oeil*, plur. *yeux*, n. m. 2 *admirer*, v. 1. 3 *beauté*, n. f. 4 *sens*, n. m. 5 *désirer*, v. 1. 6 *coeur*, n. m. 7 *se livrer*, v. 1. 8 *y*, pron. conj.

### *Adverbs of Place.*

These adverbs are,

*Où*, where.

*ici*, here.

*là*, there.

*dedans*, within.

*déhors*, without, out.

*dessus*, upon.

*Deffous*, under.

*partout*, every where.

*autour*, round.

*deçà*, on this side.

*delà*, off, from thence.

*au delà*, beyond.

*You*

You must observe, first, that they are placed after the Verb, except où, that comes before it, as

*Je suis ici.*

I am here.

*ou allez vous ?*

where are you going ?

Secondly, that except *partout* and *autour*, they may be governed by prepositions, as

*Aller par ici.*

Go this way.

*passer par là.*

pass that way.

#### Exercises upon these Adverbs.

Where shall we go 1 ?

1 *Aller*, v. 1.

we are 2 here.

2 *être*, v. aux.

shall you stay 1 there?

1 *rester*, v. 1.

he has been turned out 1.

1 *mettre debors*, v. 4.

God 1 is every where.

1 *Dieu*, n. m.

let us go this 1 way 1.

1 *par ici*.

from whence 1 come 2 you ?

1 *d'où*. 2 *venir*, v. 2.

#### Adverbs of Distance.

Observe first, that these adverbs being *loin*, far, and *près*, near may be compared and placed after other adverbs, as *approchez vous plus près*, come nearer.

Secondly, that they may come either before or after prepositions, as

*Cette maison paraît bien petite de loin.*

This house seems very small at a distance.

*il demeure loin de moi.*

he lives far from me.

#### Exercises upon these Adverbs.

Of all 1 the courtiers 2 you are he 3 who 4 approach 5 the nearest the king's 7 person 6.

1 *Tout*, adj. 2 *courtisan*, n. m.  
3 *celui*, pron. nom. 4 *qui*  
pron. adj. 5 *approcher*, v. 1.  
6 *personne*, n. f. 7 *roi*, n. m.

this village 1 is neither 2 too 3 far, nor 4 too near the 5 city of Dublin 5.

1 *village*, n. m. 2 *ni*, conj.  
3 *trop*, adv. 4 *ni*, conj. 5 *de*  
*la ville de Dublin*.

sometimes 1 what 2 appears 3 handsome 4 at a distance 5,

1 *quelquefois*, adv. 2 *ce qui*,  
pron. nom. 3 *paraître*, v.

is 6 not so 6 near 7 at hand 7. 5. 4 beau, adj. 5. de loin.  
 6 ne l'est pas. 7 de près.  
 near 1 you I study 2, far 3 1 près de, 2 étudier, v. 1.  
 from 3 you I play 4. 3 loin de. 4 jouer, v. 1.

### Adverbs of Time.

These adverbs are seven in number, viz.

Tantôt, presently, by and by.	Tôt, soon.
demain, to-morrow.	tard, late.
hier, yesterday.	matin, early.
aujourd'hui, to day, this day.	

You must observe first, that the four first may be governed by a preposition, as *pour demain*, for to-morrow, &c.

Secondly, that they are placed either before or after the Verb, according as the smoothness of the sentence requires it, as

*Demain je prendrai médecine.* I shall take physick to-mor-  
 rōw.

*je vais aujourd'hui à la comé-* I shall go this day to the  
 die. play.

Thirdly, that they must not be placed in the compounds between the auxiliary Verb and participle, as

*Il a fait aujourd'hui beau* It has been fine weather to  
 tems. day.

Fourthly, that the three last may be compared, as *plus tard*, later.

Fifthly, that they may take other adverbs before them, as *il est trop tôt*, it is too soon.

Sixthly, that they must always be placed after the Verb, as *je me levo matin*, I get up early.

### Exercises upon tantôt, demain, hier, and aujourd'hui.

We have enough 1 of them 2 1 en, pron. conj. 2 assez, adv.  
 for this day. 3 pour, prep.

I learnt 1 this news 2 since 1 savoir, v. 3. 2 nouvelle, n.  
 yesterday. f. 3 depuis, prep.

I keep 1 this pear 2 for to- 1 garder, v. 1. 2 poire, n. f.  
 morrow. 3 pour, prep.

you put us off 1 from 2 to-	1 remettre, v. 4. 2 de demain morrow, to another to- en demain.
to-morrow I shall go 1 to 2	1 aller, v. i. 2 à, prep. 3 co-
the play 3 ; and to night 4	midie, n. f. 4 ce soir. 5 sou-
I sup 5 abroad 6.	per, v. i. 6 en ville.
I saw 1 my friend 2 yes-	1 voir, v. 3. 2 ami, n. m.
terday 3.	
I shall speak 1 to him to-	1 parler, v. i.
morrow.	
it has been 1 fine 3 weather 4	1 Il a fait. 2 aujourd'hui.
to day 2.	3 beau, adj. 4 temps, n. m.

*Exercises upon tôt, tard, and matin.*

It is later than I thought 1.	1 Croire, v. 5.
come 1 another 2 time 2	1 venir, v. 2. 2 une autre
sooner.	fois.
I get up 1 every 2 day 2 ear-	1 Je lever, v. i. 2 tous les jours.
lier than you.	
it is very 1 late! oh! had I	1 bien, adv.
did he not embark 1 very	1 s'embarquer, v. i.
early 2	
it 1 is in vain that 1 you got	1 C'est en vain que. 2 partir,
up early, you shall not set	v. 2.
out 2 sooner.	

*Adverbs of Quantity.*

<i>Aj</i> ez, enough.	<i>Encore</i> , once more.
<i>tr</i> op, too much, too.	<i>très</i> , most.
<i>peu</i> , little, few.	<i>quelque</i> , some, little.
<i>beaucoup</i> , much, a great deal.	<i>si</i> , so much.
<i>bi</i> n, very much.	<i>aussi</i> , as much.
<i>s</i> ort, much.	<i>tout</i> , quite, intirely.
<i>dutout</i> , at all.	<i>d'avantage</i> , over and above,
<i>plus</i> , more.	more.
<i>moins</i> , less.	<i>du moins</i> , at least.
<i>autant</i> , as much.	<i>au plus</i> , at most.
<i>tant</i> , so much.	<i>au moins</i> , at least.
<i>presque</i> , almost.	<i>tout-à-fait</i> , quite.

## Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH.

37

Adverbs of quantity are placed in speech before the adjective and adverb. As to the Verb, if it is single, they come after it; and if it is compounded, they are commonly placed between the auxiliary and participle, altho' they may sometimes be placed after it. This place must even always be given to *d'avantage*. All this will be made plain by the following examples.

<i>Elle est bien pauvre.</i>	<i>She is very poor.</i>
<i>je suis presque entièrement con-</i>	<i>I am almost entirely con-</i>
<i>vaincu de mon erreur.</i>	<i>vinced of my error.</i>
<i>j'en ai autant que vous.</i>	<i>I have as much as you.</i>
<i>j'ai trop mangé.</i>	<i>I have eat too much.</i>
<i>le drap bleu m'a plu d'avantage</i>	<i>the blue cloth has pleased me</i>
<i>que le vert.</i>	<i>more than the green.</i>

### Exercises upon these Adverbs.

*She is too rich 1 to 2 be-  
come 3 your wife 4.*

*we are more 1 than half 1  
persuaded 2.  
our pond 1 is almost empty 2.  
I don't know 1 much the  
governor 2 of the city 3.  
I write 1 more 2 pages 2 in 3  
a day 4, than 5 you do 5 in  
a week 6.*

*I have read 1 more books 2  
than you.*

*this house 1 is almost en-  
tirely 2 destroyed 3.  
he is more 1 than half 1  
dead 2.*

*I have quite finished 1 my  
task 2.*

*I have 1 ten 2 at most.  
we were twenty 1 at least.  
you have a great deal 1 of  
malice 2, and he has more 3.*

1 *Riche*, adj. 2 *pour*, prep.  
3 *devenir*, v. 2. 4 *femme*,  
n. f.

1 *plus d'à moitié*, 2 *persuader*,  
v. 1.

1 *étang*, n. m. 2 *vide*, adj.  
1 *connaître*, v. 5. 3 *gouver-  
neur*, n. m. 3 *ville*, n. f.

1 *écrire*, v. 4. 2 *plus de pages*,  
3 *dans*, prep. 4 *jour*, n. m.  
5 *que vous ne faites*, 6 *se-  
maine*, n. f.

1 *lire*, v. 4. 2 *livre*, n. m.

1 *maison*, n. f. 2 *entièrement*,  
adv. 3 *détruire*, v. 4.

1 *plus d'à demi*, 2 *mourir*,  
v. 2.

1 *finir*, v. 2. 2 *lâche*, n. f.

1 *j'en ai*, 2 *dis*, adj. (T)

1 *vingt*, adj.

1 *beaucoup*, 2 *malice*, n. f.  
3 *d'avantage*.

E X E R C I S E S upon the  
*Adverbs of Distribution.*

*Quelquefois*, sometimes.      *jamais*, never, ever.  
*d'autrefois*, at other times.      *d'ordinaire*, commonly.  
*souvent*, often.      *d'orenavant*, henceforth.  
*toujours*, always, ever.

are the adverbs of distribution. *Souvent* may be compared; *jamais* is sometimes joined to the preposition *à*, for; and *toujours* to the preposition *pour*, for.

The adverbs of distribution may, in the single tenses, be placed either before or after the Verb; and in the compounds they are commonly placed between the auxiliary and participle. All this will be made plain by the following Examples.

<i>Venez chez moi le plus souvent que vous pourrez.</i>	Come to my house as often as you can.
<i>soyez à jamais heureux.</i>	be for ever happy.
<i>quelquefois je me taïs.</i>	I sometimes hold my tongue.
<i>j'écris souvent.</i>	I write often.
<i>j'ai toujours aimé ma soeur.</i>	I have always loved my sister.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

He comes 1 the oftenelt 2 with 3 his friends 4.	1 <i>Venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>le plus souvent</i> . 3 <i>avec</i> , prep. 4 <i>ami</i> , n. m.
let the name 1 of the Lord 2 be for ever glorified 3.	1 <i>nom</i> , n. m. 2 <i>Seigneur</i> , n. m. 3 <i>glorifier</i> , v. 3. 1 <i>veiller</i>
don't engage youself 1 for ever 2.	1 <i>s'engager</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>toujours</i> .
sometimes I breakfast 1 at 2 nine o'clock 2.	1 <i>déjeuner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à neuf heures</i> .
I often dine 1 at 2 two o'clock 2.	1 <i>dîner</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>à deux heures</i> .
I have always respected 1 him.	1 <i>respecter</i> , v. 1.
he has never loved 1 his son 2.	1 <i>aimer</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>fils</i> , n. m.

*Adverbs of Motive.*

These adverbs are *pourquoi*, why; and *parce que*, on account, for the sake, because. The last always takes after it the preposition *de*, or the conjunction *que*, as *je marche parce que de vous*, I walk

I walk for your sake. *Je parle, accuse qu'il le faut*, I speak, because it is necessary to do it.

*Exercises upon these Adverbs.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Why do you endeavour 1 to 2  | 1. flâcher, v. i. 2. de, prop.  |
| deceive 3 me 1   | 3. tromper, v. i.   |
| I shall do 1 it on your ac-<br>count 2 ?   | 1 faire, v. 5. 2. accuse de vous.   |
| grant 1 him this favour 2 for<br>my sake 3.  | 1 accorder, v. i. 2. faveur, n. f.  |
| I wait upon 1 the judges 2,<br>because your 3 interests<br>are concerned 3 in 4 this<br>cause 5. | 3. accuse de moi.<br>1. solliciter, v. i. 2. juge, n. m.<br>3 il s'agit de vos intérêts.<br>4 dans, prep. 5. cause, n. f. |

To rank, *pour le présent*, for the present, *tour à tour*, by turn, *à l'exception*, if we except, *à la bonne heure que*, let us suppose that, and many other such expressions amongst the Adverbs, Prepositions, or Conjunctions, is, methinks, to confound the ideas we ought to have of the parts of speech. *Pour*, in the first example, is a Preposition; *le* an article; and *présent* a noun. It is true that these three words joined together denote a circumstance, and consequently form an adverbial expression; but as children are not commonly able to judge when words joined together, denote or don't denote a circumstance, we ought, in books destined for their use, to leave every part of speech in its respective class.

## Of PREPOSITIONS.

French Prepositions may be divided into seven classes, *viz.* the Prepositions of *place*, *order*, *union*, *separation*, *opposition*, *end*, and *specification*. Those of the six first classes, being used in the same manner in French as in English, need not be exemplified.

### Prepositions of Place.

These Prepositions are,  
*Chez*, in, at, to, amongst,  
*dans*, in.  
*sous*, under.  
*sur*, upon, over.

*devant*, before.  
*derrière*, behind.  
*parmi*, amongst.  
*vers*, towards.

100 EXERCISES upon the

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

It is just 1, but 2 it is not always 3 true 4, that 5 every one is 5 master 6 in 7 his own house 7.

the consuls 1 had a great 2 power 3 amongst the Romans 4.

politeness 1 reigns 2 more 3 in the capital 4 than in the provinces 5.

we imagine 1 that our antipodes 2 are under us, and they perhaps 3 think 4 that we are under them 5.

the bottle 1 is upon the table 2.

docility 1 is a virtue 2, but 3 the power 4 one 5 gives 5 over one's self 6 is weakness 7.

shall I always have before me a hateful 2 object 1?

the ambitious 1 man 1 never 3 looks 2 behind himself 4.

there are 1 amongst men 2 many 3 fools 4. it 1 was towards the river 2 that 3 I saw 4 your brother 5.

1 *Juste*, adj. 2 *mais*, conj. 3 *toujours*, adv. 4 *vrai*, adj. 5 *que chacun soit*.

6 *maitre*, n. m. 7 *chez soi*.  
1 *consul*, n. m. 2 *grand*, adj. 3 *pouvoir*, n. m. 4 *Romain*, n. m.

1 *politesse*, n. f. 2 *regner*, v. t. 3 *plus*, adv. 4 *capitale*, n. f. 5 *province*, n. f.

1 *s'imaginer*, v. t. 2 *antipode*, n. m. 3 *peut-être*, adv. 4 *croire*, v. 5. 5 *eux*, pron. nom.

1 *bouteille*, n. f. 2 *table*, n. f.

1 *docilité*, n. f. 2 *vertu*, n. f. 3 *mais*, conj. 4 *ascendant*, n. m. 5 *qu'on donne*. 6 *soi*, pron. nom. 7 *faiblesse*, n. f.

1 *objet*, n. m. 2 *baïssable*, adj.

1 *ambitieux*, n. m. 2 *regarder*, v. t. 3 *jamais*, adv. 4 *lui*, pron. nom.

1 *il y a*. 2 *bonne*, n. m. 3 *plusieurs*, n. m. plur. 4 *sot*, n. m.  
1 *c'est*. 2 *riviere*, n. f. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *voir*, v. 3. 5 *frere*, n. m.

*Prepositions of Order.*

These Prepositions are

*Avant*, before.

*entre*, between.

*après*, after.

*depuis*, since, from.

*Exercises upon these Prepositions.*

We see 1 nothing 2 now a days 3, but 4 what 4 o-

1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *rien*, n. m. 3 *aujourd'hui*, adv. 4 *que*.  
thers

- thers 5 have seen 5 before us. 5 d'autres n'ont vu.
- Noah 1 lived 2 before and after the flood 3. 1 Noé, n. m. 2 vivre, v. 4-3 déluge, n. m.
- we are between hope 1 and fear 2. 1 espérance, n. f. 2 crainte, n. f.
- some 1 books 2 are 3 from the beginning to the end, nothing but 3 a heap 4 of errors 5. 1 quelque, adj. 2 livre, n. m. 3 ne sont depuis un bout jusqu'à l'autre que. 4 tissu, n. m. 5 erreur, n. f.

### Prepositions of Union.

- These Prepositions are
- Avec*, with. *outre*, besides.
- selon*, according to. *durant*, during.
- suivant*, according to. *pendant*, during.
- par*, upon, by.

### Exercises upon these Prepositions.

The great 1 travel 2 with numerous 3 attendants 3. 2 good 1 Christian 2 ought 3 to live 4 according to the maxima 5 of the gospel 6.

we must 1 distrust 2 those who swear 3 easily 4 upon 5 what 6 is most sacred 6.

we 1 may displease 1 by 2 our good qualities 3, and please 4 by our bad 5 ones. how much 1 have you to spend 2 every 3 day 3? to 1 succeed 2 at court 3, besides 4 merit, one must have 4 a powerful 4 protection 5. the enemies 1 have 2 remained 2 in 3 their camp 4,

- 1 Grand, n. m. 2 voyager, v. 1. 3 un nombreux cortège 3. 1 bon, adj. 2 Chrétien, n. m. 3 devoir, v. 3. 4 vivre, v. 4. 5 maxime, n. f. 6 évangile, n. m.
- 1 devoir, v. 3. 2 se méfier, v. 1. 3 jurer, v. 1. 4 aisement, adv. 5 par. 6 ce qu'il y a de plus sacré.
- 1 nous pouvons déplaire. 2 par: 3 qualité, n. f. plaisir, v. 5. 5 mauvais, adj.
- 1 combien, adv. 2 dépenser, v. 1. 3 par jour.
- 1 pour, prep. 2. reniffr, v. 2. 3 à la cour. 4 il faut, outre le mérite. 4 puissant, adj. 5 protection, n. f.
- 1 ennemi, n. m. 2 sont demeurés. 3 dans, prep. 4 camp, during

182 EXERCISES upon the

during 5 the campaign 6.  
the ant 1 makes 2 during 3  
the summer 4, the provi-  
sions 5 she wants 6 during  
the winter 7.

1 n. m. 5 durant. 2 6 com-  
pagne, n. f.  
1 fourmi, n. f. 2 faire, v. 5.  
3 pendant. 4 été, n. m.  
5 provision, n. f. 6 avoir  
besoin. 7 hiver, n. m.

Prepositions of Separation.

*Sans*, without.  
*excepté*, except, save.  
are the prepositions of separation.

bors, except. 8 and quiconque  
bormis, except. 9 moins

Exercises upon these Prepositions.

People 1 of quality 2 seldom 3,  
go out 3 without 4 a ser-  
vant 4.  
a woman 1 may 2 please 3  
without beauty 4 and  
without sense 5.  
all 1 is conjectural 2, ex-  
cept 3 the geometrical 5  
demonstrations 4.  
the law 1 of Mahomet per-  
mits 2 every 3 thing 3,  
except 4 wine 5.  
except 1 you, all 2 is indif-  
ferent 3 to me.

1 gens, plur. n. m. 2 distincti-  
on, n. f. 3 ne sortent gueres.  
4 sans domestique.  
1 femme, n. f. 2 pouvoir, v. 3.  
3 plaisir, v. 5. 4 beaute, n. f.  
5 raison, n. f.  
1 tout, n. m. 2 conjectural, adj.  
3 excepté. 4 démonstration,  
n. f. 5 géométrique, adj.  
1 loi, n. f. 2 permettre, v. 4.  
3 tout, n. m. 4 bors. 5 vin,  
n. m.  
1 bormis. 2 tout. 3 indifferent,  
adj.

Prepositions of Opposition.

*Contre*, against.  
*malgré*, in spite of.  
are the prepositions of opposition.

nonobstant, notwithstanding.

Exercises upon these Prepositions.

The honest 1 man 2 don't  
speak 3 against the truth 4.  
in spite of my 1 care 1, I have  
lost 2 my law-suit 3.  
the wicked 1 does not re-  
spect 2 the churches 3; he

1 honnête, adj. 2 homme, n. m.  
3 parler, v. 1. 4 vérité, n. f.  
1 mes soins. 2 perdre, v. 4.  
3 procès, n. m.  
1 méchant, n. m. 2 respecter,  
v. 1. 3 église, n. f. 4 com-  
mets

commits 4 wickedness 5  
therein 6, notwithstanding  
the sacredness 7 of those  
places 8.

mettre, v. 4. 5 crime, n. m.  
6, pron. conj. 7 sainteté,  
n. f. 8 lieu, plur. lieux,  
n. m.

### Prepositions of End.

Envers, towards.  
touchant, about  
are the propositions of end.

pour, for.  
à l'ellier's land  
à la lit  
à l'usage  
à l'habitat  
à l'usage  
à l'usage  
à l'usage

### Exercises upon these prepositions.

Good 1 education 2 teaches 3  
how 4 to behave 4 towards  
every body 5.

1 bon, ne, adj. 2 éducation, n.f.  
3 enseigner, v. 1. 4 à se faire  
comporter. 5 tout le monde

what 1 have you wrote 2  
about religion 3?

1 que, pron. nom. 2 désirer,  
v. 1. 3 religion, n. f.

I am come 1 to 2 see you 2.

1 venir, v. 2. 2 pour vous  
voir.

he passes 1 for the eldest 2.

1 passer, v. 1. 2 aîné, n. m.

### Prepositions of Specification.

These prepositions are *à*, *de*, and *en*. To shew all their different uses is not a very easy matter; they are sometimes englisched by a preposition and sometimes without. I shall treat here of each of them separately, taking care to exemplify them, before I give exercises upon them.

### The preposition *à*, englisched without a preposition. Part I.

Un lit à colonnes.

a four posted bed.

un pays à pâturages.

a pasture country.

un moulin à poudre.

a powder mill.

une arme à feu.

a fire arm.

une figure à genou.

a kneeling figure.

une fille à marier.

a marriageable girl.

aller à grands pas.

to walk very fast.

un bonnet à la Turque.

a Turkish bonnet.

un pot à l'eau.

a water-pot.

*Exercises.*

- England 1 is a corn 3 country 2.  
I have bought 1 this morning 2 some tea 4 spoons 3.  
hand 2 mills 1 are very useful 3.  
it is 1 a dispute 2 never 3 to be ended 3.  
I have lent 1 him two 2 Chinese 4 designs 3.  
do you love 1 onion 3  
onion 2 & 1  
where 1 have you put 2 the  
ink 4 bottle 3?  
à englishted by to.
- 1 Angleterre, n. f. 2 pays, n. m. 3 blé, n. m.  
1 acheter, v. 1. 2 matin, n. m. 3 cuillère, n. f. 4 tasse, n. m.  
1 moulin, n. m. 2 bras, n. m. 3 utile, adj.  
1 c'est, 2 dispute, n. f. 3 à ne jamais finir.  
1 prêter, v. 1. 2 deux, adj. 3 dessein, n. m. 4 Chinois, adj.  
1 aimer, v. 1. 2 sauté, n. f. 3 oignon, n. m.  
1 où, adv. 2 mettre, v. 4. 3 bouteille, n. f. 4 encre, n. f.

*Chambres à louer.  
bois à couper.  
bon à manger.  
vendre à l'enchere.*

*Rooms to let.  
wood to cut down.  
good to eat.  
to sell to the best bidder.*

*Exercises.*

- There is 1 a house 2 to be sold 3 in 4 our street 5.  
he is disposed 1 to serve 2 you.  
I shall go 1 soon 2 to my country-house 3.  
à englishted by for.
- 4 il y a. 2 maison, n. f. 3 à vendre. 4 dans, prep. 5 rue, n. f.  
1 disposer, v. 1. 2 servir, v. 2.  
1 aller, v. 1. 2 bientôt, adv. 3 maison de campagne.

*Un carrosse à six places.  
crier à l'aide.*

*A coach for six people.  
to cry for help.*

*Exercises.*

- There is 1 in 2 this inn 3 a stable 4 for thirty 5 horses 6.  
1 il y a. 2 dans, prep. 3 auberge, n. f. 4 écurie, n. f. 5 trente, adj. und. cheval, plur. aux, n. m.

we

we keep 1 a table 2 for twenty 3 people 4.

1 tenir, v. 2. 2 table, n. f.  
3 vingt, adj. und. 4 couvert, n. m.

à englified by after.

*Pardonner à l' Italienne.*

to forgive after the Italian manner.

*vivre à l' Angloise.*

to live after the English way.

*Exercises.*

I have ordered 1 my taylor 2 to 3 make 4 me a cap 5 after 6 the Turkish manner 6.

1 ordonner, v. 1. 2 à mon tailleur. 3 de, prep. 4 faire, v. 5. 5 bonnet, n. m. 6 à la Turque.

they live 1 after 2 the French way 2.

1 vivre, v. 4. 2 à la François.

à englified by on.

*Route à droite.*

Road on the right.

*une maison à gauche.*

a house on the left.

*Exercises.*

To 1 go 2 to Putney, you 3 must take 4 the road 4 on the left 5.

1 pour, prep. 2 aller, v. 1. 3 il faut prendre. 4 chemin, n. m. 5 à gauche.

go 1 strait along 1 and turn 2 on the right 3.

1 allez tout droit. 2 tourner, v. 1. 3 à droite.

à englified by at.

*Il est à Oxford.*

he is at Oxford.

*demeurez vous à Cambrige?*

do you live at Cambridge?

*Exercises.*

The scene 1 is at Paris.

1 Scene, n. f.

I have staid 1 six months 2 at Lyons 3.

1 demeurer, v. 1. 2 six moi. 3 Lions, n. m.

where 1 did he end 2 his 3 days 3 ? at Rome.

1 où, adv. 2 finir, v. 2. 3 ses jours.

à englified

106 EXERCISES upon the

à englified by with.

*Une table à tiroirs.*

*une canne à lorgnette.*

A table with drawers;  
a cane with a spying-glass.

*Exercises.*

I have a cap 1 with 2 a plume 3 of feathers on it 2.

why 1 do you despise 2 my house 3 ; it is 4 a house with 5 a yard, inner yard and a garden 5.

à englified by in.

*Un procureur à la cour du banc du roi.* an attorney in the court of king's bench.

*un chapeau à la mode.*

a hat in the mode.

*Exercises.*

My sister 1 is married 2 to 3 Mr. Durel, a 4 councellor in the court of king's bench 4.

all 1 my cloaths 2 are in the mode 3.

1 Soeur, n. f. 2 marier, v. i.  
3 à, prep. 4 avocat à la cour du banc du roi.

1 tout, plur. tous, adj. 2 habit,  
n. m. 3 mode, n. f.

à englified by the preposition by.

*Deux à deux.*

Two by two.

*pas à pas.*

step by step.

*Exercises.*

We went 1 to 2 meet him 2, walking 3 two by two.

I shall follow 1 you step by step.

1 aller, v. i. 2 au devant de lui. 3 marcher, v. i.

1 suivre, v. 4.

The preposition de englified without a preposition.

*Quelque chose de bon.  
rien de mauvais.*

Something good.  
nothing bad.

*Exercises.*

*Exercises.*

He has always 1 something 2 1 *Toujours*, adv. 2 *quelque*  
wonderful 3 to 4 tell us 4. *chose*, pron. nom. 3 *miracu-*  
*veilleux*, adj. 4 *à nous*  
*dire*.

is there 1 any 2 one 2 wife 3 1 *il a-t-il.* 2 *quelqu'un*, pron.  
amongst 4 them? 3 *sage*, adj. 4 *parmi*,  
prep.

have you nothing 1 good 2 1 *rien*, pron. nom. 2 *bon*,  
to tell us? adj.

this room 1 is five 2 foot 2 1 *chambre*, n. f. 2 *de cinq*  
longer 3 than the other 4. 3 *pieds*. 3 *long, ue*, adj. 4 *autre*,  
adj.

he is more 1 than half 1 1 *plus d'à demi*. 2 *mourir*, v. 2.  
dead 2.

*De englified by the preposition by.*

*Voyager de nuit.*  
*plus grand d'un pouce.*

To travel by night.  
taller by an-inch.

*Exercises.*

I am shorter 2 than he by 1 1 *Moins grande*. 2 *de deux*  
two inches 1. *pouces*.

I love 1 to 2 travel by night. 1 *aimer*, v. 1. 2 *à*, prep.

*De englified by with.*

*Donner de mauvaise grace.*  
*courir de toutes ses forces.*

To give with a bad grace.  
to run with all one's might.

*Exercises.*

Do 1 these things 2 with a 1 *Faire*, v. 5. 2 *chose*, n. f.  
good 3 grace 4. 3 *bon, ne*, adj. 4 *grace*, n. f.

Why 1 do you point at 2 me 1 *pourquoi*, adv. 2 *montrer*,  
with 3 your hand 3? 3 *de la main*.

he has had the impudence 1 1 *impudence*, n. f. 2 *de*, prep.  
to 2 strike 3 me with 4 3 *frapper*, v. 1. 4 *de sa*  
his cane 4. *canne*, n. f.

I beckoned 1 him with 2 my 1 *faire signe*, v. 5. 2 *de l'*  
head 2. *tête*.

*De englified by for.*

*Mourir de chagrin.*  
*crier de peur.*

To die for grief.  
to cry for fear.

*Exercises.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| If 1 you fall 2 sick 3, I shall 1 <i>Si</i> , conj. 2 <i>tomber</i> , v. 1.<br>die 4 for grief. 3 <i>malade</i> , adj. 4 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2. | I thought 1 that 2 he was 1 <i>croire</i> , - v. 5. 2 <i>que</i> , conj.<br>willing 3 to strike 4 me; 3 <i>vouloir</i> , v. 3. 4 <i>frapper</i> ,<br>and I cried for fear. v. 1. |
|--|--|

*De englified by out of and from.*

*Briser de d'pit.*  
*d'un bout à l'autre.*  
*du bien au mal.*

To break out of spite.  
from one end to the other.  
from good to evil.

*Exercises.*

- |  |
|--|
| He has broke all 1 my china 2 1 <i>Tout</i> , adj. 2 <i>porcelaine</i> , n. f.<br>out of spite. 1 <i>tire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>livre</i> , n. m.   |
| I have read 1 your book 2 1 <i>ambassadeur</i> , n. m. 2 <i>rever-</i><br>from one end to the other. <i>nir</i> , v. 2.  |
| our ambassador 1 is come 1 <i>quand</i> , adv. 2 <i>sœur</i> , n. f.<br>back 2 from Rome. 3 <i>revenir</i> , v. 2. 4 <i>maison</i><br>when 1 will your sister 2 <i>de campagne</i> . |
| return 3 from her country-<br>house 4?   |

*De englified by of.*

*Envie de plaisir.*  
*besoin de manger.*

Desire of pleasing.  
want of eating.

*Exercises.*

- |   |
|---|
| The king 1 has formed 2 the 1 <i>Roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>former</i> , v. 1.<br>design 3 of making 4 war 5 3 <i>dessein</i> , n. m. 4 <i>faire</i> , v. 5.<br>against 6 the French 6. 5 <i>guerre</i> , n. f. 6 <i>aux</i><br><i>François</i> . |
| I have a great 1 desire 2 of 1 <i>grand</i> , adj. 2 <i>désir</i> , n. m.<br>travelling 3. 3 <i>voyager</i> , v. 1.   |
| he has the art 1 of pleasing 2 1 <i>art</i> , n. m. 2 <i>plaire à</i> , v. 5.<br>every 3 body 3. 3 <i>tout le monde</i> .   |

*The*

*The Preposition en englified without a Preposition.*

Une femme en couche.

A lying-in woman.

un bonnet en broderie.

an embroidered cap.

une cheminée en marbre.

a marble chimney.

un maître en fait d'armes.

a fencing master.

une carpe en étuvée.

a stewed carp.

un ornement en or.

a gold ornament.

*Exercises.*

We have bought 1 a 2  
damask suit of hangings 2.  
there are 1 twelve 2 marble  
chimneys in 3 my new 4  
house 4.

1 Acheter, v. t. 2 une tenture  
en damas.  
1 il y a. 2 douze, adj. und.  
3 dans, prep. 4 nouvelle  
maison.

is the fencing-master come 1?  
do you love 1 stewed carps?

1 venir, v. 2.  
1 aimer, v. t.

*En englified by the Preposition in.*

Un mot en usage.  
une vigne en fleur.  
une troupe en quatre colonnes.  
un ouvrage en six volumes.  
un pied en longueur.  
un magistrat en robe.

A word in use.  
a vine in blossom.  
a troop in four columns.  
a work in six volumes.  
a foot in length.  
a magistrate in his robes.

*Exercises.*

You have revived 1 words 2  
that 3 were no 4 more 4  
in use 5.  
I saw 1 yesterday 2 many 3  
apple-trees 4 in blossom.  
he has composed 1 a comedy 2  
in five 3 acts 4.

1 Faire revivre, v. 5. 4.  
mot, n. m. 3 qui, pron.  
4 plus, adv. 5 usage, n. m.  
1 voir, v. 3. 2 bier, adv.  
3 plusieurs, adj. plur. 4 pom-  
mier, n. m.  
1 composer, v. 1. 2 comédie,  
n. f. 3 cinq, adj. und.  
4 acte, n. m.  
1 table, n. f. 2 deux, adj. und.  
3 pied, n. m. 4 demi, adj.  
5 largeur, n. f.  
1 docteur, n. m. 2 théologie,  
n. f.

En

## En englified by as and like.

*Se conduire en étourdi.**penser en Anglois.**se comporter en honnête homme.*

To behave as a rash man.

to think as an English-man.

to behave like an honest man.

## Exercises.

Go 1 to war 2 and behave  
like a man 3 of courage 4.what 1 opinion 2 can 3 one  
have of a man who 4 be-  
haves every where 5 like a  
fool 6 ?1 *Aller*, v. i. 2 *guerre*, n. f.  
3 *homme*, n. m. 4 *courage*,  
n. m.1 *quel*, pron. adj. 2 *opinion*,  
n. f. 3 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 4 *qui*,  
pron. 5 *partout*, adv. 6 *in-*  
*sens*, n. m.

## En englified by into.

Traduire en François.

To translate into French.

## Exercises.

The Bible 1 has been trans-  
lated 2 into Welch 3.the Septuagint 1 have trans-  
lated the Holy 2 Bible 3  
into Greek 4.1 *Bible*, n. f. 2 *traduire*, v. 4.  
3 *Gallois*, n. m.1 *les Septante*. 2 *saint*, adj.  
3 *Grec*, n. m.

## En before the French participle active.

*Tomber en courant.**se sauver en fuyant.**rêver en dormant.*

To fall as one runs.

to make one's escape by run-  
ning away.  
to dream in one's sleep.

## Exercises.

I dream every 1 night 2 in 2  
my sleep 2, but 3 you  
dream, when 4 you are  
awake 4.I love 1 to read 2, as 3 I  
dine 3.you may 1 tell 2 me your  
reason 3, as 4 you go 4.1 *Toutes les nuits*. 2 *en dor-*  
*mant*. 3 *mais*, conj. 4 *en*  
*veillant*.1 *aimer*, v. i. 2 *à lire*. 3 *en*  
*dinant*. 4 *en marchant*.

- in 1 speaking thus 1, she 1 *en parlant ainsi.* 2 *pleurer,*  
wept 2 bitterly 3. v. 1. 3 *amerement, adv.*
- will you tell me her history 1, 1 *histoire, n. f.* 2 *en nous en*  
when 2 we go away 2? *allant.*
- he caught cold 1, when 2 he 1 *s'enrhumer, v. i.* 2 *en se*  
bathed himself 2. *baignant.*
- I have lost 1 my handker- 1 *perdre, v. 4.* 2 *mouchoir,*  
chief 2, as 3 I was coming 3, n. m. 3 *en venant.*
- I have improved 1 by 2 my 1 *faire des progrès, v. 5.* 2 *en*  
studies 2. *étudiant.*
- he was very 1 much 1 sur- 1 *bien, adv.* 2 *surprendre, v. 6.*  
prised 2 to 3 see me 3 *en me revoyant.*

## OF CONJUNCTIONS.

We have about fifty three Conjunctions, which may be divided into conjunctions copulative, augmentative, alternate, hypothetical, adversative, extensive, periodical, motival, conclusive, explicative, transitive, and conductive.

### Conjunctions Copulative.

These Conjunctions are *et*, and; and *ni*, nor, neither. The last is always repeated in the sentence, and the first is never multiplied but when it is placed at the head of a sentence, as

*David étoit roi & prophete.*

David was a king and a prophet.

*et le pere, & la mere, & le fils,  
& la fille, & tous les parents  
sont riches.*

the father, the mother, the son, the daughter, and all the relations are rich.

*vous n'avez ni amis, ni en-  
nemis.*

you have neither friends, nor foes.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

His father 1 and mother 2 have forsook 3 him.  
correct 1 thy son 2, and he shall give 3 thee rest 4.

1 *Pere, n. m.* 2 *mere, n. f.*  
3 *abandonner, v. t.*  
1 *corriger, v. i.* 2 *fils, n. m.*  
3 *donner, v. t.* 4 *repos, n. m.*  
one  
down at tabloid

one 1 generation 2 passeth away 3, and another 4 generation cometh 5, but 6 the earth 7 abideth 8 for ever 9.

his friends 1 and foes 2 laugh at 3 him.

his 1 brothers 1, sisters 2, cousins 3, and all 4 his relations 5, are indifferent 6 to him.

neither beauty 1 nor money 2 moves 3 you.

he has neither vice 1 nor virtue 2.

1 un, adj. 2 génération, n. f.  
3 passer, v. i. 4 autre, adj.  
5 venir, v. 2. 6 mais, conj.  
7 terre, n. f. 8 demeurer,  
v. i. 9 pour toujours.

1 & ses amis. 2 ennemi, n. m.  
3 se moquer de, v. i.

1 & ses frères. 2 frère, n. f.  
3 cousin, n. m. 4 tout, plur. tous,  
adj. 5 parent, plur. ens, n. m.  
6 indifferent, plur. ens, adj.

1 beauté, n. f. 2 argent, n. m.  
3 toucher, v. i.

1 vice, n. m. 2 vertu, n. f.

### Conjunctions Augmentative.

These Conjunctions are *de plus*, besides; and *d'ailleurs*, besides, otherwise; both of which may sometimes be placed after the Verb, but commonly appear at the head of the words they connect with those that precede, as

*Il l'a beaucoup loué ; de plus il l'a récompensé.*

*tous vos amis vous en prient ; d'ailleurs votre honneur y est intéressé.*

*C'est un avare, qui a d'ailleurs quelques bonnes qualités.*

He has praised him much ; besides he has rewarded him.

all your friends beg it of you ; besides your honour is concerned therein.

he is a covetous man, but has otherwise some good qualities.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

You have beauty 1, wit 2, learning 3 ; besides you are of a good 4 family 5 ; with 6 all 7 these advantages 8 you 9 cannot well miss making 9 your fortune 10.

he fell in a passion 1, against 2 with him without 3 reason 4 ; besides he struck 5 him.

1 Beauté, n. f. 2 esprit, n. m.  
3 savoir, n. m. 4 bon, ne,  
adj. 5 famille, n. f.

6 avec, prep. 7 tout, plur.  
tous, adj. 8 avantage, n. m.

9 vous ne pouvez manquer  
de faire. 10 fortune, n. f.

1 l'emporter, v. i. 2 contre,  
prep. 3 sans, prep. 4 raison,  
n. f. 5 frapper, v. i.

he

he is a blunt 2 man 1, but 3 otherwise has a 4 great deal 4 of probity 5. 1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *brusque*, adj. 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *beaucoup*, adv. 5 *probité*, n. f.

### Conjunctions Alternate.

These Conjunctions are *ou*, or; *sinon*, else, or otherwise; and *tantôt*, sometimes. As they answer almost in every respect to their English, it seems to me needless to exemplify them.

#### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

Grant 1 me this favour 2, or refuse 3 it me quickly 4.	1 <i>Accorder</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>faveur</i> , n. f. 3 <i>refuser</i> , v. 1. 4 <i>promptement</i> , adv.
come 1 to day 2, or don't come at all 3.	1 <i>venir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>aujourd'hui</i> , adv. 3 <i>dutout</i> , adv.
tell 1 me yes 2, or no 3.	1 <i>dire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>oui</i> , adv. 3 <i>non</i> , adv.
obey 1, otherwise you shall be punished 2.	1 <i>obéir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>punir</i> , v. 2.
sometimes he loads 1 me with 2 carefles 3, and sometimes he won't speak 4 to me.	1 <i>accabler</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>de</i> , prep. 3 <i>careffe</i> , n. f. 4 <i>parler</i> , v. 1.

### Hypothetical Conjunctions.

These conjunctions are

*Si*, if, whether.

*pourvu*, provided.

*quand*, when.

*moins*, unless.

*soit*, whether.

*sauf*, with this proviso.

They must always be placed at the head of what they join; the two first govern the indicative; the three following the conjunctive, with the conjunction *que*; and the last the infinitive, with the preposition *à*, as

<i>Je verrai la princesse, si elle vient ici.</i>	I shall see the princess, if she comes here.
<i>je le ferois, quand même vous vous y opposeriez.</i>	I would do it, if even you was to oppose it.
<i>j'irai à l'ennemi, pourvu que vous me montriez l'exemple.</i>	I shall go to the enemy, provided you shew me the example.

*Il promit tout, sauf à faire ses exceptions.*

he promised all, with this proviso that he might make his exceptions.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

*Our soldiers, 1 will be courageous, 2 if 3 they be well commanded 4.*

*we don't know 1 whether 2 we are just 3 before 4 God 5.*

*I would serve 1 him, if 2 even 3 he would 4 not, whether 1 it be 2 reason 2, or 3 whim 4, she loves 5 him.*

*I shall always 1 be a 2 philosopher 2, whether 3 fortune 4 smiles 5 on 6 me 6 or 7 not 7, they will act 1, provided 2 they are paid 3.*

*you will never 1 obtain 2 what 3 you desire 4 of him 5, unless 6 you speak 7 to him before 8 witnesses 9.*

*I promise 1 to you to come 2 to 3 your house 3, unless 4 an unforeseen accident happens 4.*

*I grant 1 all 2 for 3 the present, with 4 this proviso 4, that I shall make 4 my exceptions 6 afterwards 5.*

1 promettre, v. 4. 2 se rendre, v. 6. 3 chez vous. 4 à moins que qu'un accident imprévu n'arrive.

1 accorder, v. 1. 2 tout, n. m. 3 pour le présent. 4 sans faire. 5 ensuite. 6 exception, n. f.

*Conjunctions Adversative.*

*These conjunctions are*

*Quoique, altho'.*

*bienque, altho'.*

*mais, but.*

*cependant, nevertheless.*

*pourtant, however, &c.*

*néanmoins, however, &c.*

*toutefois, however, &c.*

The

The two first govern the conjunctive; the third must be placed at the head of the phrase it joins to the foregoing one; and the others may come either at the head of the phrase they join, or after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle passive, as

<i>Il n'est point malheureux, bien qu'il soit pauvre.</i>	He is not unhappy, tho' he is poor.
<i>cet ouvrage est long, mais il est nécessaire.</i>	this work is long, but it is necessary.
<i>Lucinde a de l'esprit ; cependant elle me déplaît.</i>	Lucinda is witty; nevertheless she displeases me.
<i>on vous blame ; vous avez pourtant raison.</i>	you are blamed; nevertheless you are in the right.
<i>il a toutefois réussi.</i>	he has however succeeded.

#### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

He is very poor 1, altho' 2 his relations 3 are very rich 4. you are not happy 1, tho' 2 you are rich.

this work 1 will perhaps 2 be a little 3 dry 4, but it will be useful 5.

he is rich, nevertheless 1 he borrows 2 from 3 every 4 body 5.

altho' he speaks 1 well 2, he however 3 persuades 4 no body 5. there are 1 bad 2 books 3 which 4 however 6 amuse 5 the reader 7.

Damon has all 1 his life-time 1 been the sport 2 of passions 3; however 4 he 5 knew how 5 to overcome 6 that 7 of gaming 8.

1 *pauvre*, adj. 2 *quique*.  
3 *parent*, plur. 4 *ons*, n. m.  
4 *riche*, adj.  
1 *heureux*, adj. 2 *bienque*.

1 *ouvrage*, n. m. 2 *peut-être*,  
adv. 3 *un peu*. 4 *soe*, adj.  
4 *utile*, adj.  
1 *cependant*. 2 *emprunter*, v. t.  
3 *de*, prep. 4 *tout le monde*.

1 *parler*, v. 1. 2 *bien*, adv.  
3 *pourtant*. 4 *persuader*, v. t.  
5 *personne*, pron. nom.  
1 *il y a*. 2 *mauvais*, adj.  
3 *livre*, n. m. 4 *qui*, pron.  
5 *amuser*, v. t. 6 *néanmoins*.  
7 *lecteur*, n. m.

1 *toute sa vie*. 2 *jouet*, n. m.  
3 *passion*, n. f. 4 *toutefois*.  
5 *il fut*. 6 *vaincre*, v. 6.  
7 *celle*, pron. 8 *jeu*, n. m.

Con-

EXERCISES upon the  
*Conjunctions Extensive.*

These conjunctions are

*Jusque*, to, even to.

*encore*, and yet.

*aussi*, also.

*même*, even.

tant, both.

*nonplus*, neither, no more.

*enfin*, in a word.

As these and the remaining Conjunctions, except *que*, answer almost in every respect to their English, I shall not lose my time in exemplifying them.

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

He has drank 1 the cup 2 to 3 the very dregs 3.

he 1 suffered himself to be intrated for a long while 1; and 2 yet 2 he 3 did it with 3 a 4 bad grace 4.

the enemies 1 have retired 2 in 3 disorder 4; they have also 5 abandoned 6 their artillery 7.

you ask for 1 it; I ask for it also 2.

he passes 1 for 2 a selfish 2, even 3 for 4 a roguish man 4.

she is 1 a lady 2 that 3 pleases 4 every body 5, both 6 women and men 6.

you have not found 1 the master 2, nor 3 the servant 4 neither 5.

you have not understood 1 my meaning 2 no more 3 than 4 he 4.

Lucinda 1 is lively 2, witty 3, generous 4, in 5 a word 5 she possesses 6 all 7 sorts of good qualities 7.

1 Boire, v. 5. 2 calice, n. m.  
3 jusqu'à la lie.

1 il a été lontemps à se faire pri-  
er. 2 encore. 3 ne l'a-t-il  
fait que de 4 mauvaise  
grace.

1 ennemi, n. m. 2 retirer, v. i.  
3 en, prep. 4 désordre, n. m.  
5 aussi. 6 abandonner, v. i.  
7 artillerie, n. f.

1 demander, v. i. 3 aussi.

1 passer, v. i. 2 pour intérêt,  
3 même. 4 pour fripon.

1 c'est. 2 dame, n. f. 3 qui,  
pron. 4 plaire à, v. 5.  
5 tout le monde. 6 tant aux  
femmes qu'aux hommes.

1 trouver, v. i. 2 maître, n.m.  
3 ni, conj. 4 domestique,  
n. m. 5 nonplus.

1 comprendre, v. 6. 2 penser,  
n. f. 3 nonplus. 4 que lui.

1 Lucinde, n. f. 2 enjoué, adj.  
3 spirituel, le, adj. 4 géni-  
reux, enue, adj. 5 enfin.  
6 posséder, v. i. 7 toutes  
sortes de bonnes qualités.

Periodical

## *Periodical Conjunctions.*

These Conjunctions are  
*Lorsque*, when.  
*quand*, when.

*désque*, as soon as, when.  
*tandis que*, whilst.

### *Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

You will obtain 1 favours 2,  
when 3 the prime-min-  
ister 4 will ask 5 them for 6  
you.

don't fail to come,  
when I shall send for  
you.

you shall learn 1 two 2 fa-  
bles 3, as soon as 4 you 5  
have done writing 5.  
who 1 can 2 refuse 3, when 4  
a king 5 requests 6?

who r can z refuse 3, when 4  
a king 5 requests 6 ?

one must 1 strike 2 the iron 3  
whilst 4 it is hot 5.

1. *Obtenir*, v. 2. 2 *grâce*, n. f.  
 3 *lorsque*. 4 *le premier-ministre*. 5 *demandeur*, v. 1.  
 6 *pour*, prep.  
 1 *manquer*, v. 1. 2 *de*, prep.  
 3 *venir*, v. 2. 4 *quand*. 5 *je vous enverrai chercher*.  
 1 *apprendre*, v. 6. 2 *deux*, adj.  
 3 *fable*, n. f. 4 *desque*.  
 5 *vous aurez fini d'écrire*.  
 qui, pron. 2 *pouvoir*, v. 3.  
 3 *refuser*, v. 1. 4 *desque*.  
 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *demandeur*,  
 v. 1.  
 1 *il faut*. 2 *battre*, v. 4. 1 *fer*,  
 n. m. 4 *tandisque*. 5 *chaud*,  
 adj.

### *Motival Conjunctions.*

These Conjunctions are  
*Parceque*, because.  
*puisque*, since.  
*car*, for.  
*d'autantque*, since.

*comme*, since.  
*aussi*, by reason of.  
*attendu*, for the sake of.  
*afin*, that.

the last whereof govern the conjunctive, with the Conjunction *que*, and the infinitive with the preposition *de*.

### *Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

We 1 must forgive 1 our  
enemies 2, because 3 God 4  
bids 5 us so to do 5.

*Il faut pardonner à... 2 ennu-  
mi, n. m. 3 parce que. 4 Dieu,  
n. m. 5 nous l'ordonne.*

100

## 118 EXERCISES upon the

- we shall leave 1 you alone 2,      1 laisser, v. i. 2 seul, adj.  
  since 3 you don't like 4  
  our company 5.
- all 1 men 2 are mad 3, for 4      1 tout, plur. tous, adj.  
  they all endeavour 5 to 6  
  make themselves 6 unhappy 7.      2 homme, n. m 3 fou, plur.  
  foux, adj. 4 car. 5 tâcher,  
  v. i. 6 de se rendre, v. 6  
  7 malheureux, adj.
- they will certainly 2 surrender 1, since 3 the conqueror 4 is full 5 of mercy 6.      1 se rendre, v. i. 2 sûrement,  
  adv. 3 d'autantque. 4 vainqueur, n. m. 5 plein, adj.  
  6 clémence, n. f.
- since 1 we can 2 be attacked 3, let 4 us be upon our guards 5.      1 comme. 2 pouvoir, v. 3.  
  attaquer, v. i. 4 tenons  
  nous sur nos gardes.
- she has recommended 1 this affair 2 to me, by 3 reason of its being 3 of the utmost 4 importance 5 to 6 her.      1 recommander, v. i. 2 af-  
  faîrd, n. f. 3 aussi est-elle.  
  4 dernier, adj. 5 conséquence,  
  n. f. 6 pour, prep.
- they have travelled 1 all 2 night 2 for 3 the sake of the moon 3.      1 voyager, v. i. 2 toute la nuit. 3 attendu le clair de la lune.
- for 1 convenience's sake 1, set out 2 to-morrow 3.      1 attendu la commodité. 2 partir, v. 2. 3 demain, adv.
- let us set out quickly 1, that 2 we may arrive 2 before 3 the others 4.      1 promptement, adv. 2 afin d'arriver. 3 avant, prep.  
  4 autre, pron. nom.
- let us do 1 our duty 2, that 3 no body 4 may have reason 4 to 5 blame us 5.      1 faire, v. 5. 2 devoir, n. m.  
  3 afin que. 4 personne n'ait raison. 5 de nous blamer.

## Conjunctions Conclusive.

These Conjunctions are  
 Donc, then.      ainsi, therefore  
 parconsequent, consequently.      partant, therefore.

## Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

You wish 1 to see us 2, we 3 must then 3 shew ourselves 4.

- 1 Souhaitter, v. i. 2 de nous voir. 3 il faut donc. 4 se montrer, v. i.

she complains 1, he 2 has 1 *se plaindre*, v. 6. 2 *il l'a donc  
maltraitée*.  
then used her ill 2.  
you have promised 1 it; 1 *promettre*, v. 4. 2 *parcon-  
seuant*. 3 *pouvoir*, v. 3.  
consequently 2 you can- 4 *refuser*, v. 1.  
not 3 refuse 4 it.  
he is humane 1 and charita- 1 *humain*, adj. 2 *charitable*,  
ble 2, therefore 3 the 3 *ainsi*. 4 *pauvre*, n.  
poor 4 may 5 hope 6 to 5 *pouvoir*, v. 3. 6 *espe-  
rer*, v. 1. 7 *assister*, v. 1.  
be relieved 7 by him.  
I have paid 1 you back 1 1 *payer*, v. 1. 2 *ce que*, pron.  
what 2 I had borrowed 3, 3 *emprunter*, v. 1. 4 *par-  
tant*. 5 *quite*, adj.  
therefore 4 we are quit 5.

### Conjunctions Explicative.

These Conjunctions are:

*Comme*, like, as.

*entantque*, as.

### Explicative.

*savoir*, viz.

*surtout*, especially.

### Exercises upon these Conjunctions.

They have behaved 1 like 2 1 *Se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *comme*.  
fools 3. 3 *fou*, plur. *foues*, n. m.  
he presented himself 1 as 2 1 *se présenter*, v. 1. 2 *comme*.  
I arrived 3. 3 *arriver*, v. 1.  
Christ 1 has a father 2 as 3 1 *Jesus Christ*, n. m. 2 *pere*,  
a God 4, and a mo- n. m. 3 *entantque*. 4 *Dieu*,  
ther 5 as a man 6. n. m. 5 *mère*, n. f. 6 *homme*,  
n. m.  
there are 1 three 2 orders 3 1 *il y a*. 2 *trois*, a. j. 3 *ordre*,  
in 4 France, viz. 5 the n. m. 4 *en*, prep. 5 *savoir*.  
clergy 6, the nobility 7, 6 *clergé*, n. m. 7 *noblesse*,  
and the commons 8. n. f. 8 *tiers-état*.  
he is fit 1 for 2 manythings 2, 1 *propre*, adj. 2 *pour plusieurs*  
especially 3 for war 4. - *choses*. 3 *surtout*. 4 *pour la*  
*guerre*.

### Conjunctions Transitive.

These Conjunctions are:

*Or*, now.

*aureste*, as for the rest.

*dureste*, as for the rest.

*pour*, as for.

*quant*, as for.

### Exercises

*Exercises upon these Conjunctions.*

All men <sup>1</sup> are liars <sup>2</sup>; now <sup>3</sup>  
my dear friend <sup>3</sup>, you are a  
man.

1 *Tous les hommes.* 2 *menteur,*  
adj. 3 *or mon cher ami.*

shew <sup>1</sup> him the goodness <sup>2</sup>  
of your cause <sup>3</sup>; as <sup>4</sup> for  
the rest <sup>4</sup>, don't forget <sup>5</sup>  
the resources <sup>6</sup> of money <sup>7</sup>.

1 *montrer*, v. I. 2 *bonté*, n. f.  
3 *cause*, n. f. 4 *dureté*.  
5 *oublier*, v. I. 6 *ressource*,  
n. f. 7 *argent*, n. m.

I <sup>1</sup> only beg of you to <sup>1</sup>  
read <sup>2</sup> my book <sup>3</sup>, be-  
fore <sup>4</sup> you judge of it <sup>4</sup>;  
as for the rest <sup>5</sup>, use <sup>6</sup> all  
your rights <sup>7</sup>.

1 *je ne vous demande que de.*  
2 *lire*, v. 4. 3 *livre*, n. m.  
4 *avant que d'en juger*. 5 *du-  
reste*. 6 *se servir*, v. 2.  
7 *droit*, n. m.

my brother <sup>1</sup> and sister <sup>2</sup>  
made <sup>3</sup> him each <sup>4</sup> a pre-  
sent <sup>5</sup>; the <sup>6</sup> one gave <sup>6</sup>  
him a horse <sup>7</sup>; as for <sup>8</sup>  
the other <sup>9</sup>, she gave him  
a sword-knot <sup>10</sup>.

1 *frere*, n. m. 2 *sœur*, n. f.  
3 *faire*, v. 5. 4 *chacun*.  
5 *présent*, n. m. *l'un lui a  
donné*. 7 *cheval*, n. m. 8 *pour*,  
9 *autre*, pron. 10 *neud  
d'épée*.

the news <sup>1</sup> of the victory <sup>2</sup>  
is certain <sup>3</sup>; as for <sup>4</sup> that  
of the number <sup>4</sup> of the  
dead <sup>5</sup>, we <sup>6</sup> doubt it <sup>6</sup>.

1 *nouvelle*, n. f. 2 *viictoire*, n.  
f. 3 *sur*, adj. 4 *quant à celle  
du nombre*. 5 *mort*, n. m.  
6 *on en doute*.

*The conductive Conjunction que.*

This Conjunction being often made use of in French  
speech, I must be a little particular upon it.

**R U L E I.**

When *que* comes after a Verb, denoting an affirmation,  
or a kind of certainty, the Verb following must be used  
in the indicative, as

*Je sais qu'il est malade.*  
*je conviens qu'il m'a payé.*  
*j'espere qu'il viendra.*

I know that he is sick.  
I grant that he has paid me.  
I hope that he will come.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I maintain <sup>1</sup> that he is here <sup>2</sup>.  
we are sure <sup>1</sup> that he is not  
gone out <sup>2</sup>.

1 *Souvenir*, v. 2. *ici*, adv.  
1 *sur*, adj. 2 *sortir*, v. 2.

I think

I think 1 that he will be here 1 *croire*, v. 5. 2 *demain*, adv.  
to-morrow 2.  
we hope 1 that you will for- 1 *espérer*, v. 1. 2 *pardonner*,  
give 2 your 3 daughter 3. v. 1. 3 à *votre fille*.

## R U L E II.

When *que* comes after a Verb joined to a negative particle, or denoting doubt, ignorance, fear, desire, or not expressing any thing positive, it governs the conjunctive, as

<i>je n'espere pas qu'il vienne.</i>	I don't exspect his coming.
<i>je doute qu'il le fasse.</i>	I doubt his doing it.
<i>je crains qu'il ne s'en aille.</i>	I fear his going away.
<i>je souhaite qu'il regne.</i>	I wish that he may reign.
<i>je veux qu'il change de conduite.</i>	I will have him alter his conduct.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I don't grant 1 that he has paid 2 me.	1 <i>Convenir</i> , v. 2. 2 <i>payer</i> , v. 1.
I doubt 1 her 2 being here 2.	1 <i>douter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>qu'elle soit</i> <i>ici</i> .
I fear 1 that he will die 2.	1 <i>craindre</i> , v. 6. 2 <i>mourir</i> , v. 2.
I wish 1 he may finish 2.	1 <i>souhaitter</i> , v. 1. 2 <i>finir</i> , v. 2.
I 1 will have him satisfy 2 me.	1 <i>je veux qu'il</i> . 2 <i>satisfaire</i> , v. 5.

## R U L E III

*Que* answers sometimes to the English words *to the end that*, *how*, *but*, *as soon as*, *without*, *since*, *unless*, *why*, *altogether*, *as*, *when*, and *if*, *as*

<i>approchez vous que je vous</i> <i>parle.</i>	come near that I may speak to you.
<i>que vous êtes changé !</i>	how altered you are !
<i>vous ne faites que rire.</i>	you do nothing but laugh.
<i>qu'il boive plus qu'à l'ordinaire,</i> <i>il est malade.</i>	as soon as he drinks more than usual, he is sick.
<i>il ne sauroit sortir sans s'enrou- mer.</i>	he cannot go out without catching cold.

*il y a huit jours qu'il est parti.*

it is a week since he has set out.

*je ne partirai pas que tout ne soit prêt.*

I shall not set out, unless every thing be ready.

*que n'obéissez tous à votre maître?*

why don't you obey your master?

*tout babilome qu'il est, il n'a pu me répondre.*

tho' he is an able man, he could not answer me.

*rempli qu'il étoit de préjugés, il nia tout.*

as he was full of prejudices, he denied all.

*comme l'armee étoit rangée en bataille, & qu'e[st] le étoit prête à combattre.*

as the army was drawn in order of battle, and ready to engage.

*quand vous aurez reconnu votre faute, & que vous l'aurez reparée.*

when you have acknowledged your fault, and made amends for it.

*si vous le trouvez, & qu'il vous demande où je suis.*

if you find him, and he asks you where I am.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

Come 1 here 2 that 3 I may see 4 you.  
how 1 different you are 1 from what 2 you was formerly 3?

you 1 do nothing but 1 prat-  
tle 2 and play 3.

as 1 soon as he takes 1 the 2 country-air 2, he is cured 3.

he cannot 1 open 2 his mouth 3 without 4 telling 4 a lie 5.

it 1 is a fortnight 1 since 2 he returned 3 from 4 Jamai-  
ca 5.

I shall not go out 1, unless 2 you be ready 3.

why 1 don't you speak 2 more 3 slowly 4?

1 Venir, v. 2. ici, adv. 3 que.  
4 voir, v. 3.  
1 que vous êtes différent. 2 ci que. 3 autrefois, adv.

1 vous ne faites que. 2 causer,  
v. 1. 3 badiner, v. 1.  
1 qu'il prenne. 2 l'air de la campagne. 3 guérir, v. 2.  
1 il ne sauroit. 2 ouvrir, v. 2.  
3 touche, n. f. 4 qu'il ne dise.  
5 mensonge, n. m.

1 il y a quinze jours. 2 que.  
3 revenir, v. 2. 4 de, prep.  
5 Jamaïque, n. f.

1 sortir, v. 2. 2 que. 3 prêt,  
adj.  
1 que. 2 parler, v. 1. 3 plus,  
adv. 4 lentement, adv.

- who 1 he is a child 2, he may 2 defend himself 3.
- as 1 he had a good opinion of me 1, he would not believe 2 what 3 they said 4 against 5 me.
- just as 1 we had dined 2, and 3 we were ready to go out 3.
- when 1 you have confessed 1 your crime 2, and 3 I have pardoned you 3.
- if 1 you meet 2 him, and 3 he speaks to you 3.
- I tout enfant qu'il est. 2 pouvoir, v. 3. 3 se défendre, v. 6.
- I prévenu qu'il étoit en ma faveur. 2 croire, v. 5. 3 ce que, pron. nom. 4 dire, v. 4. 5 contre, prep.
- I comme, conj. 2 dîner, v. 1. 3 & que nous allions sortir.
- I quand vous aurez avoué. 2 crime, n. m. 3 & que je vous aurai pardonné.
- I si. 2 rencontrer, v. 1. 3 & qu'il vous parle.

### Of INTERJECTIONS.

An Interjection is a part of Speech that denotes some sudden motion of the mind ; as joy, grief, fear, hatred, &c. Joy is expressed with the words *ah ! ha ! bon !* good ! We express grief with the words *ba ! oh ! héla ! alas !* Our hatred is denoted by the words *fi ! fi donc ! fy upon !* We encourage people with the words *ça, come on ; allons, come on ; courage, cheer up.*

We shew our admiration with the words *ha ! ho ! heigh !* We call with the words *bola, bé* ; oh, soho ; and we impose silence with the word *paix*, hush.

#### Exercises upon the Interjections.

- Good 1 ! here 2 are 2 news 3 for 4 you.
- I have read 1 your first 2 tragedy 3. alas 4 ! I have read your second 5, oh 6 !
- ha 1 ! how 2 do I fear 2 to 3 displease 4 him ?
- fy 1, fy 1, you don't think 2 of 3 it 3.
- I Bon. 2 voila. 3 nouvelle, n. f. 4 pour, prep.
- I lire, v. 4. 2 premier, adj. 3 tragédie, n. f. 4 hélas. 5 second, adj. 6 bola.
- I ba ! 2 que je crains. 3 de, prep. 4 déplaire, v. 5.
- I si. 2 penser, v. 1. 3 y, pron. conj.

come 1, let us set out 2.	1 allons. 2 partir, v. 2.
come 1, cheer 2 up 2.	1 allons. 2 courage.
heigh 1 ! how 2 fine it is 2 ?	1 ho. 2 que c'est beau.
oh 1 ! gentlemen 2, don't go 3 so fast 4.	1 hé ! 2 messieurs. 3 aller, v. 1. 4 si vite.
hush 1 there 2.	1 paix. 2 là.

## INTRODUCTIONS

## FRENCH

the 1st of January 1891 at the age of 11  
years and 1 month.  
He was born at  
the 1st of January 1891 at the age of 11  
years and 1 month.  
He was born at  
the 1st of January 1891 at the age of 11  
years and 1 month.

## FRENCH SYNTAX.

**H**A VING partly shewed the joining of *French* words together, I have already treated of Syntax; few pages will now be sufficient to explain what remains to be said upon this subject.

### Of ARTICLES.

#### R U L E I.

We use two articles, when a Noun is placed immediately after the adjective *tout*, all; as *de tout le monde*, of all the world.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

He is the enemy 1 of all 1 *Ennemi*, n. m. 2 *monde*.  
mankind 2. n. m.

you are the friend 1 of all 1 *ami*, n. m. 2 *Anglois*, n. m.  
the English 2.

this belongs 1 to all the 1 *appartenir*, v. 2. 2 *monde*,  
world 2. n. m.

#### R U L E II.

Two articles must also be used, when an adjective, that is not an adjective of number, is placed after its Noun, to shew its surname or condition, as

*De Guillaume le Conquerant.* Of William the Conqueror.

#### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have spoken 1 this morn- 1 *Parler*, v. 1. 2 *matin*, n. m.  
ing 2 to 3 the countess 3 of 3 à *madame la comtesse*.  
Holderness 4. 4 *Holderness*.

this estate 1 belongs 2 to the 1 *bien*, n. m. 2 *appartenir*,  
duke 2 of Rutland. 2 v. 2. 3 *duc*, n. m.

speak to 1 the countess of 1 à madame la Comteſſe.  
Northumberland.

## R U L E III.

They must also be used, when the superlative is placed immediately after its Noun, as  
*aux hommes les plus méchans.* to the most wicked men.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

*She is one of the most beautiful 1 women 2 in 3 England 3.* 1 Beau, belle, adj. 2 femme, n. f. 3 d'Angleterre.

*she is married 1 to the most generous 2 man in 3 France 3.* 1 marier, v. r. 2 généreux, adj. 3 de France.

## To the Scotch.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

*I shall speak 1 to the Chancellor 2 this afternoon 3.* 1 Parler, v. r. 2 après midi, n. m. 3 chancelier, n. m.

*I have wrote 1 this morning 2 to your brothers 3.* 1 écrire, v. 4. 2 matin, n. m. 3 frere, n. m.

*I have read 1 the duke 3 of Richmond's speech 2.* 1 lire, v. 4. 2 barangue, n. f. 3 duc, n. m.

## Of N O U N S.

## R U L E I.

In quotations, the Nominative Case to the Verb must be placed after it, as

*Tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau.* All men are mad, says Boileau.

Exercises.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- In short 1, said 2 that good 3 king 4, I shall not think 6 myself 5 happy 7 before 8 I 9 have completed 9 the happiness 10 of my subjects 11, gentlemen 1, have we answered 2 to them, you 3 only think of pleasure 3, and neglect 4 the glory 5 of the prince 6.
- 1 *Enfin*, adv. 2 *dire*, v. m. 3 *bon*, adj. 4. *roi*, n. m. 5 *me*, pron. conj. 6 *croire*, v. 5. 7 *beau* *eux*, adj. 8. *que*, conj. 9 *je n'ai fait*. 10 *bonheur*, n. m. 11 *sujet*, n. m.  
 1 *Messieurs*. 2 *répondre*, v. b. 3 *vous ne songez qu'au plaisir*. 4 *négliger*, v. 1. 5  *gloire*, n. f. 6 *prince*, n. m.

## R U L E II.

In narrations, the Nominative Case to the Verb may be placed after it, as

*D'abord parurent les domestiques*; At first the servants appeared;  
*ques ; quelque temps après* and sometimes after the  
*vint la maîtresse du logis.* mistress of the house came.

*Exercise upon this Rule.*

- On our arrival 2 appeared 3 a gentleman 4 to receive 5 us; two 6 minutes after 6 the king 7 came 8.
- 1 *à*, prep. 2 *arrivé*, n. f. 3 *paroître*, v. 5. 4 *gentilhomme*, n. m. 5 *recevoir*, v. 3. 6 *au bout de deux minutes*.  
 7 *roi*, n. m. 8 *venir*, v. 2.

## R U L E III.

When in interrogations, the Nominative to the Verb is a Noun used without a conjunctive pronoun, that nominative must be placed after the Verb, as

*A quoi pense votre frere?* What is your brother thinking of?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- What 1 does merit 3 avail 2 without 4 friends 4?
- 1 *à quoi*. 2 *servir*, v. 2. 3 *mérite*, n. m. 4 *sans protection*.

## EXERCISES upon the

how much 1 does your brother 2 get 2 every 4 day 4?      1 *combien*, adv.    2 *gagner*, v.  
 how 1 does 2 your sister 3 do 2?      1. 3 *frere*, n. m. 4 *par jour*.  
 I comment, adv.    2 *se porter*, v.  
 1. 3 *sœur*, n. f.

## RULE IV.

A Noun, having an article common to the Genitive and Ablative cases, is in the first of these, when it denotes things as united, as

*Le temple du Seigneur.*

The temple of the Lord.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Alexander 1 the Great 2 was son 3 of Philip 4 king 5 of Macedonia 6.

you are the son of a great man 1; and ought 2 to tread 3 upon 4 the steps 5 of your father 6.

the king of Prussia 1 is a great general 2.

1 *Alexandre*, n. m. 2 *grand*, adj. 3 *filz*, n. m. 4 *Philippe*, n. m. 5 *roi*, n. m. 6 *Macedoine*, n. f.

1 *homme*, n. m. 2 *devoir*, v. 3. 3 *marcher*, v. 1. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *trace*, n. f. 6 *pere*, n. m.

## RULE V.

It is in the Ablative, when it denotes separation, division, or privation, as

*À mon départ de Rome.*

At my departure from Rome.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

This happened 1 two 2 years 3 before 4 my departure 5 from Toledo 6.

I shall come 1 to see 2 you before my departure from this city 3.

1 *arriver*, v. 1. 2 *deux*, adj. 3 *an*, n. m. 4 *avant*, prep. 5 *d part*, n. m. 6 *Toledo*, n. m.

1 *venir*, v. 2. 2 *voir*, v. 3. 3 *ville*, n. f.

## RULE VI.

It is also in the Ablative, when it is governed by a Verb, or a participle, as

*Il est aimé de son pere.* He is loved by his father.  
*avez-vous reçu un présent du* have you received a present  
*duc ?* from the duke?

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This musician <sup>1</sup> is very <sup>2</sup> well <sup>2</sup> known <sup>3</sup> by the great <sup>4</sup>.  
 it <sup>1</sup> is in your power <sup>1</sup> to <sup>2</sup> make <sup>3</sup> me happy <sup>4</sup>.  
 why <sup>1</sup> have you stript <sup>2</sup> him of his estate <sup>3</sup>?  
 he is hated <sup>1</sup> by <sup>2</sup> every body <sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Musicien, n. m. <sup>2</sup> très, adv. <sup>3</sup> connoître, v. <sup>4</sup> grand, n. m.  
<sup>1</sup> il dépend de vous. <sup>2</sup> de, prep. <sup>3</sup> rendre, v. <sup>4</sup> heureux, adj.  
<sup>1</sup> pourquoi, adv. <sup>2</sup> dépouiller, v. <sup>1</sup>. <sup>3</sup> bien, n. m.  
<sup>1</sup> hâir, v. <sup>2</sup>. <sup>2</sup> de tout le monde.

R U L E VII.

Such Nouns, as have, or may take *to* before them in English, are usually translated by the French Dative, as  
*J'aspire à la gloire.* I aspire to glory.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

God <sup>1</sup> has promised <sup>2</sup> to Abraham, <sup>2</sup> a numerous <sup>3</sup> progeny <sup>4</sup>.  
 good <sup>1</sup> counsels <sup>2</sup> are necessary <sup>3</sup> to young people <sup>4</sup>.  
 the king <sup>1</sup> has granted <sup>2</sup> a favour <sup>3</sup> to my father <sup>4</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Dieu, n. m. <sup>2</sup> promettre, v. <sup>4</sup>. <sup>3</sup> nombreux, ruse, adj. <sup>4</sup> postérité, n. f.  
<sup>1</sup> bon, adj. <sup>2</sup> conseil, n. m. <sup>3</sup> nécessaire, adj. <sup>2</sup> aux jeunes gens.  
<sup>1</sup> roi, n. m. <sup>2</sup> accorder, v. <sup>1</sup>. <sup>3</sup> faveur, n. f. <sup>4</sup> pere, n. m.

R U L E VIII.

Such Nouns, as express the term of an action, or are governed by Prepositions, are in the Accusative, as

*Le craignez vous ?*

Do you fear him?

*je suis devant vous.*

I am before you.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have studied 1 philosophy 2 in 3 Newton's 5 writings 4.

I asked for 1 his friendship 2, and offered 3 him mine. you have at last 1 overcome 2 my resistance 3.

you have delivered 1 me from the danger 2 in 3 which I was 3.

he has appeared 1 before 2 the judge 3.

1 *Etudier*, v. 1. 2 *philosophie*, n. f. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *écrit*, n. m. 5 *Newton*, n. m.

1 *demander*, v. 1. 2 *amitié*, n. f. 3 *offrir*, v. 2.

1 *enfin*, adv. 2 *vaincre*, v. 6.

3 *résistance*, n. f.

1 *délivrer*, v. 1. 2 *danger*, n. m.

3 *sous* *étois*.

## RULE IX.

The Vocative must be used, when we address ourselves to persons, or things, as

*Entrez, messieurs.*

Come in, gentlemen.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Brave 1 soldiers 2, you have got 3 a great 4 deal 4 of glory 5.

O heavens 1, hear 2 my voice 3, o earth 4, lend 5 your ear 6.

judge 1 me, O 2 God 2, and plead 3 my cause 4.

1 *Brave*, adj. 2 *soldat*, n. m. 3 *acquérir*, v. 2. 4 *beaucoup*, adv. 5 *gloire*, n. f.

1 *cieux*, n. m. plur. 2 *écoutter*, v. 1. 3 *voix*, n. f. 4 *terre*, n. f. 5 *préter*, v. 1. 6 *oreille*, n. f.

1 *juger*, v. 1. 2 *a mon Dieu*. 3 *plaider*, v. 1. 4 *cause*, n. f.

## RULE X.

Such Nouns, as in English are placed before a participle active with *of* between both, govern the infinitive with *de* before it, as

*L'art de faire la guerre.*  
*le désir d'acquérir.*

The art of making war.  
the desire of getting.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have not the art 1 of please- sing 2.

1 *Art*, n. m. 2 *plaire*, v. 5.

He has a mighty desire 1 of going 2 to 3 Constanti-nople.

the desire 1 of getting 2 ri-ches 3 is natural 4 to men 5.

1 grand' envie. 2 aller, v. t.  
3 à, prep.

1 désir, n. m. 2 amasser, v. t.  
3 richesses, n. f. plur. 4 na-tuel, adj. 5 aux hommes.

## OF ADJECTIVES.

### R U L E I.

When a Noun of multitude is followed by a Genitive, the Adjective must agree with that Genitive, as

*Il y a une partie du palais brûlé.* There is a part of the palace burnt.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

I met 1 a multitude 2 of drunken 4 peasants 3.

1 Rencontrer, v. t. 2 foule,  
m. f. 3 païson, n. m. 4 ivre,  
adj.

he found 1 a part 2 of his soldiers 3 wounded 4.

1 trouver, v. t. 2 partie, n. f.  
3 soldat, n. m. 4 blesser, v. t.

when 1 he saw 2 the half 3 of his people 4 killed 5, he ran away 6.

1 quand. 2 voir, - v. 3.  
3 moitié, n. f. 4 monde, n. m.  
5 fuir, v. t. 6 s'enfuir, v. t.

### R U L E II.

Two singulars being equal to a plural, the Adjective and verb common to both must be used in the plural, as

*L'esprit & le corps sont essentiels à l'homme.* The soul and body are essen-tial to man.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

Bread 1 and wine 2 are useful 3 to mankind 4.

1 Pain, n. m. 2 vin, n. m.  
3 utile, adj. 4 au genre hu-main.

gluttony 1 and drunkeness 2 are pernicious 3 to health 4.

1 gourmandie, n. f. 2 ivrogne-  
rie, n. f. 3 pernicieux, eufé,  
adj. 4 santé, n. f.

### R U L E III.

<i>Digne</i> , worthy.	<i>taxé</i> , taxed.
<i>indigne</i> , unworthy.	<i>accusé</i> , accused.
<i>capable</i> , capable.	<i>comblé</i> , loaded.
<i>incapable</i> , uncapable.	<i>las</i> , tired.
<i>charmé</i> , charmed.	<i>ennuyé</i> , weary.
<i>content</i> , pleased.	<i>fatigué</i> , fatigued.
<i>mécontent</i> , displeased.	<i>avide</i> , greedy.
<i>chargé</i> , loaded, commanded.	<i>sâché</i> , lorry.

and such like Adjectives and Participles, as likewise Adjectives signifying plenty or want, fullness or emptiness, govern the genitive with the Preposition *de*, as

*Il est digne de louange.* He is worthy of praise.

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

My brother 1 is worthy of 1 *Frere*, n. m. 2 *estime*, n. f.  
the esteem 2 you have for 3 3 *pour*, prep.  
him.

he is unworthy of the honour, n. f. 2 faire, v. 5. you do 2 him.

I am charmed with his conduct. *I conduite*, n. f.

are you pleased with your *i marché*, n. m.  
bargain ?

**we are tired of life** 1. **1 vie**, n. f.  
**you are too greedy of glory** 2. **1 trop, adv.** 2 **gloire**, n. f.

this cask 1 is full 2 of wine 3. 1 tonneau, n. m. 2 plein, adj.  
3 vin, n. m.

#### R U L E IV.

Most of the same Adjectives and Participles govern the infinitive with the same Preposition, as

*Il est capable de servir sa patrie.* He is capable of serving his country.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

**He is worthy to command** | Commander v. 1

he is uncapable of serving 1	1 <i>servir</i> , v. 2.
you.	
I am commanded to assist 1	1 <i>assister</i> , v. 1.
you.	
his brother 1 is accused of 2 having committed 2 a mur- der 3.	1 <i>frère</i> , n. m. 2 <i>d'avoir com- mis</i> . 3 <i>meurtre</i> , n. m.
we are tired of 1 doing 1 al- ways 2 the same 3 thing 4.	1 <i>de faire</i> . 2 <i>toujours</i> , adv.
I am sorry that 1 I have not succeeded 1.	3 <i>même</i> , adj. 4 <i>chose</i> , n. f.
	1 <i>de n'avoir point réussi</i> .

## R U L E V.

Adjectives signifying fitness or unfitness, inclination or resistance, advantage or disadvantage, profit or disprofit, pleasure or displeasure, due and submission, govern the dative and infinitive, with the preposition *à*, as

*Il est propre au travail.* He is fit for labour.  
*il est prompt à se fâcher.* he is apt to fall in a passion.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

He is fit 1 for the ecclesiasti- tical 3 state 2.	1 <i>Propre</i> , adj. 2 <i>état</i> , n. m. 3 <i>ecclésiastique</i> , adj.
you speak 1 to me of an ho- nest 2 man 3, who 4 is in- clined 5 to serve 6 all 7 his friends 8.	1 <i>parler</i> , v. i. 2 <i>bonnête</i> , adj. 3 <i>homme</i> , n. m. 4 <i>qui</i> , pron. 5 <i>porter</i> , v. i. 6 <i>servir</i> , v. 2. 7 <i>tous ses amis</i> .
drunkenness 1 is hurtful 2 to health 3	1 <i>ivrognerie</i> , n. f. 2 <i>nuisible</i> , adj. 3 <i>santé</i> , n. f.
I 1 know no body 1 more slow 2 to work 3 than he 4.	1 <i>je ne connais personne</i> . 2 <i>lent</i> , adj. 3 <i>travail</i> , n. m. 4 <i>lui</i> , pron. nom.
children 1 ought 2 to be du- tiful 3 to their parents 4.	1 <i>enfant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , n. m. 2 <i>devoir</i> , v. 3. 3 <i>obéissant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> , adj. 4 <i>parent</i> , plur. <i>ens</i> , n. m.

## R U L E VI.

Some Adjectives, as *sensible*, *babile*, *adroit*, *content*, &c. may,  
or may not have a government, as

*C'est*

*C'est un homme sensible.*  
*elle est sensible au froid.*

*He is a touchy man.  
she is chilly.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

*My sister 1 is as 2 touchy as 2 yours 3.*

*1 Soeur, n. f. 2 aussi sensible  
que. 3 la vôtre, pron. nom.*

*I 1 feel a pleasure in having  
the honour 1 of serving 2  
you.*

*je suis sensible à l'honneur. 2 ser-  
vir, v. n.*

*my physician 1 is a very 2  
skilful 3 man.*

*1 médecin, n. m. 2 très, adv.  
3 habile, adj.*

*where 1 can 2 you find 3 a  
person 4 more skilful in 5  
drawing 5?*

*1 où, adv. 2 pouvoir, v. 3.  
trouver, v. 1. 4 personne, n.  
f. 5 à dessiner.*

*he is very 1 dexterous 2.*

*1 très, adv. 2 adroit, adj.*

*she was very dexterous in 1  
shooting an arrow out of a*

*1 à tirer de l'arc.*

*we are satisfied 1.*

*1 content, plur. ens, adj.*

*I am satisfied with 1 your*

*1 de, prep. 2 conduite, n. f.*

All the other adjectives have no government.

---

## OF DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

### R U L E

*Moi, I.*

*chaacun, every one.*

*moi-même, myself.*

*quiconque, whosoever.*

*toi, thee.*

*autrui, others.*

*toi-même, thyself.*

*personne, no one.*

*lu, he, him.*

*tel, such.*

*elle, she, her.*

*qui que ce soit, whosoever.*

*qui? who?*

*qui que ce fut, whosoever it*

*quelqu'un, some body, any*

*was.*

*body.*

are said of persons and personified things only; for if I ask this question, *est-ce là votre canif?* is this your penknife? one can't answer, *c'est lui*, it is he; but *c'est elle*, it is

*Exercises*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

- Who is there 1? It 2 is 2 I, 1 *Là*, adv. 2 *c'est*.  
 it is you, it is he.  
 go 1 and see 2 my brother 3, and tell 4 him that  
 I am in 5 good 6 health 7:  
 your friend 1 behaves 2 ill 3;  
 I am not pleased 4 with 5  
 him.  
 come back 1 from the coun-  
 try 2, because 3 we want 4  
 you.  
 we have pleaded 1 our  
 cause 2 ourselves.  
 you 1 only speak of 1 your-  
 self.  
 has any body ever 1 doubt-  
 ed 2 the existence 3 of  
 God 4.  
 every one follows 1 his 2  
 own 2 inclination 3.  
 don't do 1 to others what 2  
 you 3 would not have done  
 to yourself 3.  
 no one knows 1 whether 2  
 he is worthy 3 of love 4  
 or hatred 5.  
 whosoever asks for 1 me,  
 tell him that 2 I am busy 2.
- 1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *voir*, v. 3.  
 3 *frere*, n. m. 4 *dire*, v. 4.  
 5 *en*, prep. 6 *bon*, *ne*, adj.  
 7 *santé*, n. f.  
 1 *ami*, n. m. 2 *se comporter*,  
 v. 1. 3 *mal*, adv. 4 *content*,  
 adj. 5 *de*, prep.  
 1 *revenir*, v. 2. 2 *campagne*,  
 n. f. 3 *parceque*, conj. 4 *avoir*  
*besoin de*.  
 1 *plaider*, v. 1. 2 *cause*, n. f.  
 3 *badinez*, v. 1. 4 *voulez*, v. 1.  
 1 *vous ne parlez que de*.  
 1 *jamais*, adv. 2 *doubter de*,  
 v. 1. 3 *existence*, n. f. 4 *Dieu*,  
 n. m.  
 1 *suivre*, v. 4. 2 *son*, pron.  
 adj. 3 *inclination*, n. f.  
 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *ce que*, pron.  
 nom. 3 *vous ne voudriez pas*  
*qu'on vous fit*.  
 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *si*, conj.  
 3 *digne*, adj. 4 *amour*, n. m.  
 5 *barbe*, n. f.  
 1 *demander*, v. 1. 2 *que je suis*  
*en affaires*.

## RULE II.

*Quoi*, what.*rien*, nothing.*ceci*, this.*quoi que ce soit*, whatever,*cela*, that.

nothing.

*ce qui*, what.*quoi que ce fut*, whatever it*ce que*, what.

was, nothing.

*que?* what?are said of things only: for speaking of a girl, I can't say,  
*ceci est beau*, this is handsome; but *elle est belle*, she is hand-  
 some.

Exercises

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I know 1 what 2 he is capable 3 of 2.  
 thi pleases 1 me.  
 that displeases 1 you.  
 what 1 grie es 2 me the most 3 is 4, that you have lost 5 your money 6.  
 tell 1 me what 2 you know.  
 what 1 have you said 2?  
 nothing 1 ought 2 to hinder 3 a christian 4 to defend 5 the truth 6.  
 whatever 1 has detained 2 you, you 3 are in the wrong 3.  
 they 1 have told me 1 nothing 2 new 2.

1 savoir, v. 3. 2 de quoi.  
 3 capable, adj.  
 1 plaisir, v. 5.  
 1 déplaire, v. 5.  
 1 et qui. 2 affliger, v. 1. 3 le plus. 4 c'est. 5 perdre, v. 4.  
 6 argent, n. m.  
 1 dire, v. 4. 2 ce que.  
 1 que. 2 dire, v. 4.  
 1 rien. 2 devoir, v. 2. 3 empêcher, v. 1. 4 chrétien, n. m. 5 défendre, v. 6.  
 6 vérité, n. f.  
 1 quoi que ce soit qui. 2 retenir, v. 2. 3 vous avez tort.

1 ils ne m'ont dit. 2 quoi que ce soit de nouveau.

## RULE III.

Lui-même, himself, itself.  
 elle-même, herself, itself.  
 soi one's self.  
 soi-même, one's self.  
 le mien, la mienne, mine.  
 le tien, la tienne, thine.  
 le sien, la sienne, his, her, its.  
 le nôtre, la nôtre, ours.  
 le vôtre, la vôtre, yours.  
 le leur, la leur, theirs.

ce, he, she, it, they.  
 celui, celle, this.  
 celui-ci, celle-ci, this.  
 celui-la, celle-la, that.  
 lequel? laquelle? which?  
 le même, la même, the same.  
 l'un, l'une, the one.  
 l'autre, the other.  
 aucun, aucune, none.  
 pas un, pas une, not one.  
 plusieurs, many.

are said of persons and things; for we may say, *c'est un beau prince, he is a handsome prince, and c'est un beau diamant, it is a fine diamond.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The Amazons 1 governed 2 their dominions 3 and defended 4 themselves 5. 1 Amazone, n. f. 2 gouverner, v. 1. 3 défendre, v. 6. 4 état, n. m. 5 par elles mêmes.

Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 137

it becomes 1 no one 2 to 3  
praise 4 one's self 4.

this affair 1 is good in 3 it-  
self 4.

our aunts 1 are 2 a com-  
ing 2, speak 3 to your's,  
and I shall speak to mine.

our birds 1 are upon 2 the  
table 3, take 4 your's, and  
give 5 me mine.

I read 1 Horace and Virgil 2,  
because 3 they 4 are 4 the  
best 5 Latin 7 poets 6.

it 1 was 1 envy 2 that 3 oc-  
casioned 4 the first 5 mur-  
der 6 in 7 the world 7.

he 1 who 2 puts 3 his hope 4  
in 5 God 5 shall not be  
deceived 6.

bring 1 me that 2 I bought 3  
yesterday 4.

this 1 is the most learned 2,  
and that 3 the most igno-  
rant 4.

I prefer 1 this 2 to that 3.

which 1 do you speak of?  
Denmark 1 and Norway 2  
belong 3 to 4 the same 4  
king 5.

it 1 is 1 the same sun 2  
which 3 enlightens 4 all 5  
the nations 6 of the earth 7.  
the one and the other relate 1  
the same circumstances 2.

1 convenir, v. 2. 2 à personnes,  
3 de, prep. 4 se louer soi-  
même.

1 affaire, n. f. 2 bon, ne, adj.  
3 en, prep. 4 soi.  
1 tante, n. f. 2 viennent.  
3 parler, v. 1.

1 oiseau, plur. eaux, n. m.  
2 sur, prep. 3 table, n. f.  
4 prendre, v. 6. 5 donner,  
v. 1.

1 lire, v. 4. 2 Virgile, n. m.  
3 parceque, conj. 4 ce sont.  
5 les meilleurs. 6 poete, n. m.  
7 Latin, adj.

1 ce fut. 2 envie, n. f. 3 qui.  
4 occasionner, v. 1. 5 pré-  
mier, adj. 6 meurtre, n. m.  
7 dans le monde.

1 celui. 2 qui. 3 mettre, v. 4.  
4 confiance, n. f. 5 en Dieu.  
6 tromper, v. 1.

1 apporter, v. 1. 2 celle que.  
3 acheter, v. 1. 4 hier, adv.  
1 celui-ci. 2 savant, adj.  
3 celui-la. 4 ignorant, adj.

1 préférer, v. 1. 2 celle-ci.  
3 celle-là.

1 quel. 1 Danemark, n. m. 2 Norvege,  
n. f. 3 appartenir, v. 2.  
4 au même. 5 roi, n. m.

1 c'est. 2 soleil, n. m. 3 qui.  
4 éclairer, v. 1. 5 tout, adj.  
6 nation, n. f. 7 terre, n. f.  
1 rapporter, v. 1. 2 circon-  
stance, n. f.

few

few 1 men 1 use 2 equally 3  
the one and the other  
hand 4.

none 1 has opposed 1 me.  
of all 1 those 2 who 3 know 4  
the reasons 5 of my con-  
duct 6, is 7 there any 7  
that blamed 8 it?

I have none 1.

not one 1 of you can 2 com-  
plain 3 of my conduct.

you have not one 1.

many 1 have thought 2 that 3  
the world 4 was eternal 5.

if 1 you 2 want bottles 2,  
I 3 have many 3.

1 peu de gens. 2 se servir de.  
v. 2. 3 également, adv.  
4 main, n. f.

aucun n'a été contraire.

1 tout, adj. 2 ceux. 3 qui.  
4 savoir, v. 3. 5 raison, n. f.  
6 conduite, n. f. 7 y en  
a-t-il aucun. 8 blamer, v. i.

1 aucun.

1 pas un. 2 pouvoir, v. 3. 3 se  
plaindre, v. 6.

1 pas un.

1 plusieurs. 2 croire, v. 5.  
3 que. 4 monde, n. m.  
5 éternel, adj.

1 si, conj. 2 vous avez besoin  
de bouteilles. 3 j'en ai plu-  
sieurs.

#### R U L E IV.

The pronouns adjective *mon*, *ma*, *my*; *ton*, *ta*, *thy*; *notre*,  
*our*, and *votre*, *your*, have a relation to persons and personi-  
fied things only, as

*Vous perdez votre argent, & je*

*dépense le mien.*

You lose your money, and I  
spend mine.

#### Exercises upon this Rule.

I have sold 1 my horse 2,  
have 3 you get 3 yours  
still 4?

you ruin 1 your constitution 2,  
and I preserve 3 mine.

1 vendre, v. 6. 2 cheval, n. m.  
3 avez vous. 4 encore.

1 ruiner, v. 1. 2 santé, n. f.  
3 conserver, v. 1.

#### R U L E V.

The pronouns adjective *son*, *sa*, *his*, *her*, *its*, and *leur*,  
*their*, may always be related to persons; but have only a  
relation to such things as are expressed before in the same  
sentence, by nouns or pronouns, as

*Notre gouverneur a reçu son* Our governor has received  
*pouvoir du prince.* his power from the prince.

*la mer a son flux.*  
*elle a sa source en France.*

the sea has its tide.  
it has its head in France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He may 1 dispose 2 of his  
estate 3. put 1 this book 2 in 3 its  
place 4. all bodies 1 have their  
dimensions 2.

the trees 1 bear 2 their fruits 3,  
every 4 one 4 in 5 their  
season 5.

3 pouvoir, v. 3. 2 disposer,  
v. 1. 3 bien, n. m. 1 mettre, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m.  
3 en, prep. 4 place, n. f.  
1 corps, n. m. 2 dimension, n. f.  
1 arbre, n. m. 2 porter, v. 1:  
3 fruit, n. m. 4 charun.  
5 dans leur saison.

R U L E VI.

But if the things are not expressed before in the same sentence, by nouns or pronouns, we must, instead of *son*, *sa*, *ses* and *leur*, use the conjunctive pronoun *en*, as

*Je connois l'arbre dont vous  
parlez ; les fruits en sont  
excellens.*

I know the tree you are  
speaking of ; its fruits are  
excellent.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have seen 1 Mr. Rolin's  
house 2, I admire 3 its  
situation 4, architecture 5,  
and apartments 6 !

I have travelled 1 in 2 Hol-  
land 3, and have seen its  
chief 4 cities 5.

I have read 1 your book 2,  
and know 3 its faults 4 and  
beauties 5.

1 Voir, v. 3. 2 maison, n. f.  
3 admirer, v. 1. 4 situation,  
n. f. 5 architecture, n. f. 6 ap-  
partement, plur. ens, n. m.  
1 voyager, v. 1. 2 en, prep.  
3 Hollande, n. f. 4 prin-  
cipal, adj. 5 ville, n. f.  
1 lire, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m.  
3 connoître, v. 5. 4 faute,  
n. f. 5 beauté, n. f.

R U L E VII.

*Ce, cet, and cette, this, are said of persons and things, as*

*Ce héros.*

*cet homme-ci.*

*ce monde.*

This hero.

this man.

this world.

*Exercises*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Let us thank 1 this young 2 cavalier 3, he 4 is your deliverer 4, and 5 it is to him you owe your life 5. this heaven 1, this earth 2, and these elements 3 are the work 4 of God 5.

1 Remercier, v. 1. 2 jeune, adj. 3 cavalier, n. m. 4 c'est votre libérateur. 5 & c'est à lui que vous devez la vie. 1 ciel, n. m. 2 terre, n. f. 3 élément, plur. ens, n. m. 4 ouvrage, n. m. 5 Dieu, n. m.

## R U L E VIII.

The pronouns adjective *qui*, who, which, that; *que*, whom, which; *lequel laquelle*, who, which; and *dont*, of whom, of which, must have a noun or nominal pronoun for their antecedent, as

*Dieu, qui aime les hommes.*

God, who loves men.

*L'argent que j'ai dépensé.*

The money which I have spent.

*c'est lui que je vois.*

it is he whom I see.

*celle dans laquelle il couchoit.*

that wherein he laid.

*la femme dont on parle.*

the woman of whom they are speaking.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The Jews 1 who 2 crucified 3 Christ 4 did not know 5 what 6 they were about 6.

1 Juif, n. m. 2 qui. 3 crucifier, v. 1. 4 Jesus Christ, n. m. 5 savoir, v. 3. 6 ce qu'ils faisoient.

he 1 who 2 puts 3 his trust 4 in God 5 shall not be deceived 6.

1 celui. 2 qui, 3 mettre, v. 4. 4 confiance, n. f. 5 en Dieu, 6 tromper, v. 1.

learn 1 the things 2 which 3 the gospel 4 prescribes 5 to us.

1 apprendre, v. 6. 2 chose, n. f. 3 que. 4 évangile, n. m. 5 prescrire, v. 4.

let us think 1 to appease 2 the judge 3 before 4 whom 4 we 5 are to appear 5 one 6 day 6.

1 songer, v. 1. 2 flétrir, v. 2. 3 juge, n. m. 4 devant lequel. 5 nous devons paraître. 6 un jour.

there

there is 1 in 2 heaven 3 a 1 *ily a.* 2 *dans,* prep. 3 *ciel,*  
 king 4 from 5 whom 5 1 p. m. 4 *roi,* n. m. 5 *dont.*  
 depend 6 the kings of the 6 *dependre,* v. 6. 7 *terre,*  
 earth 7. n. f.

## R U L E IX.

*Qui*, in the nominative may be related to persons and things; but in the other cases is related to persons only, as

*Le jeune homme, qui vient ici,* The young man, who comes here, is of Paris.

*les fables, qui font parler les animaux,* the fables, which make the animals speak, are both useful and entertaining

*il faut bien choisir les amis à qui on veut donner sa confiance.* we must be careful in choosing those friends whom we intend to make our confidents.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Blessed 1 are they 2 which 3 do 4 hunger and thirst after righteousness 4.

the horse 1, which 2 displeases 3 you so much 4, cost 5 me thirty 6 guineas 7.

there are 1 many 2 men 3 whose 4 great 5 actions 6 remain 7 in 8 oblivion 8.

do you know 1 whom 2 you speak to 2?

1 *heureux,* adj. 2 *ceux.* 3 *qui.* 4 *ont faim & soif de la justice.*

1 *cheval,* n. m. 2 *qui.* 3 *déplaire,* v. 5. 4 *tant,* adv. 5 *couter,* v. t. 6 *trente,* adj. und. 7 *guinee,* n. f.

1 *il y a.* 2 *plusieurs,* adj. p.ur. 3 *homme,* n. m. 4 *de qui.* 5 *grand* adj. 6 *action,* n. f.

7 *réster,* v. t. 8 *dans l'oubli.* 1 *savoir,* v. 3. 2 *à qui vous parlez.*

## R U L E X.

The pronoun *que* may often be looked upon as the accusative of *qui*, *lequel*, and *laquelle*, as

*L'homme que Dieu créa à son image.* Man whom God created after his own likeness.

*les anges que l'orgueil précipita dans les enfers.* the angels whom pride precipitated into hell.

## Exercises

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The prince 1 who n 2 I 1 Prince, n. m. 2 que. 3 servir,  
serve 3, has intrusted 4 me v. 2. 4 confier, v. 1. 5 grand,  
with 4 the greatest 5 em- adj. 6 emploi, n. m.  
ployments 6.

the woman 1 whom 2 God 3 1 femme, n. f. 2 que. 3 Dieu,  
formed 4 with 5 one of n. m. 4 former, v. 1.  
Adam's ribs 5, was the 5 d'une des côtes d'Adam.  
cause 6 of his sin 7. 6 cause, n. f. 7 péché, n. m.  
the world 1, which 2 God 1 monde, n. m. 2 que. 3 tira  
created 3 out of nothing 3, du néant. 4 montrer, v. 1.  
shews 4 his omnipotence 5. 5 toute puissance, n. f.

## R U L E XI.

*Que* is also used in the genitive and dative in some parti-  
cular phrases, in the English whereof, it is not commonly  
expressed, as

C'est de vous qu'on parle. It is you they are speaking of.  
c'est à vous qu'il s'addresse. it is you he applies to.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is 1 of that sum 2 I ask 3 1 C'est. 2 somme, n. f. 3 de-  
you the payment 4. mander, v. 1. 4 payment, n. m.  
it is from the king 1 we 1 roi, n. m. 2 devoir, v. 3.  
ought 2 to expect 3 that 3 attendre, v. 6. 4 faveur,  
favour 4. n. f.  
it is to glory 1 I aspire 2. 1 gloire, n. f. 2 aspirer, v. 1.

## R U L E XII.

*Lequel* and *laquelle*, being related to persons and things, are  
used, 1st, in the genitive after two antecedents, as

La personne sur l'honneur de The person upon whose ho-  
laquelle j'avois compté. nour I had relied.  
la tour, au haut de laquelle nous the tower, on the top of which  
sommes, a cent pieds de haut. we are, is a hundred foot  
high.

*Exercises*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

The duke 1, to whose 3 protection 2 I owe 4 my fortune 5, has lately 7 given 6 me a new 8 employment 9.

the Seyne 1, in 2 the bed 3 of 4 which 4 other 5 rivers 6 fall 7, may 8 pass 9 for 10 a considerable river 10.

- 1 *Duc*, n. m. 2 *protection*, n. f.
- 3 *duquel*. 4 *devoir*, v. 3.
- 5 *fortune*, n. f. 6 *donner*,
- v. 1. 7 *depuis peu*. 8 *nouvel*,
- adj. 9 *emploi*, n. m.
- 1 *Seine*, n. f. 2 *dans*, prep.
- 3 *lit*, n. m. 4 *de laquelle*.
- 5 *autre*, adj. 6 *riviere*, n. f.
- 7 *se jettter*, v. 1. 8 *pouvoir*,
- v. 3. 9 *passer*, v. 1. 10 *pour*
- une riviere considérable*.

## R U L E XIII.

2dly, *Lequel* and *laquelle* may be used in the dative, when we speak of persons, and must be used in that case when we speak of things, as

*Dieu auquel nous devons rapporter toutes nos actions.*  
*les sciences auxquelles je m'applique.*

God to whom we ought to direct all our actions.  
the sciences to which I apply myself.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

We must make 1 a judicious 3 choice 2 of those to whom 4 we intend 5 to give 6 our confidence 7.

it 1 is 1 an objection 2 to which 3 there 4 is no answer 4.

- 1 *Il faut que nous faisions.*
- 2 *choix*, n. m. 3 *judicieux*,
- adj. 4 *auxquels*. 5 *vouloir*,
- v. 3. 6 *donner*, v. 1. 7 *confiance*, n. f.
- 1 *c'est*. 2 *objection*, n. f. 3 *à laquelle*. 4 *il n'y a pas de réponse*.

## R U L E XIV.

3dly, *Lequel* and *laquelle* may be used in the accusative, after a preposition, when we speak of persons, and must be used in that case, when we speak of things, as

*La personne, avec laquelle vous commercez, n'a pas quatre sous vaillant.*

The person, with whom you trade, is not worth a groat.

*la maison, dans laquelle vous demeurez, est plus belle que la nôtre.*

the house, wherein you dwell,  
is handsomer than ours.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The wood 1. wherein we have walked 2. belongs 3. to one 4. of your friends 5. the province 1. wherein you have passed 2. the summer 3. has allurements 4. which 5. ours has not.

1 Bois, n. m. 2 se promener, v. 1. 3 appartenir, v. 2. 4 un, adj. 5 ami, n. m. 1 province, n. f. 2 passer, v. 1. 3 été, n. m. 4 agrément, plur. ens, n. m. 5 que, pron.

R U L E XV.

The prohoun *dont*, expressing the genitive or ablative, being said of persons and things, may always and must often be used instead of the pronouns *de qui*, *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, and *desquelles*, as

*La maison dont j'ai fait l'acquisition.*

The house of which I have made the purchase.

*le cheval dont je me suis d'fait.*

the horse I got rid of.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The religion 1. whose 2. laws 3. you despise 4. will condemn 5. you one 6. day 6.

1 Religion, n. f. 2 dont. 3 loi, plur. loix, n. f. 4 mépriser, v. 1. 5 condamner, v. 1. 6 un jour.

be grateful 1. towards 2. God 3. of 4. whom 4. you have received 5. so 6. many favours 6.

1 reconnoissant, adj. 2 envers, prep. 3 Dieu, n. m. 4 dont. 5 recevoir, v. 3. 6 tant de

I have read 1. the book 2. of which 3. you made 4. me a present 5.

1 lire, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m. 3 dont. 4 faire, v. 5. 6 présent, n. m.

R U L E S by which it may be known when the Disjunctive or Conjunctive Pronouns are to be used in French Speech.

I have shewn in several parts of this book how to use the conjunctive and disjunctive Pronouns; what remains to be said

said upon this subject will be contained in the following rules.

## R U L E I.

The same nominative conjunctive needs not always be repeated after the conjunction; and therefore instead of *il regarda, & il reconnut la maison* he looked at, and he knew the house again.

we may say

*il regarda, & reconnut la maison.* he looked at, and knew the house again.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

They have supped 1 together 2, and are 3 now 4 playing 3 at cards 5.  
they sat 1 upon 2 the grass 3, and began 4 to eat 5.

1 *Souper*, v. 1. 2 *ensemble*, adv.  
3 *jouer*, v. 1. 4 à présent.  
5 *carte*, n. f.  
1 *s'asseoir*, v. 3. 2 *sur*, prep.  
3 *herbe*, n. f. 4 *commencor*,  
v. 1. 5 à manger.

## R U L E II.

When a Verb has several pronouns for it: nominative cases, the first must be disjunctive, and the last of all conjunctive, as

*Lui & moi nous parlons.* He and I are speaking.  
*votre ami & vous, vous ne* your friend and you are good  
*valez rien.* for nothing.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

My brother 1 and I 2, we went 3 last 4 night 4 to the play 5.

your sister 1, you and I, shall put 2 in 3 the lottery 4.

my cousin 1 and I, shall have new 3 cloaths 2 to morrow 4.

1 *Frere*, n. m. 2 *moi*. 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *bier au fair*. 5 *comédie*, n. f.

1 *sœur*, n. f. 2 *mettre*, v. 4. 3 à, prep. 4 *loterie*, n. f.

1 *cousin*, n. m. 2 *habit*, n. m. 3 *neuf*, adj. 4 *demain*, adv.

Duplefis and I, we have done 1 faire, v. 5. 2 theme, n. m.  
our exercise 2.

## RULE III.

When the pronoun *lui*, *he*, *eux*, *they*, are the last of the disjunctives, the conjunctive pronoun may sometimes be omitted, as

*Lui & eux font blamables.*  
*je demeurai, & lui s'en alla.*

He and they are blameable.  
I stayed, and he went away.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

My brother 1 and he are arrived 2.

1 Frere, n. m. 2 arriver,  
v. 1.

my uncle 1 and they are set out 2 for 3 Jamaica 4.

1 oncle, n. m. 2 partir, v. 2.  
3 pour, prep. 4 Jamaïque,  
n. f.

he and they ought 1 to learn 2 their lesson 3 by heart 4.

1 devoir, v. 3. 2 apprendre, v.  
6. 3 leçon, n. f. 4 par coeur.

## RULE IV.

When a Verb is between two or more pronouns in the same case, the first of them must be conjunctive, and placed before that Verb, and the others disjunctive, and placed after it, as

*Je souffre & lui aussi.* I suffer, and he also.

*on me parle, aussi bien qu'à lui,* they speak to me, as well as  
*& à eux.* to him and them.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I speak 1, and he also 2. 1 Parler, v. 1. 2 aussi, conj.

you write 1, and we also. 1 écrire, v. 4.

I shall sell 1 books 2 to you, 1 vendre, v. 6. 2 livre, n. m.  
as 3 well as 3 to him. 3 aussi bien que.

## RULE V.

A disjunctive pronoun must always be used and placed after the Verb *être*, when it signifies *belonging to*, as

*Je suis à vous.* I belong to you.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Blessed 1 are the poor 2 in 3 1 Bienheureux, adj. 2 pauvre,  
spirit 3

spirit 3, for 4 theirs 7 is 7  
the kingdom 5 of heaven 6. n. m. 3 *d'esprit*. 4 *car*, conj.  
5 *royaume*, n. m. 6 *cieux*,  
n. m. plur. 7 *est à eux*.  
this house 1 will one 2 day 2 1 *maison*, n. f. 2 *un jour*. 3 à  
be mine 3. moi.

## R U L E VI.

The conjunctive pronouns must be used with, and placed before *voici*, and *voila*, as

*Me voici.*  
*le voila.*

Here I am.  
here he is.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

you wished 1 to 2 see 3 me, 1 *souhaiter*, v. i. 2 *de*, prep.  
here I am; have you any 4 3 *voir*, v. 3. 4 *quelque chose*.  
thing 4 to 5 tell 6 me ? 5 à, prep. 6 *dire*, v. 4.  
do you seek for 1 your hat 2 ? 1 *chercher*, v. i. 2 *chapeau*,  
here it 3 is. n. m. 3 *le*, pron. conj.

## Of V E R B S.

What remains to be said upon the *French Verbs*, will be comprised under the following heads, *viz.*

I. French Verbs conjugated without *pas* or point.

## R U L E I.

*Pas* or *point* must be left out, when a negative word is placed after *ne*, as

<i>Je ne veux plus lui par'er.</i>	I will speak to him no more.
<i>je ne veux jamais le voir.</i>	I will never see him.
<i>je ne connais personne qui blame ses actions.</i>	I know no body who blames his actions.
<i>je n'ai rien dit.</i>	I have said nothing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I have nothing 1 to 2 do 3. 1 *Rien*, n. m. 2 à, prep.  
there 1 is nothing more 1 de- 3 *faire*, v. 5.  
ceitful 2 than your pro- 1 *il n'y a rien de plus*. 2 *tram-  
testations* 3 of friendship 4. 3 *peur*, adj. 3 *protestation*, n.  
f. 4 *amitié*, n. f.

has he done nothing that 1 1 *qui*. 2 *mériter*, v. i. 3 *mort*,  
deserves 2 death 3 ? n. f.

H 2 have

148 EXERCISES upon the

have you never<sup>1</sup> seen<sup>2</sup> him?  
will you never leave<sup>1</sup> your  
bad<sup>2</sup> habits<sup>3</sup>?

we ought<sup>1</sup> never to reveal<sup>2</sup>  
the secret<sup>3</sup>, which<sup>4</sup> has  
been intrusted<sup>5</sup> to us

time<sup>1</sup> past<sup>2</sup> is no<sup>3</sup> more<sup>3</sup>.

you are no more the same<sup>1</sup>  
man<sup>2</sup>.

he loves<sup>1</sup> neither<sup>2</sup> to<sup>3</sup>  
give<sup>4</sup> nor to receive<sup>5</sup>.

I have neither relations<sup>1</sup> nor  
friends<sup>2</sup>.

I find<sup>1</sup> no body<sup>2</sup> who<sup>3</sup>  
pretends<sup>4</sup> to have seen it.

we have no<sup>1</sup> desire<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup>  
hurt<sup>3</sup> you.

1 jamais, adv. 2 voir, v. 3.  
1 quitter, v. 1. 2 mauvais,  
adj. 3 habitude, n. f.

1 devoir, v. 3. 2 révéler, v. 1.  
3 secret, n. m. 4 qui. 5 con-  
sider, v. 1.

1 temps, n. m. 2 passer, v. 1.  
3 plus, adv.

1 même, adj. 2 homme, n. m.

1 aimer, v. 1. 2 ni. 3 à, prep.  
4 donner, v. 1. 5 recevoir,  
v. 3.

1 parent, plur. ens, n. m.  
2 ami, n. m.

1 trouver, v. 1. 2 personne,  
n. m. 3 qui. 4 prétendre,  
v. 6.

1 aucune envie. 2 de, prep.  
3 nuire, v. 4.

R U L E II.

It must be left out after the comparatives *plus*, *more*, and *moins*, *less*, and the pronoun *autre*, *another*, as

*Il est plus grand qu'il ne faut.* It is taller than it ought to be.  
*vous êtes autre que je ne croyois.* you are another man than I  
thought.

Exercises upon this Rule.

This room<sup>1</sup> is three<sup>2</sup> times<sup>2</sup>  
less<sup>3</sup> than it ought<sup>4</sup> to  
be<sup>4</sup>.

the weather<sup>1</sup> is less<sup>2</sup> cold<sup>3</sup>  
to day<sup>4</sup> than it was yester-  
day<sup>5</sup>.

the harvest<sup>1</sup> will be less plen-  
tiful<sup>2</sup> this<sup>3</sup> year<sup>3</sup> than  
it was last<sup>4</sup> year<sup>4</sup>.

she is another<sup>1</sup> woman<sup>1</sup>  
than he<sup>2</sup> takes her to be<sup>2</sup>.

1 Chambre, n. f. 2 trois fois.  
3 plus petite. 4 ne devroit  
être.

1 tems, n. m. 2 moins. 3 froid,  
adj. 4 aujourd'hui, adv.  
5 bier, adv.

1 moisson, n. f. 2 abondant,  
adj. 3 cette année. 4 l'année  
dernière.

1 autre. 2 il ne pense.

## R U L E III.

It must be left out after the Verb *empêcher*, to hinder, as also after Verbs denoting fear, when we speak of a thing we do not wish, as

- |                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>J'ai empêché qu'il ne se tuât.</i> | I have hindered him to kill himself. |
| <i>je crains qu'il ne me blesse.</i>  | I fear he should hurt me.            |

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| I have hindered him 1 to ex-<br>ecute 2 the bad 3 designs 4<br>which 5 he had formed 6<br>against 7 you.                                 | 1 <i>Qu'il n'exécutât.</i> 2 <i>mauvais,</i><br>adj. 3 <i>déssein,</i> n. m. 4 <i>qui.</i><br>5 <i>former,</i> v. i. 6 <i>contre,</i><br>prep.  |
| I fear very 1 much 2, that 3<br>the bad examples 4, which 5<br>he has every 6 day 7<br>make him 8 forsake 9 the<br>path 10 of virtue 11. | 1 <i>beaucoup,</i> adv. 2 <i>que.</i> 3 <i>ex-<br/>emple,</i> n. m. 4 <i>que.</i> 5 <i>tous<br/>les jours.</i> 6 <i>devant les yeux.</i><br>7 <i>ne lui faissent.</i> 8 <i>abandon-<br/>ner,</i> v. i. 9 <i>chemin,</i> n. m.<br>10 <i>vertu,</i> n. f. |

## R U L E IV.

It must be left out after the Verb *il y a*, followed by a Verb in the time past, as

- Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu.* there are ten years since I saw him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| There are three 1 years since 2<br>I spoke 3 to my best 4<br>friend 5.                      | 1 <i>trois,</i> adj. 2 <i>que je n'ai parlé.</i><br>3 <i>meilleur,</i> adj. 4 <i>ami,</i> n. m.  |
| there were two 1 months 2<br>since I 3 had eat 4 grapes 5,<br>when 6 you gave 7 me<br>some. | 1 <i>deux,</i> adj. 2 <i>mois,</i> n. m. 3 <i>je<br/>n'avois mangé.</i> 4 <i>raisin,</i><br>n. m. 5 <i>quand,</i> conj. 6 <i>don-<br/>ner,</i> v. i. |

## R U L E V.

It is left out of the phrases, wherein *de* signifies a space of time, as

## 150 EXERCISES upon the

*Je ne le verrai de ma vie.*I shall never see him whilst  
I live.*Exercises upon this Rule.*I shall not speak 1 to him 1 *Parler*, v. 1. 2 *de deux*  
these 2 two days 2. *jours*.we shall not set out 1 for 3 1 *partir*, v. 2. 2 *de quinze*  
our country-house 4 this 2 *jours*. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *maison*  
fortnight 2. *de campagne*.

## R U L E VI.

It must be left out before *que*, but, nothing but, as  
*J'en'ai que deux mots à dire.* I have but two words to say.*Exercises upon this Rule.*He does 1 nothing but laugh 2. 1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *rire*, v. 4.  
do you know 1 nothing but 1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *ce que*. 3 *ap-*  
what 2 you have learned 3 *prendre*, v. 6. 4 *ce matin*.  
this 4 morning 4?

## R U L E VII.

It must be left out after such Conjunctions as are rendered  
into English by *unless*, as*A moins que vous ne commandiez.* Unless you command.*Exercises upon this Rule.*you won't succeed 1, unless 2 1 *Reussir*, v. 2. 2 *à moins que*.  
you go 3 yourself 4 to 3 *aller*, v. 1. 4 *vous-même*,  
Paris. pron. nom.a body 1 has no motion 2, 1 *corps*, n. m. 2 *mouvement*,  
unless it receives 3 it from 4 n.m. 3 *recevoir*, v. 3. 4 *de*,  
another 5. 5 *autre*, pron. nom.

## R U L E VIII.

It must be left out after *que*, why, as*Que ne parlez-vous?* Why don't you speak?*Exercises upon this Rule.*Why don't you answer 1 1 *Répondre*, v. 6. 2 *à ses ob-*  
his 2 objections 2? *jections*.why don't you behave 1 bet- 1 *se comporter*, v. 1. 2 *mieux*,  
ter 2? adv.

## R U L E IX.

Lastly, it must be left out, whenever the word *personne*, no body, is used in the phrase, as

*Il n'y a ici personne de ma connoissance.* There is no body of my acquaintance here.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

No body knows 1 whether 2 1 *Savoir*, v. 3. 2 *si*, conj.  
he is worthy 3 of love 4 3 *digne*, adj. 4 *amour*, n.  
or 5 hatred 6. 5 *ou*, conj. 6 *baine*, n. f.  
pride 1 becomes 2 no body. 1 *argueil*, n. m. 2 *convenir à*,  
v. 2.

a good 1 Christian 2 hates 3 1 *bon*, adj. 2 *cbrétien*, n. m.  
no body. 3 *haïr*, v. 2.

II. *Of the Verb, and its Nominative Cases.*

## R U L E I.

When *Qui* is nominative to a Verb, that Verb must be of the same person with the word to which *Qui* has a relation, as

*C'est lui qui m'a parlé.*  
*c'est vous qui le refusez.*  
*c'est moi qui ai fait cela.*

It is he who spoke to me.  
it is you who refuse it.  
it is I who have done that.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

I am the Lord 1 thy God 2, 1 *Seigneur*, n. m. 2 *Dieu*, n.  
who 3 brought 4 thee 3 *qui*. 4 *retirer*, v. 1.  
out 4 of the land 5 of E- 5 *terre*, n. f. 6 *Egipte*, n. f.  
gypt 6.

he 1 who 2 cannot 3 keep 4 1 *celui*. 2 *qui*. 3 *ne savoit*.  
a secret 5, is unfit 6 to go- 4 *garder*, v. 1. 5 *secret*, n.  
vern 7. 5 *incapable*, adj. 6 *gou-  
verner*, v. 1.

you who are 1 willing 1 to 2 1 *vouloir*, v. 3. 2 *qu'on vous  
obéisse*. 3, *vous ne devez*  
be obeyed 2, should 3 com- *commander*. 4 *rien*, n. m.  
mand 3 nothing 4 unjust 5. 5 *injuste*, adj.

## RULE II.

Many Nouns singu'ar will have the Verb in the plural,  
as

*Le roi & la reine viennent d'ar-  
river.* The king and queen are just  
arrived.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Wit 1 and good 2 sense 2  
are preferable 3 to beau-  
ty 4.

patience 1 and perseverānce 2  
are virtues 3 often 4 ne-  
cessary 5.

a loving 2 wife 1, and a grate-  
ful 4 daughter 3, make 5  
all 6 the pleasure 7 of his  
life 8.

1 *Esprit*, n. m. 2 *jugement*,  
n. m. 3 *préférable*, adj.  
4 *beauté*, n. f.

1 *patience*, n. f. 2 *persévérence*,  
n. f. 3 *vertu*, n. f. 4 *sou-  
vent*, adv. 5 *nécessaire*, adj.  
1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *qui l'aime*.  
3 *fille*, n. f. 4 *reconnaisant*,  
adj. 5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *tout*,  
adj. 7 *plaisir*, n. m. 8 *vie*,  
n. f.

## RULE III.

When a Verb has nominatives of different persons, it must  
agree with the first person rather than the second, and the  
second rather than the third, as

*Vous & moi nous sommes d'ac-  
cord.* You and I are agreed.

*vous & lui savez la chose.* you and he know the thing.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

You and I believe 1 that 2  
happiness 3 does not con-  
sist 4 only 5 in 6 riches 6.

my wife 1 and I are resolv-  
ed 2 to 3. lo. e 4 each  
other 4 till 5 death 5.

you and he know 1 better 2  
than I, what 3 you have  
to 4 do 5.

1 *Croire*, v. 5. 2 *que*. 3 *féli-  
cité*, n. f. 4 *consister*, v. 1.  
5 *seulement*, adv. 6 *dans les  
richesses*.

1 *femme*, n. f. 2 *résoudre*, v. 5.  
3 *de*, prep. 4 *nous aimer*.  
5 *jusqu'à la mort*.  
1 *savoir*, v. 3. 2 *mieux*, adv.  
3 *ce que*, pron. nom. 4 *à*,  
prep. 5 *faire*, v. 5.

## RULE E

## R U L E IV.

When a Verb has two or more nominative cases, and the conjunction *ni* is placed before every one of them, that Verb must be used in the singular, as

*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne prétend l'avoir fait.* Neither the one nor the other pretends to have done it.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The prince 1 and his minister 2 have their reasons 3 to 4 act 5 as 6 they do 6; but 7 neither the one nor the other is obliged 8 to 9 discover 10 them.

my brother 1 and sister 2 know 3 good 4 news 5; but neither the one nor the other is willing 6 to tell 7 them.

1 Prince, n. m. 2 ministre, n. m.  
3 raison, n. f. 4 pour, prep.  
5 agir, v. 2. 6 comme ils font.  
7 mais, conj. 8 obliger, v. 1.  
9 de, prep. 10 decouvrir,  
v. 2.

1 frere, n. m. 2 sœur, n. f.  
3 savoir, v. 3. 4 bon, né, adj.  
5 nouvel/e, n. f. 6 vouloir,  
v. 3. 7 dire, v. 4.

## R U L E V.

But if *ni* is only used once, and placed between the nominative cases, the Verb must be in the plural, as

*La prospérité ni l'adversité ne sont point capables de le changer.* Neither prosperity nor adversity can change him.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The disinterested 2 man 1 and 3 sincere 5 friend 4 seldom 6 approach 6 the throne 7.

the liars 1 and 2 drunkards 3 shall not enter 4 into 5 the kingdom 6 of heaven 7.

1 Homme, n. m. 2 désintéressé,  
adj. 3 ni. 4 ami, n. m.  
5 sincère, adj. 6 ne approchent  
gueres du. 7 trône, n. m.

1 menteur, n. m. 2 ni. 3 ivrogne,  
n. m. 4 entrer, v. 1. 5 dans,  
prep. 6 royaume, n. m.  
7 des cieux.

## III. Of Verbs having in French two Nominative Cases, altho' they have but one in English.

## R U L E.

The last of these nominatives may be either singular or plural, altho' the verb must always be in the singular, as

*Il est arrivé aujourd'hui un grand malheur.*

*il y a cent milles d'ici à Bristol.*

*il me vient une pensée.*

*il y a des gens qui soutiennent une opinion contraire à la vôtre.*

A great misfortune has happened to day.

there are a hundred miles from hence to Bristol.

a thought comes into my head.

there are some people who maintain an opinion contrary to yours.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

An express 3 came 1 yesterday 2, who 4 brought 5 us very agreeable 7 news 6.

has any 2 misfortune 2 happened 1 in 3 your family 4? there come 1 every 2 day 2 some 3 people 3 from the army 4, who 5 tell 6 us that 7 our soldiers 8 are full 9 of spirit 10.

there are 1 a thousand 2 men 2, who speak 3 of eloquence 4 without 5 knowing what it is 5.

I got rid 1 of my tutors 2, until 3 one 5 such as I wanted 5 came 4 to present himself 4.

as signor 1 Rolando ended 2 these words 3, there 4 appeared 4 in 5 the saloon 6 1x 7 new 8 faces 9.

1 Arriver, v. i. 2 bier, adv.  
3 courrier, n. m. 4 qui,  
5 apporter, v. i. 6 nouvelle,  
n. f. 7 agréable, adj.

1 arriver, v. i. 2 du malheur,  
3 dans, prep. 4 famille, n. f.

1 venir, v. 2. 2 tous les jours,  
3 des gens. 4 armée, n. f.  
5 qui, 6 dire, v. 4. 7 que.  
8 soldat, n. m. 9 plein, adj.  
10 courage, n. m.

1 il y a. 2 mille grns. 3 parler,  
v. i. 4 éloquence, n. f.  
5 sans savoir ce que c'est.

1 se débarasser, v. i. 2 précepteur, n. m. 3 jusqu'à ce quid. 4 il vint s'en présenter,  
5 un tel qu'il me falloit.

1 seigneur, n. m. 2 achever, v. i.  
3 parolo, n. f. 4 il paraît  
5 dans prep. 6 Fallon, n. m.  
7 six, adj. 8 nouveau, plur.  
taux, adj. 9 visage, n. m.

IV. Of the Verb *être* having *ce* for one of its Nominate Cases.

## R U L E I.

When the verb *être* has *ce*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, for one of its nominatives, this Verb is used in the singular, whether the other nominative be singular or plural, as

<i>C'est moi qui le dis.</i>	It is I who say so.
<i>est ce vous qui l'avez fait ?</i>	is it you who have done it ?
<i>examinez cette jeune dame qui occupe le premier étage. C'est une veuve ; &amp; l'homme que vous voyez avec elle est son oncle.</i>	confider that young lady who lives on the first floor. She is a widow ; and the man whom you see with her is her uncle.
<i>sera-ce vous autres qui prendrez soin de ma fille ?</i>	will it be you who will take care of my daughter ?

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Let us observe 1 first 2 in 3 that house 4 on 5 the right hand 6 that old 7 man 8 who tells 9 his money 10. He is a rich 11 and stingy 12 citizen 13, who would not spend 14 a penny 15 to 16 save a man's life 17.

I know 1 Miss A — she is a girl 2 of 3 seventeen or eighteen 3, very ugly 4 and very ill 5 shaped 6.

was it you who visited 1 him in his sickness 2, and comforted 3 him in his affliction 4?

it was we who paid 1 his 2 expences 3, and gave 3 him money to 4 return 5 to 6 his own country 6.

1 *Observer*, v. i. 2 *d'abord*, adv. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *maison*, n. f. 5 *à main droite*. 6 *vieillard*, n. m. 7 *compter*, v. i. 8 *argent*, n. m. 9 *citoyen*, n. m. 10 *riche*, adj. 11 *avare*, adj. 12 *dépenser*, v. i. 13 *sou*, n. m. 14 *peur* *sauver la vie d'un homme*.

1 *connoître*, v. 5. 2 *fille*, n. f. 3 *de dix sept à dix huit ans*. 4 *laid*, adj. 5 *mal fâché*.

1 *visiter*, v. i. 2 *maladie*, n. f. 3 *consoler*, v. i. 4 *affliction*, n. f.

1 *payer*, v. i. 2 *sa dépense*. 3 *donner*, v. i. 4 *pour* prep. 5 *retourner*, v. i. 7 *dans* *son pays*.

156 EXERCISES upon the  
RULE II.

But if the second nominative is in the plural, and the verb *être* in the single tenses, this Verb must be used in the third person plural, as

*Ce sont de bonnes gens.*  
*ce furent eux qui remportèrent la victoire.*  
*ce seront les saints qui vivront éternellement.*

They are good people.  
it was they who got the victory.  
the saints will live for ever.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Oh! for 1 these three 2, they are devils 3 of 4, the first rank 4, they are spirits 5 of court 6, they enter 7 into 8 the counsels 9 of princes 10, spirit up 11 the ministers 12, occasion 13 insurrections 14 in the provinces 15 and kindle 16 the flambeaux 17 of war 18.

it 1 was I 1 who had a 2 right 2 to 3 complain 3, and it 4 was they 4 who complained 5.

1 *Pour*, prep. 2 *trois*, adj.  
3 *diable*, n. m. 4 *du premier ordre*. 5 *esprit*, n. m. 6 *cour*, n. f. 7 *entrer*, v. i. 8 *dans*, prep. 9 *conseil*, n. m.  
10 *prince*, n. m. 11 *animer*, v. i. 12 *ministre*, n. m. 13 *exciter*, v. i. 14 *soulevem- ment*, plur. *ens*, n. m. 15 *dans les provinces*. 16 *allumer*, v. i. 17 *flambeau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 18 *guerre*, n. f.  
1 *c'étoit moi*. 2 *droit*. 3 *de me plaindre*. 4 *ce furent eux*. 5 *se plaindre*, v. 6.

V. Of the Verbs Impersonal *il y a*, *il est*, and *il fait*.

R U L E I.

The verb *il y a*, there is, there are, often denotes a certain time, space, or number, as

*Il y a deux jours qu'il est malade.*

*Il y a quatre milles de Londres à Putney.*

*Il y a trois soldats chez nous.*

He has been sick these two days.

there are four miles from London to Putney.

there are three soldiers at our house.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There are six 1 thousand 2 years 3 since 4 the world 5 has been created 6.

there are five 1 weeks 2 since our fleet 3 set 4 sail 4 for 5 America 6.

there are thirty 1 miles 2 from 3 London to 4 Chelmsford.

there are many 1 who call 2 themselves 3 christians 3, and are unworthy 4 of the name 5 which 6 they bear 7.

there were nine 1 persons 2 in 3 Noah's 5 ark 4.

1 *Six mille*, adj. und. 2 *an*, n. m. 3 *que*. 4 *monde*, n. m. 5 *créer*, v. t.

1 *cinq*, adj. und. 2 *semaine*, n. f. 3 *flote*, n. f. 4 *une* partie. 5 *pour*, prep. 6 *A-* mérique, n. f.

1 *trente*, adj. und. 2 *mille*, n. m. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *à*, prep.

1 *plusieurs*, adj. plur. 2 *se font appeler*. 3 *chrétien*, n. m. 4 *indigne*, adj. 5 *nom*, n. m. 6 *que*. 7 *porter*, v. t.

1 *neuf*, adj. und. 2 *personne*, n. f. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *arche*, n. f. 5 *Noé*, n. m.

## R U L E II.

The verb *il y a* is sometimes followed by an infinitive with the preposition *à* before it, as *il y a à espérer qu'il se corrigera*, it is to be hoped that he will mend.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is to be hoped 1 that 2 the Duke 3 will recover 4 of this distemper 5.

it is to be feared 1 that 2 he will die 2 before 3 he has 3 time 4 to 5 make 6 his will 7.

1 *Espérer*, v. t. 2 *que*. 3 *duc*, n. m. 4 *revenir*, v. 2.

5 *maladie*, n. f. 1 *croire*, v. 6. 2 *qu'il ne meure*. 3 *avant d'avoir*. 4 *tems*, n. m. 5 *de*, prep. 6 *faire*, v. 5. 7 *testament*, n. m.

## R U L E III.

The verb *il y a* may be used before most French nouns, as

*Y a-t-il de l'argent dans votre bourse?* Is there any money in your purse?

*il n'y a point de basseſſe à par- there is no meanness in for-  
donner.*

*il n'y a rien de bon au marché.* there is nothing good in the  
market.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There is nothing for 1 you 1 Pour, prep. 2 dans, prep.  
in 2 this letter 3. 3 lettre, n. f.

are there any 1 carps 1 in 2 1 des carpes. 2 dans. 3 rivière,  
this river 3 ? n. f.

are there any 1 dialogues 1 1 des dialogues. 2 grammaire,  
in your grammar 2 ? n. f.

there is nothing to 1 get 1 1 à gagner. 2 avec, prep.  
with 2 beggars 3. 3 gueux, n. m.

there is no honour 1 in 2 re- 1 honneur, n. m. 2 à se venger.  
venging one's self 2 of a 3 femme, n. f. 4 quelque  
woman 3, whatever 4 of-  
fence she has given 4. tort qu'elle ait.

R U L E IV.

The verb impersonal *il est*, it is, is joined to the adjectives, in order to shew that what is meant by these adjectives becomes what is afterwards expressed in the sentence, as

*Il est certain que l'armée Fran- It is certain that the French  
çaise a été battue.* army has been defeated.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it certain that 1 peace 2 1 que. 2 paix, n. f. 3 se faire,  
will be made 3 this year 4? v. 5. 4 année, n. f.

it is glorious 1 to 2 die 3 2 glorieux, adj. 2 de, prep.  
for 4 one's country 5. 3 mourir, v. 2. 4 pour, prep.  
5 patrie, n. f.

it is good 1 to shew 2 to 3 1 bon, adj. 2 de montrer.  
conceited men 3, that 4 3 aux esprits suffisants. 4 que.  
they have more pride 5 5 orgueil, n. m. 6 babiléti,  
than skill 6. n. f.

R U L E V.

The verb impersonal *il fait*, it is, is used with such adjectives as denote the disposition of the air, as *il fait chaud*, it is hot.

*Exercises*

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

Is it fine 1 wheather 2 ?  
it is dark 1.  
is it cold 1 ?

**1 Beau**, adj. 2 **tems**, n. m.  
**1 obscur**, adj.  
**1 froid**, adj.

## VI. Of the Verb *Impersonal*, il faut.

This verb is thus conjugated, *il faut*, *il faloit*, *il fallut*, *il faudra*, *il faudroit*, *qu'il faille*, *qu'il fallut*. As it is one of the most necessary French verbs, I must be a little particular upon it.

**R U L E I.**

The verb *il faut* is englisch'd sometimes by the verb *must*; sometimes by the words *necessary*, *requisite*, and *needful* joined to the verb *to be*; and sometimes by the verbs *shall* and *should*, as

*Il faut que vous me le disiez.  
il faut l'écrire.  
il faut que vous l'achettiez.  
il ne faut pas être ingrat.*

You must tell it me.  
it is necessary to write it.  
you shall buy it.  
one should not be ungrateful.

By which examples it appears that *il faut* requires after it either the conjunctive with the conjunction *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition.

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

We must do 1 our duty 2.	1 Faire, v. 5. 2 devoir, n. m.
one must think 1 before 2 one speaks 2.	1 penser, v. 1. 2 avant que de farler.
must we 1 begin again 1 what 2 we have done 4 so 3 well 3?	1 que nous recommencions. 2 ce que. 3 si bien. 4 faire, v. 5.
when 1 one has deviated 1 from 2 the 2 path 3 of vir- tue 4, one must endeavour 5 to 6 get into it again 6.	1 quand on s'est écarté. 2 du. 3 sentier, n. m. 4 vertu, n. f. 5 tâcher, v. 1. 6 d'y rentrer.
if 1 you have 2 a mind 2 to 3 be esteemed 3, you must do your duty.	1 si, conj. 2 vouloir, v. 1. 3 qu'en vous estime.

### **children**

## 160 EXERCISES upon the

children 1 must do what 2	1 enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 2 ce qu'on leur commande.
they are bid 2.	
it was necessary to go 1 to Rome.	1 aller, v. i. 2 Rome, n. m.
is 1 it necessary for me to do 1 what must 2 be undone 2?	1 faut-il que je fasse. 2 il faut défaire.
you shall learn 1 your lesson 2.	1 apprendre, v. 6. 2 leçon, n. f.
you shall not go out 1.	1 sortir, v. 2.
one should not be ungrateful 1.	1 ingrat, adj.
when 1 one has nothing good to say 1, one 2 should 2 be 3 silent 3.	1 quand on n'a rien de bon à dire. 2 il faut. 3 garder le silence.

### R U L E II.

The Verb *faut*, is sometimes englisch'd by *must have* or *want*; and if it is *I, thou, he, she, we, you, or they*, who must have or want, we ought to use the conjunctive pronouns in the dative, as,

*Il me faut des bas.*

I must have stockings.

*il nous faut des troupes.*

We want troops.

*il leur faut des habits.*

They want cloaths.

### Exercises upon this Rule.

I must have a pen 1, ink 2, and paper 3.	1 plume, n. f. 2 encre, n. f. 3 papier, n. m.
thou must have a better 1 horse 2.	1 meilleur, adj. 2 cheval, n. m.
he must have a small 1 house 2.	1 petit, adj. 2 maison, n. f.
she must have a pair 1 of gloves 2.	1 paire, n. f. 2 gant, n. m.
we must have better officers 1.	1 officier, n. m.
ye want some 1 good 2 books 3.	1 quelque, adj. 2 bon, adj. 3 livre, n. m.
they want a better master 1.	1 maître, n. m.

### R U L E III.

The same Verb is used absolutely at the end of a phrase, with the conjunction *comme*, or the pronoun *ce que*, as

Faiths

*Faites mon habit comme il faut.* Make my coat as it should be.  
*prenez ce qu'il vous faut.* take what you must have.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Do 1 your work 2 again 1 ;<br>it is not as it should be.                | 1 <i>Refaire</i> , v. 5. 2 <i>ouvrages</i> ,<br>n. m.                               |
| do 1 the things 2 as they<br>should be ; and I shall be<br>satisfied 3. | 1 <i>faire</i> , v. 5. <i>chose</i> , n. f. 3 <i>sa-</i><br><i>tisfaire</i> , v. 5. |
| I have told 1 him what 2 I<br>should 3.                                 | 1 <i>dire</i> , v. 4. 2 <i>ce que</i> . 3 <i>il fa-<br/>loit</i> .                  |
- 

*Regimen of French Verbs.*

By the Regimen of a Verb, I mean a Noun or Pronoun, expressing what the action or signification of that Verb has a relation to ; for instance, when I say, *I hate vice*, one may see that my action of hating is related to *vice*. Again, when I say, *we profit by their example*, one may see that the meaning of the Verb *we profit*, is related to *their example*. Therefore, *vice* is the regimen of the Verb *I hate* in the first sentence, and *by their example* is that of the Verb *we profit* in the second.

There are two sorts of regimen, viz. the absolute and the relative, the first being the nominative or accusative, and the other the genitive, dative, or ablative.

**I. Verbs Active.**

**R U L E I.**

The active Verb governs the accusative, as

*Un bon sujet aime son roi.* A good subject loves his king.  
*l'arbre, que vous avez vu, pro-* the tree which you have seen.  
*duit d'excellent fruit.* produces excellent fruit.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Wisdom 1 hath builded 2 her<br>house 3, she has hewn out 4 | 1 <i>Sageffe</i> , n. f. 2 <i>bâtir</i> , v. 2.<br>3 <i>maison</i> , n. f. 4 <i>tailler</i> , v.<br>her |
|--|---|

162 EXERCISES upon the  
her seven 5 pillars 6.

the people 1 shall curse 2 him 3 that 3 withholdeth 4 corn 5 ; but 6 blessing 7 shall be upon 8 the head 9 of him that felleth 10 it.

a wife 2 son 1 heareth 3 his father's 5 instruction 4 ; but a scorner 6 heareth not rebuke 7.

a 1 good man 1 leaveth 2 an inheritance 3 to his children's 4 children.

the Lord 1 will destroy 2 the house of the proud 3 , but he will establish 4 the borders 5 of the widow 6.

the Lord is far 1 from the wicked 2 ; but he heareth the prayer 3 of the righteous 4.

the Lord has made 1 all 2 things 3 for 4 himself 5.

he 1 that 1 justifieth 2 the wicked, and he that condemneth 3 the just 4 , even 5 they both are abomination to the Lord 5.

a merry 2 heart 1 does 3 good 4 like 5 a medicine 6 ; but a 7 broken spirit 7 drieth 8 the bones 9.

a man 1 that has friends 2 , must 3 shew himself 4 friendly 5.

1 people, n. m. 2 maudit, v. 4-3 celui qui. 4 retenir, v. 2. 5 bled, n. m. 6 mais, conj. 7 bénédiction, n. f. 8 sur, prep. 9 tête, n. f. 10 vendre, v. 6.

1 fils, n. m. 2 sage, adj. 3 écouter, v. i. 4 instruction, n. f. 5 pere, n. m. 6 modueur, n. m. 7 réprimande, n. f.

1 honnête homme. 2 laisser, v. 1. 3 héritage, n. m. 4 enfant, plur. ans, n. m.

3 Seigneur, n. m. 2 détruire, v. 4. 3 orgueilleux, n. m. 4 affirmer, v. 2. 5 les limites, 6 veuve, n. f.

3 Loin. 2 méchant, plur. ans, n. m. 3 priere, n. f. 4 juste, n. m.

1 faire, v. 5. 2 tout, adj. chose, n. f. 4 pour, prep. 5 lui-même, pron. nom.

1 celui qui. 2 justifier, v. i. 3 condamner, v. i. 4 juste, adj. 5 sont en abomination devant le Seigneur.

1 cœur, n. m. 2 joyeux, adj. 3 faire, v. 5. 4 du bien. 5 comme. 6 médecine, n. f. 7 un esprit abattu. 8 dessécher, v. i. 9 os, n. m.

1 homme, n. m. 2 ami, n. m. 3 devoir, v. 3. 4 se montrer, v. i. 5 porté à faire du bien.

R U L E

## RULE II.

The same Verb governs also the dative, as  
*Il a donné du pain aux pauvres.* He has given bread to the poor.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Is it lawful 1 to 2 give 3 tribute 4 to Cesar 5, or not 6?

They brought 1 me the 2 tribute money 2; and they brought 3 him a penny 4.

render 1 to Cesar, the 2 things which are Cesar's 2, and to God 3, the 4 things that are God's 4.

do 1 good 2 to them that hate 3 you.

give 1 us this 2 day 2 our daily 4 bread 3.

forgive 1 us our trespasses 2, as 3 we forgive them 4 that 4 trespass 5 against 5 us.

if 1 you forgive men 2 their trespasses, your heavenly 4 father 3 will also 5 forgive you; but 6 if you forgive not men 7 their trespasses, neither 8 will your father forgive 8 your trespasses.

give not that 1 which 1 is holy 2 to the dogs 3.

discover 1 not your secret 2 to those 3 who 4 have a 5 mind 5 to 6 betray 7 you.

1 permis. 2 de, prep. 3 payer, v. l. 4 le tribut. 5 à Cesar. 6 ou non.

1 montrer, v. l. 2 l'argent du tribut. 3 apporter, v. l. 4 sou, n. m.

1 rendre, v. 6. 2 ce qui appartient à César. 3 Dieu, n. m. 4 ce qui appartient à Dieu.

1 faire, v. 5. 2 du bien. 3 bair v. 2.

1 donner, v. 1. 2 aujourd'hui, adv. 3 pain, n. m. 4 quotidien, adj.

1 pardonner, v. l. 2 offense, n. f. 3 comme. 4 à ceux qui. 5 offencer, v. l.

1 si, conj. 2 aux hommes. 3 pere, n. m. 4 celeste, adj. 5 aussi, conj. 6 mais, conj. 7 aux hommes. 8 votre pere ne vous pardonnera point non plus.

1 ce qui, pron. nom. 2 saint, adj. 3 cbien, n. m.

1 découvrir, v. 2. 2 secret, n. m. 3 à ceux. 4 qui. 5 envie. 6 de, prep. 7 trahir, v. 2.

## II. Verbs passive.

## RULE I.

Such verbs passive as denote the inward actions of the soul commonly govern the genitive or ablative, as

*Il est aimé de tout le monde.* He is loved by every body.  
*Il est hâti du prince.* he is hated by the prince.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

I am reading 1 a book 2, which 3 is esteemed 4 by all 5 the connoisseurs 6.

the man 1, whom 2 I recommend 3 to you, is loved 4 and esteemed 5 by all those 6 who 6 know 7 him.

our sovereign 1 behaves 2 so 3 wisely 3, that 4 he is respected 5 even by those 6 who 6 don't love 7 him.  
 if 1 he is not loved by his subjects 2, he is feared 3 by them; and that 4 is sufficient for him 4.

1 lire, v. 4. 2 livre, n. m.  
 3 qui. 4 estimer, v. 1. 5 tout,  
 plur. tous, adj. 9 connois-  
 seur, n. m.

1 homme, n. m. 2 que. 3 re-  
 commander, v. 1. 4 aim-,  
 v. 1. 5 ceux. 6 qui. 7 con-  
 noître, v. 5.

1 souverain, n. m. 2 se con-  
 duire, v. 4. 3 si sagement,  
 4 que. 5 respecter, v. 1.  
 6 ceux qui. 7 aimer, v. 1.  
 1 si, conj. 2 sujet, n. m.  
 3 craindre, v. 6. 4 cela lui  
 suffit.

## RULE II.

Such verbs passive as denote outward actions, commonly govern the accusative with the preposition *par*, as

*Il a été tué par son propre fils.* He was killed by his own son.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

Cæsar 1 was killed 2 in 3 the senate-house 4 by those 5 he had loaded 6 with 6 kindnesses 6.

it 1 is reported 1 that Baby-  
 lon 2, the 3 capital city 3,

1 César, n. m. 2 tuer, v. 1.  
 3 en plein sénat. 4 ceux qui.  
 5 combler, v. 1. 6 de biens  
 faits.

1 on dit. 2 Babilone, n. f.  
 3 capitale, n. f. 4 empire, n. m.

of the empire 4. of Assyria 5.,  
was founded 6 by Semiramis.

Great 1 Britain 1 was formerly 2 inhabited 3 by the Bretons 4 and Picts 5. Westminster 2 bridge 1 has been built 3 by a very skilful 4 architect 5.

5 *Affirie*, n. f. 6 *fonder*, v. i.

1 *la Grande Bretagne*. 2 *autrefois*. 3 *habiter*, v. i. 4 *Breton*, n. m. 5 *Picte*, n. m. 1 *pont*, n. m. 2 *Westminster*, n. m. 3 *bâtir*, v. 2. 4 *babile*, adj. 5 *architecte*, n. m.

## R U L E III.

Verbs passive denoting actions, that come both from the body and mind, may govern the genitive and ablative, or the accusative with the preposition *par*, as *il est loué de*, or *par beaucoup de gens*, he is praised by many people.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

The duke 1 of Randan, as 2 he left 2 Hanover 3, did 4 an action 5 that 6 was praised 7 by his enemies 8. the prince 1, as 2 he entered the city 2, was congratulated 3 by the citizens 4.

1 *duc*, n. m. 2 *en quittant*. 3 *Hanovre*, n. m. 4 *faire*, v. i. 5 *action*, n. f. 6 *qui*. 7 *louer*, v. i. 8 *ennemi*, n. m. 1 *prince*, n. m. 2 *en entrant dans la ville*. 3 *féliciter*, v. i. 4 *bourgeois*, n. m.

Each of the foregoing exercises ought to make two sentences; in the first whereof, the verb passive will govern the genitive, or ablative; and in the last the accusative, with the preposition *par*.

The last rule not being general, I must here advise the learner, to make the verbs contained therein govern the accusative with the preposition *par*. In so doing, they cannot mistake; whereas they might use the genitive or ablative with a verb that governs neither of those two cases.

III. *Verbs Neuter and Reflected.*

## R U L E I.

The absolute regimen of these verbs is the nominative, as

*Il paroît tout changé.  
il se tient droit.*

He seems to be quite changed.  
he stands upright.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

This cloth 1 seems 2 good 3 to me, you may buy 4 it upon 5 my word 5.

the school 1 has been useful 2 to your grandson 3. He grows 4 tall 5, and appears 6 a 7 better scholar 7 than he was six 8 months ago 8.

what 1 is it that 1 disturbs 2 you ? you seem quite 3 different from what you was 3 yesterday 4.

1 drap, n. m. 2 paroître, v. 5.  
3 bon, adj. 4 acheter, v. 1.  
5 sur ma parole.

1 école, n. f. 2 utile, adj.  
3 petit fils, n. m. 4 devenir  
v. 2. 5 grand, adj. 6 paroître,  
v. 5. 7 plus savant. 8 il  
a six mois.

1 qu'est-ce qui. 2 chaginer,  
v. 1. 3 tout autre que vous  
n'étiez. 4 hier, adv.

R U L E II.

The relative regimen of the same verbs is the dative, as

*Ce tableau plaît à ma soeur,*

This picture pleases my sister

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It is not surprising 1 that 2 I don't love 3 this woman 4, she displeases 5 every 6 body 6.

I am not a judge 1 of verses 2; here 3 are some 3 that 4 please 5 me; do you think 6 that they are good 7?

here 1 is one 1 of the finest 2 country-houses 3 I 4 have seen in my life 4; whom 5 do you think it belongs 6 to 5 ?

an honest 1 man 2 does not seek 3 to 4 hurt 5 his neighbour 6.

1 Surprenant, adj. 2 qu'  
3 aimer, v. 1. 4 femme, n.  
f. 5 déplaire, v. 5. 6 à tou  
le monde.

1 juge, n. m. 2 vers, n. m. 3  
voila. 4 qui. 5 plaisir, v.  
6 croire, v. 5. 7 bon, adj.

1 voila une. 2 beau, belle, ad  
3 maison de campagne, n.  
4 que j'aie vues de ma vie  
5 à qui. 6 appartenir, v.

1 honnête, adj. 2 homme, n. m.  
3 chercher, v. 1. 4 à, pre  
5 nuire à, v. 4. 6 prochain  
n. m.

this book 1 seems 2 to me  
well 3 wrote 4; but 5 is 6  
it really so 6?

1 livre, n. m. 2 paraître, v. 5.  
3 bien, adv. 4 écrire, v. 4.  
5 mais, conj. 6 l'est-il en  
effet.

one may 1 accustom one's  
self 2 to 3 any thing 3.  
he has abandoned himself 1  
to all 2 kinds 3 of vices 4.  
why 1 don't you apply your-  
self 1 to study 2?

1 pouvoir, v. 3. 2 s'accoutumer,  
v. 1. 3 à tout.  
1 s'abandonner, v. 1. 2 tout,  
adj. 3 sorte, n. f. 4 vice, n. m.  
1 que ne vous appliquez vous.  
2 étude, n. f.

## R U L E III.

Such of the verbs neuter and reflected, as govern the dative, often govern the infinitive with the preposition à, as

*Il songe à son salut.*  
*il songe à faire fortune.*

He thinks of his own safety.  
he thinks of making his for-  
tune.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

when 1 will you proceed 2 to  
elect 3 your magistrates 4?

1 quand, adv. 2 procéder, v. 1.  
3 élire, v. 4. 4 magistrat,  
n. m.

I expect 1 to see 2 my fa-  
ther 3 in 4 two or three  
days 4.

1 attendre, v. 6. 2 voir, v. 3.  
3 pere, n. m. 4 dans deux  
ou trois jours.

your friend 1 has 2 taken up-  
on himself 2 to defend 3  
my cause 4.

1 ami, n. m. 2 s'engager, v. 1.  
3 défendre, v. 6. 4 cause,  
n. f.

you must resolve 1 to suffer 2  
what 3 you can't 4 help 5.

1 se résoudre, v. 5. 2 souffrir,  
v. 2. 3 ce que, pron. nom.  
4 pouvoir, v. 3. 5 empêcher,  
v. 1.

prepare 1 yourself 1 to re-  
ceive 2 the best 3 of your  
friends.

1 se préparer, v. 1. 2 recevoir,  
v. 3. meilleur, adj.

I accustom myself 1 to read 2  
four 4 pages 5 of Gil-Blas  
every 3 day 3.

1 s'accoutumer, v. 1. 2 lire,  
v. 4. 3 tous les jours 4 quatre,  
adj. und. 5 page, n. f.

I love

I love 1 your cousin 2, because 3 he takes 4 a delight 4 in doing 5 what his master 6 bids 7 him.

1 aimer, v. i. 2 cousin, n. m.  
3 parceque, conj. 4 se plaisir,  
v. 5. 5 à faire. 6 maître,  
n. m. 7 ordonner, v. i.

## RULE IV.

Many verbs neuter and reflected govern the genitive of a noun, and the infinitive of a verb with the preposition *de*, as

*S'abstenir de vin.*

To abstain from wine.

*s'abstenir de boire du vin.*

To abstain from drinking wine.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

What 1 are you speaking 2 of 1? do you speak of 2 peace 3 or war 4?

1 de quoi. 2 parler, v. i. 3 paix,  
n. f. 4 guerre, n. f.

we shall lose 1 our friend 2 soon 2; for 4 he speaks of 5 going 5 to 6 America 6.

1 perdre, v. 4. 2 bientôt, adv.  
3 ami, n. m. 4 car, conj.  
5 d'aller. 6 en Amérique.

your son 1 repents 2 of his fault 3; you must forgive 4 him.

1 fils, n. m. 2 se repentir, v. 2.  
3 faute, n. f. 4 pardonner,  
v. i.

he 1 has a mind 1 to deceive 2 you; mistrust 3 him.  
why 1 will 2 you have me give over 2 my pretensions 3, since 4 they are just 5?

1 il veut. 2 tromper, v. i. 3 se méfier, v. i.  
1 pourquoi, adv. 2 voulez vous que je me désiste de.  
3 prétension, n. f. 4 puisque,  
conj. 5 juste, n. f.

one grows 1 often 2 tired 1 with the best 3 dishes 4.

1 se lasser, v. i. 2 souvent, adv.  
3 meilleur, adj. 4 mets, n. m.

I am tired 1 to repeat 2 so 3 often the same 4 things 5.

1 se lasser, v. i. 2 répéter, v. i.  
3 si. 4 même, adj. chose, n. f.

I pretend 1 to nothing 2.

1 je ne me pique. 2 riez, n. m.

I pretend 1 to know 2 my trade 3.

1 se piquer, v. i. 2 savoir,  
v. 3. 3 métier, n. m.

## IV. Verbs Impersonal.

## R U L E I.

The impersonal verbs *il suffit*, *il convient*, *il importe*, and *il m'ennuie*, govern the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as  
*Il suffit de lui parler.*

*It is enough to speak to him.*

## Exercises upon this Rule.

It 1 will be sufficient 1 to 1 *Il suffira.* 2 *suivre*, v. 4.  
 follow 2 his orders 3. 3 *ordre*, n. m.

it 1 is fit 1 one 2 should do 1 *il convient.* 2 *de le faire.*

it 2.

when 1 one intends 2 to 1 *quand*, conj. 2 *vouloir*, v. 3.  
 end 4 well 3, it 5 is re- 3 *bien*, adv. 4 *finir*, v. 2.  
 quisite 5 to begin 6 well. 5 *il importe*. 6 *commencer*,  
 v. 1.

I am tired 1 with waiting 2. 1 *il m'ennuie*, 2 *attendre*, v. 6.

## R U L E II.

The three first of the foregoing verbs govern also the dative, as

*Il vous suffit de faire votre de-* It is enough for you to do  
 voir.

## Exercises upon this Rule.

It 1 is enough 1 for us to 1 *Il suffit.* 2 *songer*, v. 1. 3 *à*  
 mind 2 our 3 own affairs 3. *nos propres affaires*.

it becomes 1 you to act 2 o- 1 *il convient.* 2 *agir*, v. 2.  
 therwise 3. 3 *autrement*, adv.

what 1 is it to him 1 to 1 *que lui importe.* 2 *savoir*,  
 know 2 if 3 his enemy 4 v. 3. 3 *si*, conj. 4 *ennemi*,  
 is dead 5 or 6 alive 7 ? n. m. 5 *mort*, p. p. 6 *ou*,  
 7 *en vie*.

## R U L E III.

The impersonal verbs *il s'ensuit*, *il y va*, and *il s'agit*, govern the genitive, as

*Il s'ensuit de là.* It follows from thence,

## 170 - EXERCISES upon the

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

It follows 1 from what 2 you have said 4, that 4 merit 5 is not always 6 reward-ed 7. my happiness 2 or 3 unhappi-ness 4 is 1 concerned in it. your life 2 is 1 at stake 1.

1 Il s'ensuit. 2 ce que. 3 dire, v. 4. 4 que. 5 mérite, n. m. 6 toujours, adv. 7 recompen-ser, v. 1.  
 1 il y va. 2 bonheur, n. m. 3 ou, conj. 4 malheur, n. m.  
 1 il s'agit. 2 vie, n. f.

Note, That the last of these verbs govern also the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as *il s'agit de savoir s'il a raison*, the question is to know whether he is in the right.

## V. Rules upon some French Verbs.

## RULE I.

<i>Forcer</i> , to force, to compel.	<i>manquer</i> , to fail.
<i>contraindre</i> , to compel.	<i>differer</i> , to delay.
<i>commencer</i> , to begin.	<i>se bâter</i> , to hasten.
<i>continuer</i> , to continue, to go on.	<i>se bâzarder</i> , to venture.

govern the infinitive with *de* or *à*, as

*Je vous forcerai de le faire*, or *I shall compel you to do it à le faire.*

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We took 1 the town 2 and forced 3 the garrison 4 to surrender 5 prisoners 6 of war 7.	1 Prendre, v. 6. 2 ville, n. f. 3 forcer, v. 1. 4 garnison, n. f. 5 se rendre, v. 6. 6 prisonniere. 7 guerre, n. f.
when 1 will you begin 1 to lead 2 a more christian 4 life 3 ?	1 quand commencerez vous. 2 mener, v. 1. 3 vie, n. f. 4 chrétien, enne, adj.
hasten 1 to finish 2 what 3 you have begun two 4 days ago 4.	1 se bâter, v. 1. 2 finir, v. 2. 3 ce que. 4 depuis deux jours.

## RULE II.

*Persuader*, to persuade; when it is followed by an infinitive, governs the dative, as *je leur ai persuadé de le vendre*,

have

have persuaded them to sell it; but when it is not followed by that mood, it governs the accusative, as *je les ai persuades*, I have persuaded them.

*Exercises upon these Rules.*

This young man 1 is a rake 2 who 3 disgraces 4 his family 5, I wish 6 that 7 somebody 8 might 9 persuade him 9 to 10 go 11 to 12 sea 12.

it is impossible 1 to persuade those 2 who 2 are 3 not willing 3 to 4 be persuaded 4.

1 Jeune homme. 2 libertin, n. m. 3 qui. 4 déshonorer, v. i. 5 famille, n. f. 6 je voudrois. 7 que. 8 quelqu'un. 9 put lui persuader, 10 de, prep. 11 aller, v. i. 12 sur mer. 1 impossible, adj. 2 ceux qui, 3 vouloir, v. 3. 4 qu'on les persuade.

R U L E III.

Such verbs as are joined to nouns used without any article govern the infinitive with the preposition *de* before it, as

*J'ai droit de les punir.*  
*il a envie d'aller en France.*

I have a right to punish them.  
he has a mind to go to France.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We have reason 1 to complain 2 of you.

you 1 are in the wrong 1 to disinherit 2 a nephew 3 who 4 loves 5 you.

I never 1 gave 2 you any 3 cause 3 to hate 4 me.

have you a 1 mind 1 to learn 2 French 3?

have you any 1 reason 1 to be dissatisfied 2 with 3 my conduct 4?

1 Sujet, n. m. 2 se plaindre v. 6.

1 vous avez tort. 2 déshériter, v. i. 3 neveu, n. m. 4 qui. 5 aimer, v. i.

1 jamais, adv. 2 donner, v. i. 3 sujet. haïr, v. 2.

1 envie, n. f. 2 apprendre, v. 6. 3 François, n. m.

1 raison. 2 mécontent, adj. 3 de, prep. 4 conduite, n. f.

R U L E IV.

The verb *être* joined to several adjectives, govern also the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as

I 2

je

## 172 EXERCISES upon the

*je suis heureux de savoir m'occuper.* I am happy in knowing how to employ my time.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Trust 1 to him, he is not capable 2 of deceiving 3 you.

1 *Se fier*, v. 1. 2 *capable*, adj.  
3 *tromper*, v. 1.

I am very curious 1 of knowing 2 whether 3 there 4 has been 4 a 5 sea-fight 5.

1 *curieux*, adj. 2 *savoir*, v. 3.  
3 *si*, conj. 4 *il y a eu*. 5 *un combat naval*.

he is going 1 to 2 à country 2, where 3 he is sure 4 of making 5 his fortune 6.

1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *dans un pays*.  
3 *où*, adv. 4 *sur*, adj.  
5 *faire*, v. 5. 6 *fortune*, n. f.

we are overjoyed 1 to see 2 you returned 3 in 4 good health 4.

1 *ravi*, adj. 2 *voir*, v. 3.  
3 *retourner*, v. 1. 4 *en bonne santé*.

are you sorry 1 to hear 2 that 3 he is still 4 alive 5?

1 *sâché*, adj. 2 *apprendre*, v. 6.  
3 *que*. 4 *encore*, adv. 5 *en vie*.

## RULE V.

When the verb *être* is placed between the pronoun *ce* and a noun, or an adjective, it governs the infinitive with *que de* before it, as

*C'est une folie que de se méconnoître.* It is a folly to forget one's former condition.

*c'est être coupable que de ne pas protéger l'innocent.* It is a crime not to protect the innocent.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

He 1 is happy 1 who 2 thinks 2 himself 3 so 3. it is an idle 1 fancy 1 to imagine 2 that 3 we 4 can impose upon God 4.

1 *C'est être heureux*. 2 *que de croire*. 3 *qu'on l'est*.  
1 *chimire*, n. f. 2 *s'imaginer*, v. i. 3 *que*. 4 *on peut en imposer à Dieu*.

## RULE VI.

*Croire*, to think; and *penser*, to think; which commonly govern the indicative with the conjunction *que*, may also govern a verb in the infinitive, if that verb has the same nominative

minative as they. For instance, instead of saying *vous croyez*, or *vous pensez que vous faites des merveilles*, you think that you are doing wonders, we may say *vous croyez*, or *vous pensez faire des merveilles*.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

There are 1 christians 2 who 3 think that 4 they are doing God service 4, in 5 persecuting 6 their fellow 7 creatures 7.

he thinks of making 1 his fortune 2 in 3 trade 3, but 4 he will find himself 5 mistaken 6.

1 *Il y a.* 2 *chrétien*, n. m.  
3 *qui.* 4 *rendre service à*  
*Dieu.* 5 *en*, prep. 6 *perse-  
cuter*, v. i. 7 *semblable*,  
n. m.  
1 *faire*, v. 5. 2 *fortune*, n. f.  
3 *dans le commerce.* 4 *mais*,  
conj. 5 *se trouver*, v. i.  
6 *tromper*, v. i.

R U L E VII.

The verbs *je ne sais*, I don't know ; *j'ignore*, I don't know, and such like, govern the indicative, when they are followed by the conjunction *si*, whether ; as,  
*Je ne sais si vous viendrez.* I don't know whether you will come.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

We don't know 1 whether we 2 are to be 2 happy 3 or 4 unhappy 5. you don't know whether you 1 may live 1 till 2 to mor-  
row 2.

1 *Savoir*, v. 3. *nous serons.*  
3 *heureux*, adj. 4 *ou*, conj.  
5 *malheureux*, adj.  
1 *vous vivrez.* 2 *jusqu'à de-  
main.*

R U L E VIII.

The verb *je vais* denotes our going to do a thing, as  
*Je vais le faire,* I am just going to do it.

*Exercises upon this Rule.*

Are 1 you just going 1 to 1 *allez vous*. 2 *vous opposer à*  
oppose 2 my designs 3? 3 *dessein*, n. m.  
I am going 1 to make 2 my 1 *aller*, v. i. 2 *faire*, v. 5.  
exercise 3 and my verses 4. 3 *thème*, n. m. 4 *vers*, n. m.

## EXERCISES upon the RULE IX.

The verb *je viens*, denotes our having just done a thing, as

*Je viens d'arriver.*

I am just arrived.

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

You 1 cannot 2 speak 3 to 1 *vous ne sauriez.* 2 *parler.*  
the judge 3, because 4 v. 1. 3 *judge*, n. m. 4 *par-  
he* 5 is just set out 5 for 6 *ceque*, conj. 5 *il vient de  
London* 7. 6 *partir*, prep. 7 *Lon-  
dres*, n. m.

we 1 were just arrived 1, 1 *nous étions d'arriver.* 2  
when 2 he began 3 his 2 *quand*, conj. 3 *commencer,*  
speech 4. v. 1. 4 *discours*, n. m.

## RULE X.

The verb *penser*, used in the preterite, denotes what we were upon the point of doing and have not done, as

*Il pensa périr.*

He was just upon the point of perishing.

### *Exercises upon this Rule.*

They say 1 that 2 your 1 *On dit.* 2 *que.* 3 *niece*, n. f.  
niece 3 has 4 been at the 4 *a pensé mourir.*

point of death 4.

I 1 have been at the point of 1 *j'ai pensé mourir.* 2 *mais,*  
death 1; but 2 God 3 be 2 *conj.* *Dieu merci.* 4 *je me*  
thanked 3, I 4 am well 4. 4 *porter bien.*

## Of the undeclined parts of Speech.

These parts of speech, as it has been observed, are the *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*. There is but little to be said upon the last. As to the three first, I have already been so particular upon each of them, that I must content myself with making two remarks in this place.

I shall observe first, that altho' the adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are commonly divided into several classes, an adverb, a preposition, and a conjunction may belong to

two

two or more of its respective classes. For instance, the specificative preposition *à* may also be ranked amongst the prepositions of *place*, *order*, *union*, and *end*.

It is a preposition of *place*, when it shews the place, as  
*Se placer à la tête de l'armée.* To place one's self at the head  
of the army.

It is a preposition of *order*, when it expresses the order of things, as

*Marcher deux à deux.* To walk two by two.

It is a preposition of *union*, when it denotes the circumstances of time, suitableness and motive, as

*à midi.* At noon.

*à votre commodit'.* at your leisure.

*à votre considération.* for your sake.

Lastly, it is a preposition of *end*, when it denotes the aim or end, as

*Réduire à l'aumone.* To reduce to beggary.  
*de dix à douze.* from ten to twelve.

Secondly, I shall observe that the same word may keep the places of two or more parts of speech. For instance, the word *bien* is a noun in the following sentence, *viz.*

*Ce seigneur a un bien considérable.* This nobleman has a considerable estate.

And it is an adverb in the following one, *viz.*

*Si vos affaires ne vont pas bien,* If your affairs don't go right,  
*c'est la faute de ceux qui les* it is the fault of those that  
*conduisent.* manage them.

## E X E R-

# EXERCISES

EXTRACTED OUT OF

## THE HOLY SCRIPTURES.

### I. *The Creation 1 of the World 2.*

(A.) **1** N 1 the beginning 2 God 3 created 3 the hea-  
**2** ven 4, the earth 5, and 6 all 7 the things 8 con-  
**3** tained 9 therein 9. He created them in 10 six days 10, and  
**4** rested 11 the 12 seventh day 12: therefore 13 he blessed 14  
**5** that day and sanctified 15 it.

(B.) The Lord 1 God formed 2 the man 3 of the dust 4 of  
 the ground 5, breathed 6 into 7 his nostris 8 the breath 9  
 of life 10, made 11 him after 12 his own likeness 12 and  
 called 13 him Adam.

### The DICTIONARY.

**1** *Création*, n. f. **2** *monde*, n.  
m.

(A.) **1** *Au commencement*. **2** *Dieu*, n. m. **3** *créer*, v. i. **4**  
*ciel*, n. m. **5** *terre*, n. f. **6**  
*&*, conj. **7** *tout*, adj. **8** *chose*,  
 n. f. **9** *qui y sont contenues*.  
**10** *en six jours*. **11** *se reposer*,  
 v. i. **12** *le septième jour*.

**13** *c'est pourquoi*. **14** *benir*,  
 v. 2. **15** *sanctifier*, v. i.

(B.) **1** *Seigneur*, n. m. **2**  
*former*, v. i. **3** *homme*, n.  
 m. **4** *poussiere*, n. f. **5** *terre*,  
 n. f. **6** *souffler*, v. i. **7** *dans*,  
 prep. **8** *narine*, n. f. **9**  
*soufle*, n. m. **10** *vie*, n. f.  
**11** *faire*, v. 5. **12** *à son*  
*image*. **13** *nommer*, v. i.

(C.) *God*

(C.) God said 1 afterwards 2, it is not good 3 that 4 the man should be alone 4, I will make him an he'p 5 meet 6 for him 6. He 7 therefore caused a deep sleep to fall upon Adam 7, and he slept 8, and he took 9 one 10 of his ribs 11, made 12 a woman out of it 12 and brought 13 her to the man.

(D.) Adam, seeing 1 her, said, this 2 is now 2 bone 3 of my bones, and flesh 4 of my flesh. Therefore 5 shall a man leave 5 his father 6 and his mother 7 and shall cleave 8 unto 9 his wife 10, and 11 they shall be in one flesh 11. Adam and his wife were 12 both naked, and were not ashamed 12.

## The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 *Dire*, v. 4. 2 *ensuite*, adv. 3 *bon*, adj. 4 *quel l'homme soit seul*. 5 *aide*, n. m. 6 *semblable à lui*. 7 *il envoia donc à Adam un profond sommeil*. 8 *dormir*, v. 2. 9 *prendre*, v. 6. 10 *un*, adj. 11 *côte*, n. f. 12 *en fit une femme*. 13 *amener*, v. 1.

(D.) 1 *Voir*, v. 3. 2 *voici*, adv. 3 *os*, n. m. 4 *chair*, n. f. 5 *c'est pourquoi l'homme quittera*. 6 *pere*, n. m. 7 *mere*, n. f. 8 *s'attacher*, v. 1. 9 *à*, prep. 10 *femme*, n. f. 11 *et ils ne seront qu'une même chair*. 12 *étoient nuds & ne rougissaient point*.

II. *The Fall 1 of our First 2 Parents 3.*

(A.) God 1 put 2 Adam and Eve in 3 a delightful 5 garden 4, producing 6 all 7 kinds 8 of fruit 9. There 10 was also in the middle thereof 10 the tree 11 of knowledge 12 of good 13 and evil 14.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Chute*, n. f. 2 *premier*, adj. 3 *parent*, plur. *ens*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, plur. *Dieux*, n. m. 2 *mettre*, v. 4. 3 *dans*, prep. 4 *jardin*, n. m. 5 *délicieux*, adj. 6 *qui produissoit*. 7 *tout*,

adj. 8 *sorte*, n. f. 9 *fruit*, n. m. 10 *il y avoit aussi au milieu de ce jardin*.

11 *arbre*, n. m. 12 *connoissance*, n. f. 13 *bien*, n. m. 14 *mal*, n. m.

(B.) God said 1 to Adam, thou may'st 2 freely 3 eat 4 of 5 every tree 5 of the garden, except 6 that 6 of the knowledge of good and evil; for 7 in 8 the day 8 that 9 thou eat'st therof 9, thou shalt die 10.

(C.) The serpent 1, which 2 was more subtile 3 than any 4 of the beasts 5 which the Lord 6 had made 7, said to the woman 8, has God said, ye shall not eat of every tree in the garden?

(D.) We may, answered 1 the woman, eat of the fruit of the trees 2 of the garden 3; but 3 of the fruit 5 of the tree which 6 is in the midst 7 of the garden, God has said, ye 4 shall not eat of it 4, lest 8 ye die 8.

(E.) The serpent replied 1, if 2 you eat of it, you shall not die; but God knows 3 that in the day ye eat of it, your eyes 4 shall be opened 5, and ye shall be as gods knowing 6 good and evil.

(F.) The woman seeing 1 that the fruit of that tree was good 2 for food and pleasant to the eyes 2, eat of it, and gave 3 some to her husband 4 who 5 eat of it also 6.

(G.) Their eyes were immediately 1 opened; they perceived 2 they were naked 3; they blushed 4, and covered 5 their nakedness 6.

### The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 Dire, v. 4. 2 pouvoir, v. 3. 3 librement, adv. 4 manger, v. 1. 5 du fruit de tous les arbres. 6 à l'exception de celui. 7 car, conj. 8 le jour. 9 que vous en mangerez. 10 mourir, v. 2.

(C.) 1 Serpent, n. m. 2 qui, pron. 3 fin, adj. 4 aucun, pron. nom. 5 animal, plur. aux, n. m. 6 seigneur, n. m. 7 faire, v. 5. 8 femme, n. f.

(D.) 1 Répondre, v. 6. 2 arbre, n. m. 3 mais, conj. 4 vous ne mangerez pas. 5 fruit,

n. m. 6 qui, pron. 7 milieu, n. m. 8 de peur que vous ne mouriez.

(E.) 1 Répliquer, v. 1. 2 si, conj. 3 savoir, v. 3. 4 oeil, plur. yeux, n. m. 5 ouvrir, v. 2. 6 connaître, v. 5.

(F.) 1 Voir, v. 3. 2 bon à manger & agréable à la vue, 3 donner, v. 1. 4 mari, n. m. 5 qui, pron. 6 aussi.

(G.) 1 Sur le champ. 2 apperçoir, v. 3. 3 nud, adj. 4 rougir, v. 2. 5 couvrir, v. 2. 6 nudité, n. f.

(H.)

(H.) The Lord God, to punish 1 their crime 2, cursed 3 the ground 4, condemned 5 the woman to bring 6 forth children in sorrow 6, and the man 7 to eat bread 8 in 9 the sweat 9 of his face 10, and turned 11 both of them out 11 of 12 the garden 12. Adam called 13 then his wife's name Eve 13, because 14 she 15 was to be 15 the mother 16 of all men.

## The DICTIONARY.

(H.) 1 Pour punir. 2 crime,  
n. m. 3 maudire, v. 4. 4  
terre, n. f. 5 condamner, v.  
1. 6 à enfantier avec douleur.  
7 homme, n. m. 8 son pain.  
9 à la sueur. 10 visage, n.

m. 11 les chassa tous deux.  
12 du jardin. 13 donna alors  
à sa femme le nom d'Eve. 14  
parceque, conj. 15 elle de-  
voit être. 16 mere,

## III. Cain kills 1 his Brother 2 Abel.

(A.) Adam had several 1 children 2, amongst 3 whom 4 we reckon 5 Cain and Abel. The first 6 was a husbandman 7, and the other 8 a shepherd 9.

(B.) In 1 process of time 1 it 2 came to pass 2, that Cain having brought 3 of the first fruits 6 of the earth 7, an offering 5 to the Lord 4, Abel presented 8 also 9 to him the fatest 10 of the firstlings 11 of his flock 12.

(C.) The Lord had 1 respect unto 1 Abel and to his offering; but 2 to Cain and to his offering he 3 had not respect 3.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Tuer, v. 1. 2 frere, n. m.

(A.) 1 plusieurs, adj. plur. 2

enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 3

entre, prep. 4 lesquels. 5

compter, v. 1. 6 premier, adj.

7 laboureur, n. m. 8 autre,

pron. nom. 9 berger, n. m.

(B.) 1 Dans la suite du tems.

2 il arriva. 3 apporter, v. 1.

4 Seigneur, n. m. 5 offrande,

n. f. 6 fruit, n. m. 7 terre,

n. f. 8 présenter, v. 1. 9

aussi, conj. 10 gras, adj.

11 premier né, adj. & part.

12 troupeau, n. m.

(C.) 1 Avoir égard à. 2 mais,

conj. 3 il n'eut point d'égard.

(D.) Cain was very 1 wrath 2, talked 3 with 3 his brother Abel; and when 4 they were in 5 the field 5, rose 6 up against 6 him and slew 7 him.

(E.) The Lord 1 said 2 unto Cain, where 3 is Abel thy brother? And he said, I know 4 not; am I my brother's keeper 5? The Lord said, what hast thou done 6? thy brother's blood 7 calls for 8 revenge 9. Thou art cursed 10; when 11 thou tillest 11 the ground 12, it shall not henceforth 14 yield 13 unto 15 thee her strength 15; thou shalt be a fugitive 16 and a vagabond 17 in 18 the earth.

(F.) Cain said unto the Lord, my punishment 1 is 2 greater than I can bear 3. As 3 I 4 am to be 4 a fugitive and a vagabond, it sha'l come to pass that 5 every one that findeth me 5 shall slay me.

(G.) The Lord said unto him, whosoever 1 slayeth 1 Cain, vengeance 2 shall be taken on him seven fold 2. He set 3 afterwards 4 a mark 5 upon 6 him, lest 7 any 8 finding him should kill him 8.

### The DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 Fort, adv. 2 fâché, adj.  
3 parler à, v. 1. 4 quand,  
conj. 5 dans un champ. 6 se  
jetter sur, v. 1. 7 tuer, v. 1.

(E.) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 dire,  
v. 4. 3 où, adv. 4 savoir,  
v. 3. 5 gardien, n. m. 6 faire,  
v. 5. 7 sang, n. m. 8 dé-  
mander, v. 1. 9 vengeance,  
n. f. 10 maudire, v. 4.  
11 quand tu cultiveras. 12  
terre, n. f. 13 produire,  
v. 4. 14 à l'avenir. 15

pour toi, autant qu'elle pour-  
ra. 16 fugitif, adj. 17 va-  
gabond, adj. 18 sur, prep.

(F.) 1 Châtiment, n. m. 2 sur-  
passe mes forces. 3 comme,  
conj. 4 je dois être. 5 que  
celui qui me trouvera.

(G.) 1 Quiconque tuera. 2 sera  
punie au septuple. 3 mettre, v.  
4. 4 ensuite, adv. 5 marque,  
n. f. 6 sur, prép. 7 de peur  
que. 8 celui qui le trouveroit  
ne le tuât.

IV. *The Flood I.*

(A.) God 1 seeing 2 that the wickedness 3 of men 4 was great 5 in 6 the earth 6, repented 7 that he had made 8 them. *I will, said 9 he, destroy 10 man whom I have created 11 with 12 all 13 the reptiles 14, birds 15 and animals 16, for 17 it 18 repenteth me 18 that 19 I have made them 19.*

(B.) But 1 Noah 2 found 3 grace 4 in 5 the eyes 5 of the Lord 6, who told 7 him, *the earth is filled 8 with 9 iniquity 10; I will destroy the living 12 creatures 11; make thee an ark 13 of Gopher wood 14, into which 15 thou shalt come 16, thou, thy sons 17, thy wife 18, thy sons' wives, and of the living creatures two 19 of every sort 19, male 20 and female 21; take 22 thou of 23 all food that is eaten 23, and 24 it shall be for food for thee and for them 24.*

(C.) Noah did 1 all 2 that God had commanded him 2. He 3 was six hundred years old 3, when 4 he entered into 5 the ark with 6 his family 7 and the animals; and the Lord shut 8 them all in 8.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Déluge*, n. m.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *voir*, v. 3. 3 *méchanceté*, n. f. 4 *homme*, n. m. 5 *grand*, adj. 6 *sur la terre*. 7 *se repentir*, v. 2. 8 *faire*, v. 5. 9 *dire*, v. 2. 10 *détruire*, v. 4. 11 *créer*, v. 1. 12 *avec*, prep. 13 *tout, plur. tous*, adj. 14 *reptile*, n. m. 15 *oiseau*, plur. *eaux*, n. m. 16 *animal*, plur. *aux*, n. m. 17 *car*, conj. 18 *je me répens*. 19 *de les avoir créés*.

(B.) 1 *Mais*, conj. 2 *Noé*, n. m. 3 *trouver*, v. 1. 4 *grace*, n. f. 5 *aux yeux*. 6 *Seigneur*, n. m. 7 *dire*, v. 4. 8 *rem-*

*plir*, v. 2. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *iniquité*, n. f. 11 *créature*, n. f. 12 *vivant*, adj. 13 *arche*, n. f. 14 *de bois de Gopher*, 15 *dans laquelle*. 16 *entrer*, v. 1. 17 *filz*, n. m. 18 *femme*, n. f. 19 *deux de chaque sorte*. 20 *mâle*, n. m. 21 *féminelle*, n. f. 22 *prendre*, v. 6. 23 *de tout ce qui se mange*. 24 *& cela servira de nourriture à toi & à eux*.

(C.) 1 *Faire*, v. 5. 2 *tout ce que Dieu lui avoit commandé*, 3 *il avoit six cens ans*. 4 *quand*, conj. 5 *entrer dans*, v. 1. and prep. 6 *avec*, prep. 7 *famille*, n. f. 8 *les y enferma tous*.

(D.) *The*

(D.) The flood was forty 1 days 2 upon 3 the earth, the waters 4 increased 5, the highest 6 mountains 7 were covered 8, all the living creatures which were upon the face 9 of the ground 10 were destroyed 11; but the ark swam 12 upon the water, and those that were in it remained 13 alive 14.

(E.) At 1 the end 2 of hundred 2 and fifty 3 days God remembered 4 Noah and all those that were in 5 the ark with him; and 6 making a strong wind to pass over the earth 6, the waters assuaged 7 by 8 degrees 8.

(F.) When the ground was dry 1, God commanded 2 Noah to go forth out of 2 the ark. He had remained 4 shut up 5 therein 3 a 6 whole year 6. He obeyed 7, and immediately 9 built 8 an altar 10 to the Lord, upon 11 which 12 he offered 13 burnt-offerings 14.

#### The DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 *Quarante*, adj. und. 2 *jour*, n. m. 3 *sur*, prep. 4 *eau*. plur. *eaux*, n. f. 5 *s'augmenter*, v. t. 6 *baut*, adj. 7 *montagne*, n. f. 8 *couvrir*, v. 2. 9 *face*, n. f. 10 *terre*, n. f. 11 *détruire*, v. 4. 12 *nager*, v. t. 13 *rester*, v. t. 14 *en vie*.  
1 *au bout*. 2 *cent*, adj. und. 3 *cinquante*, adj. und. 4 *se ressouvenir*, v. 2. 5 *dans*,

prep. 6 *& envoyant un vent fort sur la terre*. 7 *s'abaisser*, v. t. 8 *peu à peu*.  
(F.) 1 *Sac*, *be*, adj. 2 *commanda à Noé de sortir de 3 y*, conj. pron. 4 *refier*, v. t. 5 *enfermer*, v. t. 6 *un an entier*. 7 *obéir*, v. 2. 8 *bâtir*, v. 2. 9 *sur le champ*. 10 *autel*, n. m. 11 *sur*, prep. 12 *laquelle*, pron. nom. 13 *offrir*, v. 2. 14 *holocauste*, n. m.

#### V. The Tower 1 of Babel.

(A.) After 1 the flood, the inhabitants 2 of the earth 3 spoke 4 but one language 4; and 5 it came to pass that 5 they 6

#### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Tour*, n. f.

(A.) 1 *Après*, prep. 2 *habitant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 3 *terre*,

n. f. 4 *ne parloient qu'une même langue*. 5 *& il arriva*  
said

said one to another 6, let us build 7 us a city 8 and a tower whose top 9 may reach 10 unto 11 heaven 12, and let us make 13 us a name 14 before 15 we are scattered abroad 15 upon 19 the face 17 of 18 the whole earth 18.

(B.) The Lord 1 came down 2 to 3 see 4 the city and the tower, which 5 the children 6 of men 7 builded, and he said, behold 8, the people is one 8, and 9 they have all one 9 language 10; and 11 this they 11 begin 12 to 13 do 14. And now 15 nothing 16 will be restrained from them 16, which 17 they 18 have imagined to do 18. Let us then confound 19 their language, that 20 they may not understand 21 one 23 another's 23 speech 22.

(C.) So 1 the Lord scattered 2 them abroad 2 from 3 thence 3 upon the face of the earth, and they left off 3 to build the city.

(D.) Therefore 1 is 2 the name of it called 2 Babel, because 3 the Lord did there 4 confound the language of all 5 the earth; and from thence did the Lord scatter them upon the face of the whole earth.

### The DICTIONARY.

que. 6 ils se dirent les uns aux autres. 7 bâtir, v. 2. 8 ville, n. f. 9 sommet, n. m. 10 s'élève. 11 jusque, prep. 12 ciel, n. m. 13 faire, v. 5. 14 nom, n. m. 15 avant que de nous séparer. 16 sur, prep. 17 face, n. f. 18 de la terre.

(B.) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 descendre, v. 6. 3 pour, prep. 4 voir, v. 3. 5 que, pron. 6 enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 7 homme, n. m. 8 ce peuple ne forme qu'une nation. 9 C'est il n'a qu'une même. 10 langue,

n. f. 11 Et voici ce qu'il. 12 commencer, v. 1. 13 à, prep. 14 faîne, v. 5. 15 à présent. 16 rien ne l'empêchera de faire. 17 ce que, pron. nom. 18 il aura envie de faire. 19 confondre, v. 6. 20 afin que. 21 entendre, v. 6. 22 language, n. m. 23 les uns des autres.

(C.) 1 Ainsi. 2 disperser, v. 1. 3 de là. 4 cesser, v. 1.

(D.) 1 C'est pourquoi. 2 la tour fut appellée. 3 parce que, conj. 4 y, pron. conj. 5 tout, adj.

VI. Abraham prepares 1 to 2 sacrifice 3 his son 3 Isaac.

(A.) God 1 tempted 2 Abraham and said 3 to him, Abraham; Abraham answered 4, here 5 I am 5.

(B.) God said, take 1 now 2 thy only 3 son Isaac, whom 4 thou lovest 5, get 6 thee 6 into 7 the land 8 of Moriah 9, and offer 10 him there 11 for 12 a burnt-offering 12 upon 13 one 14 of the mountains 15 which 16 I will tell 17 thee of 17.

(C.) Abraham rose up 1 early 2 in the morning 2, saddled 3 his ass 4, took 5 two 7 of his young 8 men 8 with 6 him, and Isaac his son, clave 9 the wood 10 for 11 the burnt-offering 12, and went 13 into 14 the place 15 of 16 which 16 God had told 17 him.

(D.) On 1 the third day 1, lifting up 2 his eyes 3, he saw 4 the place afar 5 off 5, and said to his servants 6, Abide 7 you here 8 with the ass; I 9 and the lad 10 will 11 go 11 yonder 12, and 13 worship 14, and 15 come again to you 15.

The DICTIONARY.

3 Se préparer, v. 1. 2 à, prep.  
3 sacrifier, v. 1. 4 fils,  
n. m.

(A.) 1 Dieu, n. m. 2 éprouver,  
v. 1. 3 dire, v. 4. 4 répondre,  
v. 6. 5 me voici.

(B.) 1 Prendre, v. 6. 2 main-  
tenant, adv. 3 unique, adj.  
4 que, pron. 5 aimer, v. 1.  
6 va t'en. 7 dans, prep. 8  
pays, n. m. 9 Moria, n. m.  
10 offrir, v. 2. 11 y, pron.  
conj. 12 en holocauste. 13  
sur, prep. 14 un, adj. 15  
montagne, n. f. 16 que. 17  
montrer, v. 1.

(C.) 1 Se lever, v. 1. 2 de bon  
matin. 3 seller, v. 1. 4 âne,

n. m. 5 prendre, v. 6. 6 avec,  
prep. 7 deux, adj. 8 domesti-  
que, n. m. 9 fendre, v. 6.  
10 bois, n. m. 11 pour, prep.  
12 holocauste, n. m. 13 s'en  
aller, v. 1. 14 à, prep. 15  
endroit, n. m. 16 que. 17  
dire. v. 4.

(D.) 1 Le troisième jour. 2 lever,  
v. 1. 3 œil, plur. yeux, n.  
m. 4 voir, v. 3. 5 de loin.  
6 domestique, n. m. 7 rester,  
v. 1. 8 ici, adv. 9 moi,  
pron. nom. 10 enfant, n.  
m. 11 nous irons. 12 là,  
adv. 13 pour, prep. 14 a-  
dorer, v. 1. & puis nous re-  
viendrons vous trouver.

(E.)

(E.) Abraham took the wood of the burnt-offering, and laid 1 it upon Isaac his son. He himself 3 carried 2 the fire 4 and the knife 5.

(F.) As 1 they were going 2 together 3, Isaac said to Abraham, *my father* 4. Abraham answered, *bere am I, my son.* Isaac said, *behold* 5 *the fire and the wood; but where* 6 *is the lamb* 8 *for a* 9 *burnt-offering* 9? Abraham said, *God will provide* 10 *himself* 10 *a lamb for a burnt-offering;* and 11 so they went 11 both 12 of them 12 together 13.

(G.) When 1 they were come 2 to 3 the place God had told him of, Abraham built 5 an altar 6 there 4, laid 7 the wood in 7 order 7, bound 8 Isaac his son, laid him on 9 the altar upon the wood, stretched forth 10 his hand 11, and took the knife to 12 slay 13 his son.

(H.) And the angel 1 of the Lord 2 called 3 unto 3 him out 4 of 4 heaven 5, and said, *Abraham, Abraham.* Abraham answered, *bere I am.*

(I.) The angel said, *lay not thy 1 hand 1 upon the lad, neither 2 do thou any thing unto him 2; for 3 now I know 4 that 5 thou fearest 6 God, seeing 7 thou hast not withheld 8 thy son, thy only son from 8 me.*

### The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Mestre*, v. 4. 2 *porter*, v. 1. 3 *lui-même*, pron. nom. 4 *feu*, n. m. 5 *couteau*, n. m.

(F.) 1 *Comme*, conj. 2 *marcher*, v. 1. 3 *ensemble*, adv. 4 *pere*, n. m. 5 *voici*, adv. 6 *mais*, conj. 7 *où*, adv. 8 *agneau*, n. m. 9 *l'holo-causfe*. 10 *se pourvoir de*, v. 3. 11 *& ils s'avancoient*. 12 *tous les deux*. 13 *ensemble*, adv.

(G.) 1 *Quand*, conj. 2 *arriver*, v. 1. 3 *à*, prep. 4 *y*, pron. conj. 5 *bâtir*, v. 2. 6 *autel*,

n. m. 7 *ranger*, v. 1. 8 *tier*, v. 1. 9 *sur*, prep. 10 *éten-dre*, v. 6. 11 *main*, n. f. 12 *pour*, prep. 13 *égorger*, v. 1.

(H.) 1 *Ange*, n. m. 2 *Sieur*, n. m. 3 *appeler*, v. 1. 4 *du*, prep. and art. 5 *ciel*, n. m.

(I.) 1 *La main*. 2 *& ne lui fâts rien*. 3 *car*, conj. 4 *savoir*, v. 3. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *croire*, v. 6. 7 *puisque*, conj. 8 *refuser*, v. 1.

(K)

(K.) Abraham lifted up 1 his eyes, and seeing behind 2 him 3 a ram 4 caught 5 in 7 a thicket 8 by 6 his horns 6, he took him, and offered him for 9 a burnt-offering 9 instead 10 of his son.

## The DICTIONARY.

(K.) 1 Lever, v. 1. 2 derrière, prep. 3 lui, pron. nom. 4 bétier, n. m. 5 retenir, v. 2. 6 par les cornes. 7 dans, prep. 8 buisson, n. m. 9 en bolo-cause. 10 au lieu.

VII. *The Children 1 of Israel are oppressed 2 by 3 the Egyptians 4. Moses 5 is born 5.*

(A.) After 1 the death 2 of Jacob and his children, there 3 arose 3 in 4 Egypt 5 a new 6 king 7, who 8, forgetting 9 the services 10 Joseph had done 11 that 12 country 12, resolved 13 to 14 oppress 15 the children of Israel, who had multiplied 17 very 16 much 16.

(B.) Behold 1, said 2 he to his people 3, *the children of Israel are more 4 and mightier 5 than 6 we 7. Come 8 on 8, let us deal 9 wisely 10 with them 10, lest 11 they multiply, and 12 it comes to pass, that when there falleth out any war 12, they join 13 unto our enemies 14, and 15 so get them up out of the land 15.*

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Enfant, plur. ans, n. m.  
2 opprimer, v. 1. 3 par, prep.  
4 Égyptien, n. m.  
5 naissance de Moïse.

(A.) 1 Après, prep. 2 mort, n.  
f. 3 il s'éleva. 4 en, prep.  
5 Égypte, n. f. 6 nouveau,  
adj. 7 roi, n. m. 8 qui,  
pron. 9 oublier, v. 1. 10  
service, n. m. 11 rendre à,  
v. 6. 12 ce pays-là. 13 re-  
soudre, v. 5. 14 de, prep.  
15 opprim:r, v. 1. 16 beau-

coup, adv. 17 se multiplier,  
v. 1.

(B.) 1 Voir, v. 3. 2 dire, v. 4.  
3 peuple, n. m. 4 en plus  
grand nombre. 5 puissant,  
plur. ans. adj. 6 que, conj.  
7 nous, pron. nom. 8 al-  
lons. 9 se conduire, v. 4.  
10 sagement à leur égard. 11  
de peur que. 12 & que s'il ar-  
rive une guerre. 13 ils ne  
se joignent. 14 ennemi, n.  
m. 15 & qu'ils ne s'en-  
aillent hors du pays.

(C.)

(C.) The Egyptians did set 1 task-masters 2 over 3 the Israélites 4 who 5 were forced 6 to 7 build 8 cities 9; but 10 the 11 more 11 they were afflicted 12, the more they multiplied and grew 13.

(D.) The Hebrew 2 midwives 1 having refused 3 to 4 kill 5 the males 6 of the Israélites at 7 their birth 7, the king 8 commanded 9 all 10 his people 11 to 12 destroy 13 them, and to throw 14 them into 15 the Nile 16.

(E.) Then 2 it 1 came to pass 1, that 3 a woman 4 of the tribe 5 of Levi conceived 6 and bare 7 a son 8; and when 9 she saw 10 that he was a 11 goodly child 11, she hid 12 him three 13 months 13.

(F.) When she could 1 no 2 longer 2 hide him, she took 3 an ark 4 of bull-rushes 5, daubed 6 it with 7 slime 8, and with pitch 9, laid 11 the child 12 therein 10, and laid 13 it in 14 the flags 15 by 16 the 17 river's brink 17, his sister 18

### The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 *Etablir*, v. 2. 2 *surveil-*  
*lant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 3 *sur*,  
prep. 4 *Israélite*, n. m. 5  
*qui*. 6 *forcer*, v. 1. 7 *de*,  
prep. 8 *bâtir*, v. 1. 9  
*ville*, n. f. 10 *mais*, conj.  
11 *plus*, adv. 12 *affliger*,  
v. 1. 13 *devenir puissant*,  
v. 2. & adj. whose plural  
is *puissants*.

(D.) 1 *Sage femme*, plur. *sages*  
*femmes*, n. f. & adj. 2 *des*  
*Hébreux*. 3 *refuser*, v. 4.  
4 *de*, prep. 5 *tuer*, v. 1.  
6 *mâle*, n. m. 7 *au temps de*  
*leur naissance*. 8 *roi*, n. m.  
9 *ordonner à*, v. 1. 10 *tout*,  
adj. 11 *peuple*, n. m. 12 *de*,  
prep. 13 *détruire*, v. 4.

14 *jetter*, v. 1. 15 *dans*,  
prep. 16 *Nile*, n. m.

(E.) 1 *Il arriva*. 2 *donc*. 3 *que*,  
conj. 4 *femme*, n. f. 5  
*tribu*, n. f. 6. *concevoir*, v. 3.  
7 *enfanter*, v. 1. 8 *fil*, n.  
m. 9 *quand*. 10 *voir*, v. 3.  
11 *beau*, adj. 12 *cacher*,  
v. 1. 13 *pendant trois mois*.

(F.) 1 *Pouvoir*, v. 3. 2 *plus*,  
adv. 3 *prendre*, v. 6. 4 *panier*,  
n. m. 5 *jone*, n. m. 6 *en-*  
*duire*, v. 4. 7 *de*, prep.  
8 *bitume*, n. m. 9 *poix*,  
n. f. 10 *y*, pron. conj. 11  
*mettre*, v. 4. 12 *enfant*, n.  
m. 13 *placer*, v. 1. 14  
*dans*, prep. 15 *roseau*, plur.  
*eaux*, n. m. 16 *sur*, prep.  
standing

standing 19 afar off 20, to 21 wit 22 what 23 would be done to him 23.

(G.) And the king's daughter 1 came down 2 to 3 wash 4 herself 4 at 5 the river, and her maidens 6 walked 7 along 7 by 8 the river-side 9; and when she saw the ark amongst 10 the flags, she sent 11 one 12 of her maids 13 to 14 fetch it 14.

(H.) When she had opened 1 it, she saw the child; and behold 2 the babe 3 wept 4, and she had compassion 5 on 6 him, and said, this 7 is one 7 of 8 the Hebrew's children 8.

(I.) His sister said to her, shall I go 1 and 2 call to you 2 a nurse 3 of 4 the Hebrew women 4, that 5 she may nurse 6 the child for you?

(K.) The princess 1 said to her, take 2 this child away 2, and nurse it for me, and I will give 3 thee thy 4 wages 4.

(L.) The woman took 1 the child, and nursed it. The child grew 2. She brought 3 him to the king's daughter, who 4 adopted 5 him for 6 her son, and called 7 him Moses 8, because 9 she had saved 10 him from 11 being drowned 11.

### The DICTIONARY.

le bord du fleuve, 18 *sœur*,  
n. f. 19 se tenir, v. 2. 20  
de loin. 21 pour, conj. 22  
savoir, v. 3. 23 ce qui lui  
arriveroit.

(G.) 1 Fille, n. f. 2 descendre, v.  
6. 3 pour, prep. 4 se laver,  
v. 1. 5 dans, prep. 6 fille,  
n. f. 7 se promener, v. 1.  
8 sur, prep. 9 bord, n.  
f. 10 parmi, prep. 11 en-  
uyer, v. 1. 12 un, adj.  
13 suivante, n. f. 14 pour  
l'aller chercher.

(H.) 1 Ouvrir, v. 2. 2 voici  
que. 3 enfant, n. m. 4 pleurer,  
v. 1. 5 pitié, n. f. 6 de,

prep. 7 c'est un. 8 des en-  
fans des Hébreux.

(I.) 1 Aller, v. 1. 2 vous cher-  
cher. 3 nourrice, n. f. 4 d'entre  
les femmes des Hébreux. 5  
afin que. 6 allaiter, v. 1.

(K.) 1 Princesse, n. f. 2 em-  
porter, v. 1. 3 donner, v. 1.  
4 ton salaire.

(L.) 1 Prendre, v. 6. 2 grandir,  
v. 2. 3 apporter, v. 1.  
4 qui. 5 adopter, v. 1.  
6 pour, prep. 7 nommer,  
v. 1. 8 Moïse, n. m. 9  
parceque, conj. 10 empê-  
cher, v. 1. 11 d'être noyé.

VIII. *The Israelites 1 are driven out 2 of Egypt 3.*

(A.) God 1 having afflicted 2 Egypt with 3 several 4 plagues 5, and king 6 Pharaoh 7 having nevertheless 8 refused 9 to 10 send 11 the children 12 of Israel out 13 of 13 his land 14, he at last 16 resolved 15 to 17 destroy 18 all 19 the first-born 19 of the Egyptians 20.

(B.) This design 1 was 2 no sooner put into execution 2 during 3 the night 4, but 5 Pharaoh rose up 6, and 7 all 8 his servants 9, and all the Egyptians. There 10 was 10 then 11 a great 12 cry 13 in 14 Egypt; for 15 there was not a house 16 where 17 there was not one 18 dead 19.

(C.) The king called for 1 Moses 2 and Aaron his brother 3 by 4 night 4, and said 5 to them, get up 6, get 7 you forth 7 from 8 amongst 8 my people 9, both 10 you and 11 the children of Israel, go 12 and serve 13 the Lord 14, as 15 you have

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Israëlite*, n. m. 2 *chasser*,  
v. 1. 3 *Egypte*, n. f.

(A.) 1 *Dieu*, n. m. 2 *affliger*,  
v. 1. 3 *de*, prep. 4 *plusieurs*,  
adj. plur. 5 *plaie*, n. f.  
6. *roi*, n. m. 7 *Pharaon*,  
n. m. 8 *cependant*, conj.  
9 *refuser*, v. 1. 10 *de*, prep.  
11 *envoyer*, v. 1. 12 *en-*  
*fant* plur. *ans*, m. n. 13  
*bors de*. 14 *pays*, n. m.  
15 *resoudre*, v. 5. 16  
*enfin*, adv. 17 *de*, prep. 18  
*détruire*, v. 4. 19 *tous les*  
*premiers nés*. 20 *Egyptien*,  
n. m.

(B.) 1 *Dessin*, n. m. 2 *ne fut*  
*pas* *plutôt mis en exécution*. 3  
*durant*, prep. 4 *nuit*, n. f.

5 *que*, conj. 6 *se lever*,  
v. 1. 7 *avec*, prep. 8  
*tout*, plur. *tous*, adj. 9 *do-*  
*mestique*, n. m. 10 *il y eut*.  
11 *alors*, adv. 12 *grand*, adj.  
13 *cri*, n. m. 14 *en*, prep.  
15 *car*, conj. 16 *maison*,  
n. f. 17 *où*, adv. 18 *un*,  
adj. 19 *mort*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *Faire venir*, v. 5. 2.  
*Moïse*, n. m. 3 *frere*, n. m.  
4 *pendant la nuit*. 5 *dire*,  
v. 4. 6 *se lever*, v. 1. 7  
*sortir*, v. 2. 8 *du milieu*  
*de*. 9 *peuple*, n. m. 10  
*tant*. 11 *que*. 12 *aller*,  
v. 1. 13 *servir*, v. 2.  
14 *Seigneur*, n. m. 15

said

said. Take 16 your 17 flocks and your herds 17; be gone 18, and bless 19 me.

(D.) The Egyptians were 1 urgent upon the people 1, that 2 they might send 3 them out 3 of the land 4 in 5 haste 5; for 6 they said, we 7 be all dead men 7.

(E.) Before 1 the children of Israel set out 1, the Lord gave 2 them favour 3 in 4 the sight of 4 the Egyptians, who 5 lent 6 them jewels 7 and raiment 8.

(F.) The number 1 of 2 the men who 2 left 3 Egypt 2-  
mounted 4 to 5 fix 6 hundred 6 thousand 6, besides 7 the  
children 8. A 9 mixt multitude 9 went up 10 also 11 with 12  
them, and 13 flocks and herds, even very much cattle 13.

(G.) The Lord went 1 before 2 them by 3 day 3 in 4 a pil-  
lar 5 of a cloud 6, to 7 lead 8 them the way 9, and by 10  
night 10 in a pillar of fire 11, to 12 give them light 12.

### The DICTIONARY.

*comme, conj.* 16 prendre,  
v. 6. 17 vos troupeaux de  
gros & de menu bétail. 18  
allez vous en. 19 benir,  
v. 2.

(D.) 1 Prestoient le peupl'e. 2 afin  
de. 3 faire sortir, v. 5.  
2. 4 pays, n. m. 5 à la  
bâte. 6 car. conj. 7 nous  
sommes tous morts.

(E.) 1 Avant le départ des en-  
fans d'Israel 2 faire trouver,  
v. 5. 1. 3 grace, n. f. 4  
devant, prep. 5 qui. 6.  
prêter, v. 1. 7 joyau, plur.  
aux, n. m. 8 habit, n. m.

(F.) 1 Nombre, n. m. 2 de ceux  
qui. 3 quitter, v. 1. 4 se

monter, v. 1. 5 à, prep.  
6 fix cens mille. 7 outre,  
prep. 8 enfant, plur. ans,  
n. m. 9 un grande multi-  
tude de gens de toute espèce.  
10. partir, v. 2. 11 aux-  
si, conj. 12 avec, conj.  
13 & ils emmenerent du gros  
& du menu bétail en abon-  
dance.

(G.) 1. Marcher, v. 1. 2 devant,  
prep. 3 pendant le jour.  
4 dans, prep. 5 colonne,  
n. f. 6 nuée, n. f. 7 pour,  
prep. 8 montrer, v. 1.  
9 chemin, n. m. 10 pen-  
dant la nuit. 11 feu, n. m.  
12 pour les éclairer.

IX. *The Passage 1 of the Red 3 Sea 2.*

(A.) When 1 it 2 was told the 2 king 3 of Egypt 4, that 5 the Israelites 6 were gone 7, his heart 8 and that 9 of his servants 10 were turned 11 against 12 them 12, and they said 13, *why 14 have we done this 14, that 15 we let Israel go 15 from 18 serving us 18.*

(B.) Then 1 Pharaoh 2 got 3 in 4 his chariot 5, took 6 his people 7 with 8 him, pursued 9 the children 10 of Israel, and found 11 them encamped 12 near the 13 sea 15 shore 14.

(C.) When the Egyptians 1 drew 2 nigh 2, the Israelites lifted up 3 their eyes 4, and perceiving 5 that 6 the Egyptians were marching 7 after 8 them, they 9 were sore afraid 9, and cried up 10 unto the Lord 11.

(D.) They said also 1 to Moses 2, *because 3 there were no graves in Egypt 3, hast thou taken 4 us away 4 to 5 die 6 in 7 the wilderness 8? Wherfore 9 hast thou dealt thus with us, to car-*

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *Passage* n. m. 2 *mer*, n. f. 3 *rouge*, adj.

(A.) 1 *Quand*. 2 *on eut rapporté au*, 3 *roi*, n. m. 4 *Egypte*, n. f. 5 *que*, conj. 6 *Israélite*, n. m. 7 *partir*, v. 2. 8 *coeur*, n. m. 9 *celui*, pron. nom. 10 *domestique*, n. m. 11 *changer*, v. 1. 12 *à leur égard*. 13 *dire*, v. 4. 14 *qu'est-ce que nous avons fait*. 15 *de*, prep. 16 *laisser aller Israël*. 17 *de sorte qu'il ne nous servira plus*.

(B.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *Pharaon*, n. m. 3 *monter*, v. 1. 4 *sur*, prep. 5 *chariot*, n. m. 6 *prendre*, v. 6. 7 *peuple*, n. m. 8 *avec*, prep. 9 *pour-*

*suivre*, v. 4. 10 *enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 11 *trouver*, v. 1. 12 *camper*, v. 1. 13 *près du*. 14 *rivage*, n. m. 15 *mer*, n. f.

(C.) 1 *Égyptien*, n. m. 2 *s'approcher*, v. 1. 3 *lever*, v. 1. 4 *les yeux*. 5 *s'apercevoir*, v. 3. 6 *que*, conj. 7 *marcher*, v. 1. 8 *après*, prep. 9 *ils eurent grand' peur*. 10 *crier*, v. 1. 11 *Seigneur*, n. m.

(D.) 1 *Aussi*, conj. 2 *Mosée*, n. m. 3 *est-ce*, parcequ'il n'y *avoit point de tombeaux en Egypte*, que. 4 *emmener*, v. 1. 5 *par*, prep. 6 *mourir*, v. 2. 7 *dans*, prep. 8 *désert*, n. m. 9 *pourquoi nous as-tu*

ry us forth out of Egypt 9? Is 10 not this 10 the 11 word  
that 11 we did tell 12 thee in 13 Egypt, saying, Let 14 us  
alone 15 that 16 we may serve 17 the Egyptians? For 18 it  
19 had been better 19 for 20 us to 21 serve the Egyptians,  
than 22 we should die 22 in the wilderness.

(E.) Moses said unto the people, fear 1 ye not, stand 2 still 2,  
and see 3 the salvation 4 of the Lord 5, which 6 he will shew 7  
you to day 8; for 9 the Egyptians 9 whom 10 you have seen 11  
to day, ye shall see 12 them again 12 no 13 more 13. The  
Lord shall fight 14 for 15 you, and 16 you shall hold your  
peace 16.

(F.) The Lord said to Moses, speak 1 unto the children of  
Israel, that 2 they go forward 3; but 4 lift 6 thou 5 up 6 thy  
rod 7, and stretch out 8 thy hand 9 over 10 the sea 11, and di-  
vide 12 it; and the children of Israel shall go 13 on 14 dry  
ground 14 through 15 the midst 15 of the sea. And I will  
harden 16 the hearts 17 of the Egyptians, and they shall fol-  
low 18 them; and I will get 19 me honour 19 upon 20 Pha-  
raoh, and upon all 21 his host 22, upon his chariots, and upon  
his horsemen 23, and the Egyptians shall know 24 that 25 I am  
the Lord.

### The DICTIONARY.

fait sortir ainsi d'Egypte? 10  
n'est-ce pas. 11 ce que, pron.  
nom. 12 dire, v. 4. 13 en,  
prep. 14 laisser, v. 1. 15  
en repos. 16 afin que. 17  
servir, v. 2. 18 car, conj.  
19 il auroit mieux vallu.  
20 pour, prep. 21 de, prep.  
22 que de mourir.

(E.) 1 Craindre, v. 6. 2 s'arrê-  
ter, v. 1. 3 voir, v. 3. 4 dé-  
livrance, n. f. 5 Seigneur,  
n. m. 6 que, pron. 7 mon-  
trer, v. 1. 8 aujourd'hui,  
adv. 9 quant aux Egypiens.  
10 que, pron. 11 voir,  
v. 3. 12 revoir, v. 3. 13  
plus, adv. 14 combattre, v.

4. 15 pour, prep. 16 &  
vous demeurerez tranquilles.

(F.) 1 Parler, v. 1. 2 que, conj.  
3 marcher, v. 1. 4 mais,  
conj. 5 toi, pron. nom.  
6 lever, v. 1. 7 verge, n. f.  
8 étendre, v. 6. 9 main, n. f.  
10 sur, prep. 11 mer, n. f.  
12 séparer, v. 1. 13 marcher,  
v. 1. 14 à sec. 15 au milieu.  
16 endurcir, v. 2. 17 coeur,  
n. m. 18 suivre, v. 4. 19  
être glorifié, v. p. 20 au  
sujet de. 21 tout, adj. 22  
armée, n. f. 23 cavalier,  
n. m. 24 savoir, v. 3. 25  
que, conj.

(G.)

(G.) The angel <sup>1</sup> of God <sup>2</sup>, who <sup>3</sup> went <sup>4</sup> before <sup>5</sup> the camp <sup>6</sup> of <sup>7</sup> Israel <sup>7</sup>, removed <sup>8</sup>, and went <sup>9</sup> behind <sup>10</sup> them; and the pillar <sup>11</sup> of the cloud <sup>12</sup> went <sup>13</sup> from <sup>14</sup> before their face <sup>14</sup>, and stood <sup>15</sup> behind them; and <sup>16</sup> it came <sup>16</sup> between <sup>17</sup> the camp of the Egyptians and the camp of Israel, and it was a cloud of darkness <sup>18</sup> to them <sup>19</sup>, but <sup>20</sup> it gave <sup>21</sup> light <sup>22</sup> by night <sup>23</sup> to these <sup>24</sup>, so that <sup>25</sup> the one <sup>26</sup> came <sup>27</sup> not near <sup>27</sup> the other <sup>28</sup> all <sup>29</sup> the night <sup>30</sup>.

(H.) Moses having stretched out his hands over the sea, the Lord caused <sup>1</sup> the sea to go back <sup>1</sup> by <sup>3</sup> a <sup>4</sup> strong <sup>5</sup> east wind <sup>4</sup> all <sup>2</sup> that night <sup>2</sup>, and <sup>6</sup> made it dry land <sup>6</sup>.

(I.) And the children of Israel went <sup>1</sup> into <sup>2</sup> the midst <sup>2</sup> of the sea upon <sup>3</sup> dry ground <sup>3</sup>; and the waters <sup>4</sup> were <sup>5</sup> a wall unto them <sup>5</sup> on <sup>6</sup> their right hand <sup>6</sup> and on <sup>7</sup> their left <sup>7</sup>.

(K.) The Egyptians pursued <sup>1</sup>, and went in <sup>2</sup> after <sup>3</sup> them to the midst of the sea. In <sup>4</sup> the morning <sup>6</sup> watch <sup>5</sup>, the Lord looked unto <sup>7</sup> their host through <sup>8</sup> the <sup>8</sup> pillar of fire <sup>9</sup>, and

### The DICTIONARY.

(G.) <sup>1</sup> Ange, n. m. <sup>2</sup> Dieu, n. m. <sup>3</sup> qui, pron. <sup>4</sup> marcher, v. i. <sup>5</sup> devant, prep. <sup>6</sup> camp, n. m. <sup>7</sup> des Israélites. <sup>8</sup> se retirer, v. i. <sup>9</sup> aller, v. i. <sup>10</sup> derrière, prep. <sup>11</sup> colonne, n. f. <sup>12</sup> nuée, n. f. <sup>13</sup> s'en aller, v. i. <sup>14</sup> de devant eux. <sup>15</sup> s'arrêter, v. i. <sup>16</sup> & se mit, <sup>17</sup> entre, prep. <sup>18</sup> ténèbres, n. f. plur. <sup>19</sup> à ceux-là. <sup>20</sup> mais, conj. <sup>21</sup> donner, v. i. <sup>22</sup> lumière, n. f. <sup>23</sup> pendant la nuit. <sup>24</sup> à ceux-ci. <sup>25</sup> de sorte que. <sup>26</sup> les uns. <sup>27</sup> approcher de, v. i. <sup>28</sup> autre,

pron. nom. <sup>29</sup> de toute. <sup>30</sup> nuit, n. f.

(H.) <sup>1</sup> Fit reculer la mer. <sup>2</sup> durant toute la nuit. <sup>3</sup> par, prep. <sup>4</sup> un vent d'est. <sup>5</sup> qui étoit violent. <sup>6</sup> & la mit à sec.

(I.) <sup>1</sup> Entrer, v. i. <sup>2</sup> au milieu. <sup>3</sup> à sec. <sup>4</sup> eau, n. f. <sup>5</sup> leur servoient de muraille. <sup>9</sup> à droite. <sup>7</sup> à gauche.

(K.) <sup>1</sup> Les poursuivirent. <sup>2</sup> entrer, v. i. <sup>3</sup> après, prep. <sup>4</sup> vers, prep. <sup>5</sup> veille, n. f. <sup>6</sup> matin, n. m. <sup>7</sup> regarder, v. i. <sup>8</sup> au travers de la. <sup>9</sup> feu, n. m. <sup>10</sup> mettre en déroute, v. 4.

## EXERCISES upon the

of the cloud, and troubled 10 them ; and having ordered 11 Moses to 12 stretch forth his hand over the sea, he did 13 it, and the waters returned 14, and covered 15 the chariots, the horsemen, and all the host of Pharaoh, so that 16 there 17 remained not so much as one of them 17.

(L.) But 1 the children of Israel walked 2 upon 3 dry land 3 in the midst of the sea, and the waters were a wall unto them on their right hand and on their left.

(M.) Thus 1 the Lord saved 2 Israel that 3 day 3 out 4 of the hand 4 of the Egyptians ; and Israel, seeing 5 the Egyptians dead 6 upon 7 the sea-shore 8, feared 9 the Lord, and believed 10 the Lord and his servant 11 Moses.

## The DICTIONARY

prep. and n. f. 11 com-	(M.) 1 Ainsi. 2 délivrer, v. 1,
mander à, v. 1. 12 de,	3 ce jour-là. 4 des mains. 5
prep. 13 faire, v. 5. 14	voir, v. 3, 6 mourir, v. 2.
se réunir, v. 2. 15 cou-	7 sur; prep. 8 rivage, n. m.
vrir, v. 2. 16 de sorte que.	9 craindre, v. 6. 10 croire,
17 il n'en restait pas un seul.	v. 5. 11 serviteur, n. m.
(L.) 1 Mais, conj. 2 marcher,	
v. 1. 3 à sec.	

X. The Children 1 of Israel murmuring 2 in 3 the Wilderness 4 for 5 want of Bread 5, God 6 sends 7 them Quails 8 and Manna 9.

(A.) The Israelites 1 being in the wilderness, and finding 2 themselves 2 without 3 bread 4, murmured 5 against 6

## The DICTIONARY.

(A.) 1 Enfant, plur. ans, n. m.	v. 1. 8 caille, n. f. 9
2 murmurer, v. 1. 3 dans,	manne, n. f.
prep. 4 désert, n. m. 5 par-	(A.) 1 Israélite, n. m. 2 se trou-
ce qu'ils n'ont point de pain.	ver, v. 1. 3 sans, prep. 4
6 Dieu, n. m. 7 envoyer,	pain, n. m. 5 murmurer, v. 2.
	6 contre, prep. 7 Moïse, n.
	Moses

Moses 7 and Aaron. The Lord 8, to 9 put 10 an 11 end 12 to their complaints 13, said 13 to Moses, speak 14 to the children of Israel saying, at even 15 ye shall eat 16 flesh 17, and 18 in the morning 18 ye shall be filled 19 with 20 bread, and ye shall know 21 that 22 I am the Lord your God.

(B.) And 1 it came to pafs 1, that 2 at even 3 the 4 quails came up and covered 4 the camp 5, and in 6 the morning 6 there 7 lay 7 round 9 about 9 the host 10 on 8 the ground 8 a round 12 thing 11 as 13 small as 13 the hoar frost 14.

(C.) The children of Israel, knowing not what 1 it was, called 2 it manna; and Moses said unto them, This 3 is 3 bread which 4 the Lord has given 5 unto you to 6 eat 7 i gather 8 of it 9 an omer 10 for 11 every man 11.

(D.) The children of Israel gathered it, some 1 more 2, some 3 less 4; and when 5 they did mete 6 it, he 7 that 8 gathered 9 much 9 had 10 nothing over 10, and he that gathered little 11, had 12 no lack 12.

### The DICTIONARY.

m. 8 Seigneur, n. m. 9 pour, prep. 10 mettre, v.  
4. 11 fin, n. f. 12 plainte, n. f. 13 dire, v. 4. 14 parler, v. 1. 15 ce soir. 16 manger, v. 1. 17 viande, n. f. 18 & demain au matin. 19 rassasier, v. 1. 20 de, prep. 21 savoir, v. 3. 22 que, conj.

(B.) 1 & il arriva. 2 que, conj. 3 vers le faire. 4 des cailles vinrent couvrir. 5 camp, n. m. 6 le lendemain au matin. 7 il y eut. 8 sur la terre. 9 autour de. 10 armée, n. f. 11 chose, n. f. 12 ronde,

adj. aussi petite que. 14 celle blanche, n. f. and adj.

(C.) 1 Ce que, pron. nom. 2 appeler, v. 1. 3 voila. 4 que, pron. 5 donner, v. 1. 6 à, prep. 7 manger, v. 1. 8 ramasser, v. 1. 9 en, pron. conj. 10 omer, n. m. 11 par tête.

(D.) 1 Les uns. 2 plus, adv. 3 les autres. 4 moins, adv. 5 quand. 6 mesurer, v. 1. 7 celui, pron. nom. 8 qui. 9 en ramassa beaucoup. 10 n'en avoit pas plus qu'il ne lui en falloit. 11 peu, adv. 12 n'en avoit pas moins.

196 EXERCISES upon the

(E.) Moses 1 said, let 2 no man leave of it 2 till the 3 morning 4. Some 5 of the Israelites 5 harkned 6 not unto him; they left 8 of it 7, it 9 bred worms 9 and 10 stank 10; and Moses was 11 wroth 11 with 12 them.

(F.) It 1 came to pass 1 that 2 on 3 the sixth day 3 they gathered twice 4 as much bread 4, viz. 5 two 6 omers for 7 one man 7. Moses said to them, keep 8 a part 10 of 9 it 9 for 11 to-morrow 12 which 13 is a 14 sabbath unto the Lord 14, wherein 15 you 16 are to do 16 no 17 manner 18 of work 19. They did 20 as 21 they were commanded 21 and it 22 did not stink 22, neither 23 was there any worm therein 23.

(G.) Moses said, eat that 1 to day 2, for 3 to day ye 4 shall find none 4 in 5 the fields 6. Six days 8 ye shall gather it 7, but 9 on 10 the seventh day 10, which 11 is the sabbath, there 12 shall be none 12.

(H.) There came to pass that there 2 went out some of the people 2 on 1 the seventh day 1 to 3 gather it, and they 4

The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 Moïse, n. m. 2 que personne n'en garde. 3 jusqu'au matin, n. m. 5 quelques Israélites. 6 obeir, v. 2. 7 en, pron. conj. 8 laisser, v. t. 9 il s'y engendra des vers. 10 la manne pua. 11 fut fâché. 12 contre, prep.

(F.) 1 Il arriva. 2 que, conj. 3 le sixième jour. 4 deux fois autant de pain qu'à l'ordinaire. 5 c'est-à-dire. 6 deux, adj. 7 par tête. 8 garder, v. t. 9 en, pron. conj. 10 partie, n. f. 11 pour, prep. 12 demain. 13 qui, pron. 14 le sabbath du Seigneur. 15 dans lequel. 16 vous ne devrez

faire. 17 aucun, pron. adj. 18 sorte, n. f. 19 ouvrage, n. m. 20 faire, v. 5. 21 comme on leur avait commandé. 22 la manne ne pua point. 23 & on n'y trouva point de vers.

(G.) 1 La, pron. 2 au jourd'hui, adv. 3 car, conj. 4 vous n'en trouverez point. 5 dans, prep. 6 champ, n. m. 7 la. 8 pendant six jours. 9 mais, conj. 10 le septième jour. 11 qui, pron. 12 il n'y en aura point.

(H.) 1 Au septième jour. 2 quelques uns d'entre le peuple sortirent. 3 pour, prep. 4 ils n'en trouverent point. 5 pendant found

found none 4. The children of Israel did eat manna forty 5 years 5, until 6 they came 7 unto 8 the borders 9 of the land 10 of Canaan. This kind 11 of bread 12 was like 13 coriander-15-seed 14, white 16, and the 17 taste of it was like wafers 17 made 18 with 19 honey 20.

## The DICTIONARY.

quarante ans.	6 jusqu'à ce que.	riandre, n. m. 16 & blanche.
7 arriver, v. t.	8 sur, prep.	17 & elle avoit le goût de beignets.
9 frontiere, n. f.	10 terre, n. f.	18 faire, v. t.
11 forte, n. f.	12 pain, n. m.	19 avec, prep. 20 miel, n. m.
13 comme.	14 graine, n. f.	15 co-

### XI. The Israelites murmur 1 for 2 water 2 at 3 Rephidim.

(A.) The children 1 of Israel having pitched 2 in 3 Rephidim, there 4 was there no water for them 4 to 5 drink 6, and they chid 7 with 8 Moses 9, and said 10, give 11 us water that 12 we may 13 drink. Moses said unto them, Why 14 abide you with me? wherfore 15 do you tempt 16 the Lord 17?

(B.) The people 1 being 2 thirsty 2, said, wherfore 3 is this that 3 thou hast brought 4 us up 4 out 5 of 5 Egypt 6, to 7 kill 8 us 11, and our children and our 12 cattle 12 with 9 thirst 10?

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Murmurer, v. t.	2 faute d'eau.	3 à, prep.	15 pourquoi.	16 tenter, v. t.
4 il n'y avoit point d'eau.	5 à, prep.	6 boire, v. t.	7 pour,	8 faire mourir, v. t.
7 se fâcher, v. t.	8 contre,	9 Moïse, n. m.	10 de,	11 nous,
10 dire, v. t.	11 donner, v. t.	12 afin que.	13 pouvoir,	12 nos troupeaux.
13 pourquoi,	14 pourquois, adv.	15. 3.	16. 3.	(C.)

## EXERCISES upon the

(C.) And Moses cried 1 unto 2 the Lord 3, saying,  
What 4 shall I do 5 unto this people? they be almost 6 ready 7  
to 8 stone 9 me.

(D.) The Lord said unto Moses, go on 1 before 2 the people,  
and take 3 with 4 thee of 5 the elders of Israel 5, and thy rod 8  
wherewith 9 thou smotest 10 the river 11, take in 6 thy hand 7  
and go 12. Behold, I will stand 13 before 15 them there 14 upon  
16 the rock 17 in 18 Horeb, and thou shalt smite 19 the  
rock, and there 20 shall come water out of it 20, that 21 the  
people may 22 drink.

(E.) Moses did so 1 in 2 the sight 2 of the elders 3 of Israel.  
Water immediately 5 came 4 out 4 of the rock, and the  
people had 6 enough of it 6, for 7 themselves 8, their  
children and their cattle 9.

## The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 Crier, v. 1. 2 vers, prep. 3 Seigneur, n. m. 4 que, pron. nom. 5 faire, v. 5. 6 presque, adv. 7 prêt, adj. 8 de, prep. 9 lapidés, v. 1.

(D.) 1 Passer, v. 1. 2 devant, prep. 3 prendre, v. 6. 4 avec, prep. 5 quelques uns des anciens d' Israël. 6 en, prep. 7 main, n. f. 8 baguette, n. f. 9 avec laquelle. 10 frapper, v. 1. 11 rivière, n. f. 12 s'en al-

ler, v. 1. 13 se tenir, v. 2. 14 là, adv. 15 devant, prep. 16 sur, prep. 17 rucher, n. m. 18 dans, prep. 19 frapper, v. 1. 20 il en sortira de l'eau. 21 afin que. 22 pouvoir, v. 3. (E.) 1 ainsi, adv. 2 à la vue, 3 ancien, n. m. 4 sortir, v. 2. 5 aussi-tôt. 6 en eut affez. 7 pour, prep. 8 lui-même, pron. nom. 9 bétail, n. m.

## XII. The Walls 1 of Jericho 2 fall down 3.

(A) Jericho being straitly 1 shut up 2 because 3 of the 3 children 4 of Israel, the Lord 5 said 6 unto Joshua 7, 1

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Muraille, n. f. 2 Jéricho, n. m. 3 tomber, v. 1. (A.) 1 Soigneusement, adv. 2 fermer, v. 1. 3 a cause des.

4 enfant, plur. ans, n. m. 5 seigneur, n. m. 6 dire, v. 4. 7 Josué, n. m. 8 avoir

have given 8 into 9 thy bands 10 Jericho. Ye shall compass 14 that city 15, all 11 ye 11 men 12 of war 13, once 6 a day 16 for 17 six 18 days 19. Seven 20 priests 21 shall bear 22 before 23 the ark 24 seven trumpets 25 of rams 27 horns 26. The seventh 28 day ye shall compass the city seven times 29, and the priests shall blow 30 with 31 the trumpets.

(B.) When 1 ye bear 2 the sound 3 of the trumpet, all 4 the people 5 shall 6 shout with a great shout 6; the wall of the city shall fall down, and the people shall ascend up 7 every 8 man 8 straight 9 before him 10.

(C.) Joshua repeated 1 the words 2 of the Lord to the children of Israel. They did 3 what 4 they 5 were commanded to do 5. As 6 soon as 6 they shouted with a great shout, the walls of Jericho fell down. The Israelites 7 went up 8 into 9 the city, every man straight before him, and took 10 it.

(D.) There was in 1 Jericho a 2 harlot 2 who 3 had concealed 4 the spies 5 whom 6 Joshua had sent 7 to 8 view 9 the country 10. These two 11 young 12 men 13 had pro-

### The DICTIONARY.

*mettre*, v. 4. 9 entre, prep.  
10 main, n. f. 11 vous tous.  
12 homme, n. m. 13 guerre,  
n. f. 14 faire le tour de,  
v. 5. n. m. and art. 15 ville,  
n. f. 16 une fois par jour, 17  
durant, prep. 18 fix, adj.  
19 jour, n. m. 20 sept,  
adj. und. 21 prêtre, n. m.  
22 porter, v. 1. 23 devant,  
prep. 24 arche, n. f. 25  
trompette, n. f. 26 corne, n. f.  
27 bétier, n. m. 28 septième,  
adj. 29 fois, n. f. 30 sonner,  
v. 1. 31 de, prep.  
(B.) 1 Quand, 2 entendre, v.  
6. 3 sou, n. m. 4 tout, adj.  
5 people, n. m. 6 jettera un

grand cri de réjouissance. 7  
monter, v. 1. 8 chacun,  
pron. nom. 9 tout droit. 10  
foi.

(C.) Répéter, v. 1. 2 parole,  
n. f. 3 faire, v. 5. 4 ce que,  
pron. nom. 5 on leur com-  
mande de faire. 6 dès qu'ils.  
7 Israélite, n. m. 8 monter,  
v. 1. 9 dans, prep. 10  
prendre, v. 6.

(D.) 1 à, prep. 2 une femme  
de mauvaise vie. 3 qui,  
pron. 4 cacher, v. 1. 5  
espion, n. m. 6 que, pron.  
7 envoyer, v. 1. 8 pour,  
prep. 9 examiner, v. 1. 10  
pays, n. m. 11 deux, adj.

mised 14 to 15 save 16 her with 17 her family 18. She and her relations 19 were 20 no sooner sent 20 to the camp 21, but 22 the children of Israel according to 23 the order 24 they had received 25 from 26 God 27, destroyed 28 all 29 that was 29 in 30 the city, men, women 31 and children, and burnt 32 it.

## The DICTIONARY.

12 <i>jeune</i> , adj.	13 <i>homme</i> ,	n. m.	22 <i>que</i> , conj.	23 <i>selon</i> ,
14 <i>promettre</i> , v.	4.		24 <i>ordre</i> , n. m.	25 <i>re-</i>
15 <i>de</i> , prep.	16 <i>sauver</i> ,		<i>cevoir</i> , v.	26 <i>de</i> , prep.
17 <i>avec</i> , prep.	18		27 <i>Dieu</i> , n. m.	28 <i>détruire</i> , v.
19 <i>family</i> , n. f.	19 <i>parent</i> ,		29 <i>tout ce qui étoit</i> .	30 <i>days</i> ,
20 <i>plur. ens</i> , n. m.	20 <i>ne furent</i>		31 <i>femme</i> , n. f.	32
21 <i>pas plutôt envoyés</i> .	21 <i>camp</i> ,		33 <i>bruler</i> , v. l.	

### XIII. Joshua 1 rescues 2 Gideon 3 and stops 4 the Sun 5 and Moon 6.

(A) The five 1 kings 2 of the Amorites 3, hearing 4 that 5 the Gibeonites 6 had made 7 peace 8 with 9 the children 10 of Israel, gathered 11 themselves together 11 and went 12 to encamp 13 before 14 Gideon, and 15 made war against it 15.

(B) The men 1 of that city 2 sent 3 to Joshua, saying 4, Slack 5 not thy bands 6 from 7 thy servants 8; come up 9 to 11

## The DICTIONARY.

1 <i>Josué</i> , n. m.	2 <i>délivrer</i> , v.	bler, v. l.	12 <i>aller</i> , v. l.
1, 3 <i>Gabaön</i> , n. m.	4 <i>ar-</i> <i>réter</i> , v. l.	13 <i>camper</i> , v. l.	14 <i>devant</i> ,
5 <i>soleil</i> , n. m.		prep.	15 & <i>lui firent la</i>
6 <i>lune</i> , n. f.			<i>guerre</i> .

(A.) 1 <i>cinq</i> , adj. und.	2 <i>roi</i> , n. m.	(B.) 1 <i>Habitant</i> , plur. n. m.	ans,
3 <i>Amoréen</i> , n. m.		2 <i>ville</i> , n. f.	3 <i>en-</i>
4 <i>apprendre</i> , v.	5 <i>que</i> , conj.	4 <i>dire</i> , v. 4.	
6 <i>Gabaönite</i> , n. m.		5 <i>retirer</i> , v. l.	6 <i>main</i> , n. f.
7 <i>faire</i> , v. 5.	8 <i>paix</i> , n. f.	7 <i>de</i> , prep.	8 <i>serviteur</i> , n.
9 <i>avec</i> , prep.		9 <i>monter</i> , v. l.	10
plur. ans, n. m.	11 <i>s'assem-</i>	promptement	vers,

*us quickly 10 and save 12 us, for 13 all 14 the kings of the Amorites are gathered together against 15 us.*

(C.) So 2 Joshua ascended 1 from 3 Gilgal 4, he 5 and all 6 the people of war 6 with 7 him, and all 8 the mighty men of valour 8.

(D.) And the Lord 1 said unto Joshua, fear 2 them not: for I have delivered 3 them into 4 thy bands; there 5 shall not a man of them stand before thee 5.

(E.) Joshua therefore 2 came 1 unto 4 them suddenly 3; and the Lord flew 6 a part 6 of them 5 at 7 Gibeon and put 8 the rest 9 to 10 flight 10. As 11 they fled 11, he cast down 12 great 13 stones 14 from heaven 15 upon 16 them and a great 17 number 18 of 19 them 19 died 20.

(F.) Joshua then 1 said in 2 the sight 2 of Israel, Sun 3, stand 4 thou still 4 upon 5 Gibeon, and thou 6 moon 7 in 8 the valley 9 of Ajalon. And the sun stood still, and the moon stayed 10, until 11 the people 12 had avenged themselves 13 upon 14 their enemies 15.

### The DICTIONARY.

prep. 12 sauver, v. r. o. 13 bon  
car, conj. 14 tout, plur. tous,  
adj. 15 contre, prep.  
(C.) 1 Monter, v. i. 2 donc.  
3 de, prep. 4 Guigal, n.  
m. 5 lui, pron. nom. 6 tout  
le peuple propre à la guerre.  
7 avec, prep. 8 tous les  
hommes forts & courageux.

(D.) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2  
craindre, v. 6. 3 livrer, v.  
1. 4 entre, prep. 5 il n'y  
aura aucun d'eux qui puisse te  
résister.

(E.) 1 Marcher, v. i. 2 donc.  
3 au plus vite. 4 contre,  
prep. 5 en, pron. conj. 6  
tua une partie. 7 à;

prep. 8 mettre, v. 4. 9  
reste, n. m. 10 en fuite.  
11 comme ils s'envoyaient.  
12 faire tomber, v. 5. 1. 13  
gras, se, adj. 14 pierre, n. f.  
15 du ciel. 16 sur, prep.  
17 grand, adj. 18 nombre,  
n. m. 19 d'entre eux. 20  
mourir, v. 2.

(F.) 1 Donc. 2 en présence.  
3 soleil, n. m. 4 s'arrêter,  
v. i. 5 sur, prep. 6 toi,  
pron. nom. 7 lune, n. f. 8  
dans, prep. 9 vallée, n. f.  
10 ne brugea point. 11  
jusqu'à ce que. 12 peuple, n.  
m. 13 se venger, v. i. 14  
de, prep. 15 ennemi, n. m.

(G.) The greatest 1 part of the Amorites perished 2 that 3 day 3 with 4 their five kings, and 5 there were but few 5 that 6 escaped 7 death 8, by 9 entering 9 into 10 fenced 11 cities.

## The DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 *Grand*, adj. 2 *périr*, pron. 7 *échapper*, v. i. 8  
v. 2. 3 *ce jour-là*. 4 *avec*, mort, n. f. 9 *en entrant*, 10  
prep. 5 *&* il n'y en eût dans, prep. 11 *murer*, v. i.  
qu'un petit nombre. 6 *qui*,

#### XIV. Gideon 1 defeats 2 the Midianites 3 with 4 Trumpets, 5 Pitchers 6 and Lamps 7.

(A.) The children 1 of Israel did 2 evil 3 in 4 the sight 4 of the Lord 5, who 6 delivered 7 them into 8 the hands 9 of Midian 10. After 11 they had been oppressed 12 seven 13 years 13, he took 14 pity 15 of them and resolved 16 to 17 save 18 them.

(B.) Gideon was pitched upon 1 to 2 be their leader 2 against 3 their enemies 4. This great 5 man 6 having gathered together 7 a great number 8 of his countrymen 9,

## The DICTIONARY.

1 <i>Gédéon</i> , n. m.	2 <i>défaire</i> , v.	3 <i>Madianite</i> , n. m.	4 <i>avec</i> , prep.	5 <i>trompette</i> , n. f.	6 <i>cruche</i> , n. f.	7 <i>lampe</i> , n. f.	8. v. i. 13 <i>pendant sept ans</i>	14 <i>avoir</i> , v. aux.	15 <i>pitié</i> , n. f.	16 <i>résoudre</i> , v. 5	17 <i>de</i> , prep.	18 <i>sauver</i> , v. i.
-------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------	------------------------	-------------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------	--------------------------

(A.) 1 *Enfant*, plur. *ans*, n. m. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *le mal*. 4 *en présence*. 5 *Sieur*, n. m. 6 *qui*, pron. 7 *livrer*, v. i. 8 *entre*, prep. 9 *main*, n. f. 10 *Madian*, n. m. 11 *après que*. 12 *opprimer*,

(B.) 1 *Choisir*, v. 2 pour les conduire. 3 contre, prep. 4 *ennemis*, n. m. 5 *grand*, adj. 6 *homme*, n. m. 7 *assembler*, v. i. 8 *nombre*, n. m. 9 *compatriote*, n. m.

the

the Lord said 10 to him, the people 11 that 12 are 12 with thee, are 13 too many 13 for 14 me to give 14 the Midianites into their bands, lest 15 Israel vaunt themselves 16 against 17 me; saying, my own hand has saved 18 me. Now 19 therefore 20 go to 21, and proclaim 22, saying 22, whosoever 23 is fearful 24 and afraid 25, let him return 26.

(C.) There 4 returned 4 of the people twenty 1 two 2 thousand 3, and there 5 remained 5 ten 6 thousand. The Lord then 7 said to Gideon, the people are yet 8 too many; bring 9 them down 9 into 10 the water 11; I will try 13 them for 14 thee there 12; and that 15 of whom 16 I say unto 17 thee 17, this 18 shall go with thee, the same shall go with thee; and of 19 whosoever 19 I say unto thee, this 20 shall not go with thee, the same shall not go.

(D.) So 1 Gideon brought down 1 the people unto the water, and the Lord said unto him, every 2 one that lappeth of the water 2 with his 3 tongue 3 as 4 a dog 5 lappeth, him shalt thou set 6 by 7 himself 7, likewise 8 every 9 one that boweth down upon his knees 9 to 10 drink 11.

### The DICTIONARY.

- 10 dire, v. 4. 11 peuple, n.  
 m. 12 qui est. 13 est en  
 trop grand nombre. 14 pour  
 que je livre. 15 de peur que.  
 16 se glorifier, v. 1. 17  
 contre, prep. 18 délivrer,  
 v. 1. 19 maintenant, adv.  
 20 donc, conj. 21 aller, v.  
 1. 22 dis à haute voix. 23  
 quiconque, pron. nom. 24  
 craintif, adj. 25 peureux,  
 adj. 26 s'en retourner, v. 4.  
 (C.) 1 Vingt, adj. und. 2  
 deux, adj. 3 mille, adj. und.  
 4 s'en retournerent. 5 il en  
 resta. 6 dix, adj. 7 alors,  
 adv. 8 encore, adv. 9 faire  
 descendre, v. 5. 6. 10 vers,  
 prep. 11 eau, n. f. 12 y,  
 pron. conj. 13 essayer, v.  
 1. 14 pour, prep. 15 celui,  
 pron. nom. 16 dont, pron.  
 17 te, pron. conj. 18 celui-  
 ci, pron. nom. 19 celui  
 dont. 20 celui-là, pron.  
 nom.  
 (D.) Gédeon fit donc descendre.  
 2 quiconque lappera l'eau. 3  
 la langue. 4 comme, conj. 5  
 chien, n. m. 6 mettre, v. 4.  
 7 à part. 8 pareillement,  
 adv. 9 tous ceux qui plieront  
 le genou. 10 pour, prep.  
 11 boire, v. 5.

(E.) The number 1 of them that 2 lapped 3, putting 4 their hand 5 to their mouth 6, were 7 three hundred men 7, but 8 all 9 the rest 10 of the people bowed 11 down upon their knees 11 to drink water.

(F.) And the Lord said unto Gideon, by 2 the three 3 hundred 4 men 5, that lapped will I save 1 you, and deliver 6 the Midianites into thy bands; and let 7 all the other people go 7 every 8 man 8 unto 9 his place 9.

(G.) Gideon sent 1 the rest of the Israelites every 2 man 2 to his tent 3, retained 4 the three hundred men, went 5 with them to meet 6 the enemy 7; and having put 8 in 9 every man's hand 9 a trumpet and an empty 10 pitcher with a lamp within 11 the pitcher, he said to them, when 12 I come 13 to 14 the outside of 14 the Midianites's camp 15, it 16 shall be that as I do, so shall ye do 16.

(H.) When Gideon and his three hundred men came 1 to the outside of the camp, he blew 2 his trumpet, broke 3 his pitcher, and held 4 his lamp in 5 his left 6 hand.

(I.) Then 1 the three hundred men did 2 the same 3; and the Midianites were affrighted 4, cried 5 and fled 6;

### The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *Nombre*, n. m. 2 *qui*,  
pron. 3 *lapper*, v. 1. 4 *en  
portant*. 5 *main*, n. f. 6  
*bouche*, n. f. 7 *fut de trois  
cents hommes*. 8 *mais*, conj.  
9 *tout*, adj. 10 *reste*, n. m.  
11 *plia le genou*.

(F.) 1 *délivrer*, v. 1. 2 *par*,  
prep. 3 *trois*, adj. 4 *cent*,  
plur. *cents*, adj. 5 *homme*,  
n. m. 6 *livrer*, v. 1. 7 *que  
tout le peuple s'en aille*. 8  
*chacun*, pron. nom. 9 *en  
son lieu*.

(G.) 1 *Renvoyer*, v. 1. 2  
*chacun*, pron. nom. 3 *tente*,

n. f. 4 *retenir*, v. 4. 5 *aller*,  
v. 1. 6 *à la rencontre de*.  
7 *ennemi*, n. m. 8 *mettre*,  
v. 4. 9 *à la main de chacun  
d'eux*. 10 *avide*, adj. 11  
*dans*, prep. 12 *quand*. 13  
*je serai arrivé*. 14 *près du*.  
15 *camp*, n. m. 16 *vous  
ferez comme je ferai*.

(H.) 1 *Arriver*, v. 1. 2 *fon-  
ner de*, v. 1. 3 *brisier*, v. 1.  
4 *tenir*, v. 2. 5 *dans*, prep.  
6 *gauche*, adj.

(I.) 1 *Alors*, adv. 2 *faire*, v.  
3 *la même chose*. 4 *épou-  
vanter*, v. 1. 5 *crier*, v. 1. 6  
an

and the Lord set <sup>7</sup> every <sup>9</sup> man's <sup>10</sup> sword <sup>8</sup> against <sup>11</sup> his fellow <sup>12</sup>, so that <sup>13</sup> the enemies killed <sup>14</sup> one another <sup>14</sup>. Those that sought for <sup>15</sup> their safety <sup>16</sup> in <sup>17</sup> the flight <sup>18</sup> were all taken <sup>19</sup> and killed <sup>20</sup> by <sup>21</sup> the children of Israel.

## The DICTIONARY.

<i>s'enfuir</i> , v. 2. <sup>7</sup> <i>tourner</i> ,	<i>s'entretuer</i> , v. 1. <sup>15</sup> <i>cher-</i>
<sup>8</sup> <i>épée</i> , n. f. <sup>9</sup> <i>chaque</i> ,	<i>cher</i> , v. 1. <sup>16</sup> <i>sûreté</i> , n. f.
<sup>adj.</sup> <sup>10</sup> <i>soldat</i> , n. m. <sup>11</sup>	<sup>17</sup> <i>dans</i> , prep. <sup>18</sup> <i>fuite</i> ,
<i>contre</i> , prep. <sup>12</sup> <i>compagnon</i> ,	n. f. <sup>19</sup> <i>prendre</i> , v. 6. <sup>20</sup>
n. m. <sup>13</sup> <i>de sorte que</i> . <sup>14</sup>	<i>tuer</i> , v. 1. <sup>21</sup> <i>par</i> , prep.

XV. David <sup>1</sup> kills <sup>2</sup> Goliab <sup>3</sup>.

(A.) The Philistines <sup>1</sup>, being the most inveterate <sup>3</sup> enemies <sup>2</sup> of the Israelites <sup>4</sup>, they were almost <sup>5</sup> continually <sup>6</sup> at war <sup>7</sup> with <sup>8</sup> them. Having once <sup>9</sup> gathered together <sup>10</sup> their forces <sup>11</sup>, they marched <sup>12</sup> against <sup>13</sup> them, and pitched <sup>14</sup> between <sup>15</sup> Shochoh <sup>16</sup> and Azekah <sup>17</sup>.

(B.) King <sup>1</sup> Saul <sup>2</sup> and the children <sup>3</sup> of Israel were then <sup>4</sup> gathered together and pitched by <sup>5</sup> the valley <sup>6</sup> of Elah.

(C.) The Philistines stood <sup>1</sup> on <sup>2</sup> a mountain <sup>3</sup> on <sup>4</sup> the one side <sup>4</sup> and Israel stood on a mountain on <sup>5</sup> the other side <sup>5</sup>; and there was a valley between them.

## The DICTIONARY.

<sup>1</sup> <i>David</i> , n. m. <sup>2</sup> <i>tuer</i> , v. 1.	<sup>entre</sup> , prep. <sup>16</sup> <i>soco</i> , n. m.
<sup>3</sup> <i>Goliath</i> , n. m.	<sup>17</sup> <i>Azéca</i> , n. m.
(A.) <sup>1</sup> <i>Philistin</i> , n. m. <sup>2</sup> <i>en-</i>	(B.) <sup>1</sup> <i>Roi</i> , n. m. <sup>2</sup> <i>Saul</i> ,
<i>nemi</i> , n. m. <sup>3</sup> <i>invétéré</i> ,	<sup>n. m.</sup> <sup>3</sup> <i>enfant</i> , plur. <i>ans</i> ,
<sup>adj.</sup> <sup>4</sup> <i>Israélite</i> , n. m. <sup>5</sup>	<sup>n. m.</sup> <sup>4</sup> <i>alors</i> , adv. <sup>5</sup> <i>près</i>
<i>presque</i> , adv. <sup>6</sup> <i>toujours</i> ,	<sup>de</sup> <sup>6</sup> <i>vallée</i> , n. f.
<sup>adv.</sup> <sup>7</sup> <i>en guerre</i> . <sup>8</sup> <i>avec</i> ,	(C.) <sup>1</sup> <i>être</i> , v. aux. <sup>2</sup> <i>sur</i> ,
<sup>prep.</sup> <sup>9</sup> <i>une fois</i> . <sup>10</sup> <i>assem-</i>	<sup>prep.</sup> <sup>3</sup> <i>montagne</i> , n. f.
<i>bler</i> , v. 1. <sup>11</sup> <i>force</i> , n. f.	<sup>4</sup> <i>d'un côté</i> . <sup>5</sup> <i>de l'autre</i>
<sup>12</sup> <i>marcher</i> , v. 1. <sup>13</sup> <i>contre</i> ,	<i>côté</i> .
<sup>prep.</sup> <sup>14</sup> <i>camper</i> , v. 1. <sup>15</sup>	

(D.)

(D.) And there <sup>1</sup> went out <sup>2</sup> of the camp <sup>3</sup> of the Philistines a champion <sup>3</sup> named <sup>4</sup> Goliah, whose <sup>5</sup> height <sup>6</sup> was six <sup>7</sup> cubits and a span <sup>7</sup>.

(E.) When <sup>1</sup> he was in <sup>2</sup> the hearing of Israel <sup>2</sup>, he cried out <sup>3</sup> and said <sup>4</sup> to them, *why* <sup>5</sup> are you come out <sup>6</sup> to <sup>7</sup> set <sup>8</sup> your battle <sup>9</sup> in <sup>10</sup> array <sup>11</sup>? Am not I a Philistine and you servants <sup>12</sup> to Saul <sup>12</sup>? Choose <sup>13</sup> a man <sup>15</sup> for <sup>14</sup> you <sup>14</sup>, and let him come down <sup>16</sup> to <sup>17</sup> me. If <sup>18</sup> he kills <sup>19</sup> me, we shall be your servants <sup>20</sup>, but <sup>21</sup> if I <sup>22</sup> prevail against him <sup>22</sup>, and <sup>23</sup> kill him <sup>23</sup>, you shall serve <sup>24</sup> us.

(F.) Saul and the children <sup>1</sup> of Israel, considering <sup>2</sup> the height and strength <sup>3</sup> of that man, were afraid <sup>4</sup> of him; and tho' <sup>5</sup> he came out <sup>6</sup> for <sup>7</sup> several <sup>8</sup> days <sup>9</sup> to <sup>10</sup> challenge <sup>11</sup> them, none <sup>12</sup> durst <sup>13</sup> go out <sup>14</sup> against <sup>15</sup> him.

(G.) At <sup>1</sup> that time <sup>1</sup> David was sent <sup>2</sup> by <sup>3</sup> his father <sup>4</sup> to <sup>5</sup> carry <sup>6</sup> provisions <sup>7</sup> to his three <sup>8</sup> brothers <sup>9</sup> that <sup>10</sup>

### The DICTIONARY.

(D.) <sup>1</sup> Il sortit. <sup>2</sup> camp, n. m. <sup>3</sup> champion, n. m. <sup>4</sup> nommer, v. t. <sup>5</sup> dont, pron. <sup>6</sup> hauteur, n. f. <sup>7</sup> de six coudées & une palme.

(E.) <sup>1</sup> Quand. <sup>2</sup> à portée d'être entendu par les Israélites. <sup>3</sup> s'écrier, v. t. <sup>4</sup> dire, v. 4. <sup>5</sup> pourquoi, adv. <sup>6</sup> sortir, v. z. <sup>7</sup> pour, prep. <sup>8</sup> ranger, v. t. <sup>9</sup> armée, n. f. <sup>10</sup> en, prep. <sup>11</sup> bataille, n. f. <sup>12</sup> serviteurs de Saül. <sup>13</sup> choisir, v. 2. <sup>14</sup> vous. <sup>15</sup> femme, n. m. <sup>16</sup> descendre, v. 6. <sup>17</sup> vers, prep. <sup>18</sup> si, conj. <sup>19</sup> tuer, v. t. <sup>20</sup> esclave, n. m. <sup>21</sup> mais, conj. <sup>22</sup> je suis plus fort que

<sup>23</sup> que je le tue. <sup>24</sup> servir, v. 2. <sup>25</sup> Enfant, plur. ans, n. m. <sup>26</sup> considérer, v. t. <sup>27</sup> force, n. f. <sup>28</sup> avoir peur, v. aux. and n. f. <sup>29</sup> quoique, conj. <sup>30</sup> sortir, v. 2. <sup>31</sup> pendant, prep. <sup>32</sup> plusieurs, adj. plur. <sup>33</sup> jour, n. m. <sup>34</sup> pour, prep. <sup>35</sup> faire un défi, v. 5. and n. m. <sup>36</sup> aucun d'eux. <sup>37</sup> oser, v. t. <sup>38</sup> sortir, v. 2. <sup>39</sup> contre, prep.

(G.) <sup>1</sup> En ce tems-là. <sup>2</sup> envoyer, v. t. <sup>3</sup> par, prep. <sup>4</sup> pere, n. m. <sup>5</sup> pour, prep. <sup>6</sup> porter, v. t. <sup>7</sup> provision, n. f. <sup>8</sup> trois, adj. <sup>9</sup> frere, n. m. <sup>10</sup> qui, pron. <sup>11</sup> were

were in Saul's army 11. When 12 he was there; the 13 Philistine happened to come out 13 of his camp; and David hearing 14 his challenge 15, said to those who were near 16 him, that 17 he would fight 18 him, if the king 19 gave 20 him leave 21 so 22 to do 22. it began to rain 2001

(H.) These words 1 being reported 2 to Saul, he sent for 3 David; and seeing 4 that he was very 5 young 6 and weak 7, he said to him, *thou art not able 8 to 9 go 10 against this Philistine, to 11 fight 11 with 12 him; for 13 thou 14 art but 14 a youth 15, and be 16 a 17 man of war 17 from 18 his youth 19.*

(I.) David said to Saul, *thy servant 1 kept 2 his father's sheep 3; and when 4 a lion 5 or 6 a bear 7 came 8 to take 9 a lamb 10 out 11 of my flock 11, I went out 12 after 13 him, smote 14 him, and delivered 15 the lamb out 16 of 16 his mouth 17; and when he arose 18 against me, I caught 19 him by 20 his 21 beard 21, smote him and slew 22 him. I hope 23*

### The DICTIONARY.

armée, n. f. 12 lorsque. 13  
il arriva que le Philistein  
sortit. 14 entendre, v. 6.  
15 défi, n. m. 16 pres de.  
17 que, conj. 18 se battre  
contre, v. 4. and prep. 19 roi,  
n. m. 20 donner, v. i. 21  
permission, n. f. 22 de le  
faire.

(H.) 1 Parole, n. f. 2 rap-  
porter, v. i. 3 envoyer  
chercher, v. i. i. 4 voir, v. 3.  
5 très, adv. 6 jeune, adj.  
7 faible, adj. 8 capable, adj.  
9 de, prep. 10 aller, v. i.  
11 pour combattre, 12 contre,  
prep. 13 car, conj. 14  
tu n'es qu'un. 15 jeune

homme, adj. and n. m. 16  
lui est. 17 guerrier, n. m.  
18 dès, prep. 19 jeunesse,  
n. f.

(I.) 1 Serviteur, n. m. 2 gar-  
der. v. i. 3 brébis, n. f.  
4 quand. 5 lion, n. m. 6 ou,  
conj. 7 ours, n. m. 8  
venir, v. 2. 9 prendre, v. 6.  
10 agneau, n. m. 11 de mon  
troupeau. 12 sortir, v. 2.  
13 après, prep. 14 frapper,  
v. i. 15 délivrer, v. i. 16  
de, prep. 17 gueule, n. f.  
18 se lever, v. i. 19 prendre,  
v. 6. 20 par, prep. 21 la  
barbe. 22 tuer, v. i. 23

that

208 · E X E R C I S E S upon the

that 24 this uncircumcised 25 Philistine shall be as 26 the lion  
and the bear, seeing 27 that 27 he has defied 28 the armies 29 of  
the living 31 God 30.

(K.) Saul said to David, go, and the Lord 1 be with 2 thee.  
David took his staff 3 and his sling 4; and having chosen 5  
five 6 smooth 8 stones 7 out 9 of a brook 9, he drew near 10  
the Philistine, put 11 a stone in his sling, flung 12 it,  
smote him in 13 his forehead 13, and 14 made him fall  
upon his face to the earth 14. He then 16 run 15 to his  
enemy 17, took his sword 18, slew him, and 19 cut off his  
head 19.

(L.) When the Philistines saw 1 that 2 their champion was  
dead 3, they fled 4; and the children of Israel having pur-  
sued 5 them, made 7 a great 8 slaughter 9 of 6 them 6.

The DICTIONARY.

espérer, v. i. 24 que,  
conj. 25 incircoci, adj.  
26 comme. 27 vú que. 28  
défier, v. i. 29 armée, n. f.  
30 Dieu, n. m. 31 vivant,  
part. act.

(K.) 1 Seigneur, n. m. 2 avec,  
prep. 3 bâton, n. m. 4  
fronde, n. f. 5 choisir, v.  
2. 6 cing, adj. und. 7  
caillou, plur. aux, n. m.  
8 uni, adj. 9 dans un rui-  
seau. 10 s'avancer, v. i.

11 mettre, v. 4. 12 lancer,  
v. i. 13 au front. 14 &  
le fit tomber sur le visage.  
15 courir, v. 2. 16 alors,  
adv. 17 ennemi, n. m. 18  
épée, n. f. 19 & lui cou-  
pa la tête.

(L.) 1 voir, v. 3. 2 que. 3  
mourir, v. 2. 4 s'enfuir,  
v. 2. 5 poursuivre, v. 4.  
6 en, pron. conj. 7 faire,  
v. 5. 8 grand, adj. 8  
carnage, n. m.

XVI. The queen 1 of Sheba 2 admires 3 Solomon's 5  
wisdom 4.

(A) The queen of Sheba, having heard 1 of the fame 2 of  
Solomon, came 3 to Jerusalem 4, with 5 a grand 6 retinue 7,

The DICTIONARY.

1 Reine, n. f. 2 Séba, n. f.  
3 admirer, v. i. 4 Sazesse,  
n. f. 5 Salomon, n. m.

(A) 1 entendre parler, v. 6. i.

2 réputation, n. f. 3 venir,  
v. 2. 4 Jérusalem, n. f.  
5 avec, prep. 6 grand, adj.

7 train, n. m. 8 pour lui  
in

(C.)

in 8 order to prove him with 8 hard 10 questions 9. Solomon answered 11 them 12 all 12; and there was nothing 13 hid 14 from him 14 which 15 he told her not 15.

(B.) When 1 the queen of Sheba saw 2 his wisdom, the house 3 that 4 he had built 5, the meat 6 of his table 7, the 8 sitting of his servants 8, the attendance 9 of his ministers 10, and their apparel 11, his cup-bearers 12 and their apparel, and his 13 ascent by which he went up into the 13 house 14 of the Lord 15, there 16 was no more spirit in her 16.

(C.) And she said 1 to the king 2, it 8 was a true report 8 which 3 I heard 4 in 5 my 6 own land 6 of thy acts 7, and of thy wisdom; howbeit 9 I believed 10 not their words 11 until 12 I came 13, and my eyes 14 had seen it; and behold 15 the 16 one half 16 of the greatness 17 of thy wisdom was 18 not told me 18; for 19 thou exceedest 20 the 21 fame that I heard 21.

(D.) Happy 1 are thy 2 men 3, and happy are these servants 4 who 5 stand 6 continually 7 before 8 thee 9, and bear 10 thy wisdom.

### The DICTIONARY.

*proposer des.* 9 question, n. f.  
10 difficile, adj. 11 répondre, v. 6. 12 à toutes ces questions. 13 rien, n. m. 14 qu'il n'entendit. 15 & qu'il ne lui dit.

(B.) 1 quand. 2 voir, v. 3. 3 maison, n. f. 4 que, pron. 5 bâîrir, v. 2. 6 les mets. 7 table, n. f. 8 l'ordre selon lequel ses officiers étoient assis à table. 9 assiduité, n. f. 10 ministre, n. m. 11 babinement, plur. ens., n. m. 12 échançon, n. m. 13 l'escalier par lequel il montoit au. 14 temple, n. m. 15 seigneur, n. m. 16 elle fut toute étonnée.

(C.) Dire, v. 4. 2 roi, n. m. 3 ce que, pron. nom. 4 en-

tendre dire, v. 6. 4. 5 dans, prep. 6 mon pays. 7 action, n. f. 8 étoit véritable. 9 cependant, conj. 10 croire, v. 5. 11 discours, n. m. 12 jusqu'à ce que. 13 venir, v. 2. 14 oeil, plur. yeux, n. m. 15 voici. 16 la moitié. 17 grandeur, n. f. 18 m'a été cachée. 19 car, conj. 20 excéder, v. 1. 21 tout ce que j'ai oui de toi.

(D.) 1 heureux, adj. 2 tes. 3 domestique, n. m. 4 officier, n. m. 4 qui, pron. 6 être, v. aux. 7 continuellement, adv. 8 devant, prep. 9 toi, pron. nom. 10 entendre, v. 6.

(E.)

(E.) Blessed 1 be the Lord thy God, who 2 delighted 3 in 4 thee, so 5 set 6 thee on 7 his throne 8, to 9 be king 9 for 10 the Lord thy God. Because 11 thy God loved 12 Israel, therefore 13 made he thee 13, king 14 over 15 them, to 16 do 17 judgment and justice 17.

(F.) And she gave 1 the king an 2 hundred and twenty 2 talents 3 of gold 4, great 5 abundance 6 of 7 spices 7, and precious 9 stones 8.

(G.) And king Solomon gave unto the queen of Sheba whatsoever 1 she asked 2, besides 3 that 4 which 4 Solomon gave her of 5 his own accord 5; so 6 she turned 7 and went 8 to 9 her 10 own country 10, she 11 and her servants 12.

## The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 bénir, v. 2.	2 qui, plur. ens, n. m. 4 or, n. m. 5
pron. 3 se plaisir, v. 5.	grand, adj. 6 quantité, n.
4 en, prep. 5 pour, prep. f. 7 drogues aromatiques.	8 pierre, n. f. 9 précieux,
6 établir, v. 2. 7 sur, prep. euse, adj.	10 oyl.
8 trône, n. m. 9 afin que	
tu sois roi. 10 pour, prep. (G.) 1 tout ce que. 2 demander,	
11 parceque, conj. 12 aimer, v. l. 3 autre, prep. 4 ce	
v. i. 13 il t'a fait. 14 que, pron. nom. 5 de son	
roi, n. m. 15 sur, prep. plein gré. 6 ensuite. 7 s'en	
16 pour, prep. 17 leur retourner, v. i. 8 s'en aller,	
rendre justice. 18 dans, prep. 19	
(F) 1 donner au, v. i. prep. and son pays. 11 elle, pron.	
art. 2 cent vingt. 3 talent, nom. 12 serviteur, n. m.	

## XVII. Elisha 1 multiplies 2 the widow's 4 oyl 3.

(A) There 3 cried 3 a certain 1 woman 2 unto 4 Elisha 4, saying 5, thy servant 6 my husband 7 is dead 8, and shou know-

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Elisée, n. m. 2 multiplier, v. i.	n. f. 3 tria. 4 vers Elisé.
3 veule, n. f. 4 veuve, n. f.	5 dire, v. 4. 6 serviteur, n. m.
(A.) 1. certain, adj. 2 femme,	7 mari. n. m. 8 mourir v. 2.

(A.) *9 that 10 thy servant did fear 11. the Lord 12; and the 13 creditor 14 is come 14 to take 15 my two 16 son<sup>t</sup> 17 to 18 be bondmen 18.*

(B.) And Elisha said unto her, *what 1 shall 1 do 2 for 3 thee 4? tell 5 me, what hast thou in 6 the house 6? and she said, thy handmaid 7 has 8 not any thing 8 in the house, save 9 a pot 10 of oil.*

(C.) Then he said, *go 1 and 2 borrow 2 empty 4 vessels 3 of all 5 thy neighbours 6, borrow 7 not a few 7; and when 8 thou 9 art come in 9, thou shalt shut 10 the door 11 upon 12 thes, end upon thy sons, thou 13 shalt pour out 13 unto 14 all those ves- sels, and thou shalt set aside 15 those 16 that 16 are full 17.*

(D.) The woman went from 1 him, shut the door upon her and upon her sons who 2 brought 3 the vessels to her, and she poured out.

(E.) And it 2 came to pass 2, when 1 the vessels were full, that 3 she said unto her son, bring me yet 4 a vessel. And he said unto her, there 5 is not a vessel more 5. And the oyl stayed 6.

### The DICTIONARY.

(A.) 9 *servir*, v. 3. 10 *que*, conj. 11 *croire*, v. 6. 12 *seigneur*, n. m. 13 *son cré- ancier*. 14 *venir*, v. 2. 15 *prendre*, v. 6. 16 *deux*, adj. 17 *fils*, n. m. 18 *pour en faire des esclaves*.

(B.) 1 *que*, pron. nom. 2 *faire*, v. 5. 3 *pour*, prep. 4 *toi*, pron. nom. 5 *dire*, v. 4. 6 *à la maison*. 7 *servante*, n. f. 8 *n'a*. 9 *que*, conj. 10 *pot*, n. m.

(C.) 1 *aller*, v. 1. 2 *emprun- ter*, v. 1. 3 *vase*, n. m. 4 *vide*, adj. 5 *tout*, plur.

10 *tous*, adj. 6 *voisin*, m. m. 7 *n'en empruntes pas un petit nombre*. 8 *quand*. 9 *tu seras rentrée chez toi*. 10 *fermer*, v. 1. 11 *porte*, n. f. 12 *sur*, prep. 13 *tu verseras de l'huile*. 14 *dans*, prep. 15 *faire ôter*, v. 5. 1. 16 *ceux qui*. 17 *plein*, adj.

(D.) 1 *quitter*, v. 1. 2 *qui*, pron. 3 *apporter*, v. 1.

(E.) 1 *quand*. 2 *il arriva*. 3 *que*, conj. 4 *encore*, adv. 5 *il n'y a plus de vase*. 6 *s'arrêter*, v. 1.

(F.)

(F.) Then 1 she came, and told 2 the 3 man 3 of God 4 what 5 had happened 6; and he said, sell 7 the oyl, and pay 8 thy debt 9, and live 10 thou 11 and thy children 12 of the rest 13.

## The DICTIONARY.

(F.) 1 alors, adv. 2 dire, n. f. 10 vivre, v. 4. 11 v. 4. 3 à l'homme. 4 Dieu, toi, pron. nom. 12 enfant, n. m. 5 ce que, pron. nom. plur. ans, n. m. 13 reste, 6 arriver, v. t. 7 vendre, n. m. v. 6. 8 payer, v. t. 9 dette,

## XVIII. Elisha 1 causes 2 iron 3 to swim 2.

(A.) The sons 1 of the prophets 2 said 3 unto Elisha, behold 4 now 5 the place 6 where 7 we dwell 8 with 9 thee 10 is too 11 strait 12 for 13 us. Let us go 14, we pray 15 thee, unto Jordan 16, and 17 take thence every man 17 a beam 18, and let us make 19 a place there 20, where we may 21 dwell; and he answered 22, go ye.

(B.) One 1 said, be 2 content 2, I pray thee, and go 3 with thy servants 4; and he answered, I 5 will go 5.

(C.) So 1 he went 2 with them; and when 3 they came 4 to Jordan, they cut down 5 wood 6; but 7 as 8 one was

## The DICTIONARY.

1. Elisée, n. m. 2 faire nager,  
v. 5. 1. 3 fer, n. m.

(A.) 1 enfant, plur. ans,  
n. m. 2 prophète, n. m.  
3 dire, v. 4. 4 voir v. 3.  
5 maintenant, adv. 6 en-  
droit, n. m. 7. où, adv.  
8 demeurer, v. t. 9 avec,  
prep. 10 toi, pron. nom.

11 trop, adv. 12 étroit, adj.  
13 pour, prep. 14 aller,  
v. t. 15 prier, v. t. 16  
jourdain, n. m. 17 & que

chacun de nous 9 prenne.  
18 une pièce de bois. 19  
faire, v. 5. 20 y, pron,  
conj. 21 pouvoir, v. 3. 22  
répondre, v. 6.

(B.) 1 l'un d'eux. 2 ne te fa-  
ches pas. 3 venir, v. 2.  
4 serviteur, n. m. 5 Je te  
veux bien.

(C.) 1 ainsi, conj. 2 aller, v. t.  
3 quand. 4 venir v. 2. 5  
couper, v. t. 6 bois, n. m.  
7 mais, conj. 8 comme,  
felling

selling 9 a beam, the ax-head 10 fell 11 into 12 the water 13 ; and he cried 14 and said, alas 15 master 16 ; for 17 it 18 was borrowed 18.

(D.) And the man 1 of God 2 said, where sell it ? and he shewed 3 him the place. And he cut down a stick 4, and cast 5 it in thither 5, and the iron did swim 6. Take 7 it up 7, said Elisha ; and the man put 8 out his hand 8, and took it.

The DICTIONARY.

conj. 9 abattre, v. 4.	10 emprunté.
le fer de la coignée. 11	(D) 1 homme, n. m. 2 Dieu,
tomber, v. 1. 12 dans, prep.	n. m. 3 monter, v. 1. 4
13 eau, n. f. 14 crier, v. 1.	morceau de bois. 5 l'y jeta.
15 bélas ! 16 mon maître.	6 nager, v. 1. 7 prend le.
17 car, conj. 18 il l'avoit	8 étendit la main.

XIX. Hezekiab 1 receiving 2 a message of death 2, by 3 prayer has 3 his life 4 lengthened 5.

(A.) Hezékiak, king 1 of Judah 2, being 3 sick unto death 3, the prophet 4 Iсаiah 5 came 6 to him 6, and said 7, thus 8 saith the Lord, sit 9 thy house 10 in 11 order 12, for 13 thou shalt die 14, and not live 15.

(B.) Then Hezekiah turned 1 his face 2 to 3 the wall 4, and prayed unto 5 the Lord 6, saying, I beseech 7 thee, O

The DICTIONARY.

1 Ezéchias, n. m.	2 étant	mettre, v. 4.	10 maison,
ménacé de mort. 3 obtient		n. f. 11 en, prep. 12	
par ses prières que. 4 vie,		ordre, n. m. 13 car, conj.	
n. f. 5 sera prolongée.		14 mourir, v. 2. 15 vivre,	
(A.) 1 roi, n. m.	2 juda,	v. 4.	
n. m. 3 étant très malade.		(B.) 1 tourner, v. 1.	2 vi-
4 prophète, n. m. 5 Iсаie, n.		3 sage, n. m. 3 vers, prep.	
m. 6 vint le trouver. 7 dire,		4 muraille, n. f. 5 prier,	
v. 4. 8 voila ce que. 9		v. 1. 6 seigneur, n. m. 7	
		Lord,	

214 EXERCISES upon the

*Lord, remember 8 now 9 how 10 I have walked 11 before 12 thee 13 in 14 truth 15, and with 16 a perfect 18 heart 17; and have done 19 that 20 which 20 is good 21 in 22 thy sight 22; and he wept 23 sore 24.*

(C.) And 1 it came to pass 1 before 2 Isaiah was gone 3 into 4 the 5 middle court 5, that 2 the word 6 of the Lord came 7 to him 7, saying,

(D.) Turn again 1 and tell 2 Hezekiah, thus saith the Lord, the God 3 of David 4 thy father 5, I have heard 6 thy prayer 7; I have seen 8 thy tears 9; I will heal 10 thee; on 11 the third day 11 thou shalt go up 12 to the house 13 of the Lord.

(E.) And I will add 1 unto thy days 2 fifteen 3 years 4; and I will deliver 5 thee and Jerusalem 6 out 7 of the bands 7 of the king 8 of Assyria 9.

(F.) And Isaiah said, take 1 a lump 2 of figs 3. And they took and laid it 4 on 5 the boy 6, and he recovered 7.

The DICTIONARY.

prier, v. i. 8 se ressou-  
venir, v. i. 9 mainte-  
nant, adv. 10 comme. 11  
marcher, v. i. 12 de-  
vant, prep. 13 toi. pron.  
nom. 14 dans, prep. 15  
vérité, n. f. 16 avec, prep.  
17 cœur, n. m. 18 parfait,  
adj. 19 faire, v. 5. 20 ce  
que, pron. nom. 21 bon,  
adj. 22 à tes yeux. 23  
pleurer, v. i. 24 amere-  
ment, adv.

(C.) 1 Or il arriva. 2 qu'a-  
vant. 3 entrer, v. i. 4  
dans, prep. 5 la cour du  
milieu. 6 parole, n. f. 7  
lui fut adressée.

(D.) s'en retourner, v. i. 2

dire à, v. 4. 3 Dieu, n. m.  
4 David, n. m. 5 père,  
n. m. 6 exaucer, v. i. 7  
prière, n. f. 8 voir, v. 3.  
9 phur, n. f. 10 guérir,  
v. 2. 11 dans trois jours.  
12 aller, v. i. 13 temple,  
n. m.

(E.) 1 ajouter, v. i. 2 jour,  
n. m. 3 quinze, adj. und. 4  
an, n. m. 5 délivrer, v. i.  
6 Jérusalem, n. f. 7 des  
mains. 8 roi, n. m. 9 Assi-  
rie, n. f.

(F.) prendre, v. 6. 2 masse,  
n. f. 3 figue, n. f. 4 mettre,  
v. 4. 5 sur, prep. 6 ulcere,  
n. 7 guérir, v. 2.

(G.) And

(G.) And Hezekiah said unto Isaiah, what shall be the sign 2 that 3 the Lord 4 will heal 5 me, and that I shall go up 7 into 8 the house 9 of the Lord the 6 third day 6?

(H.) And Isaiah said, to 1 prove 2 you that 3 the Lord will do 4 the thing 5 that 6 he has spoken 7, shall the shadow 8 go forward 9 ten 10 degrees 10, or 11 go back 12 ten degrees?

(I.) And Hezekiah answered 1, it 2 is a light thing 2 for 3 the shadow to 4 go down 5 ten degrees; nay 6, but let the shadow 6 return 7 backward ten degrees.

(K.) And Isaiah cried 1 unto 2 the Lord, and the Lord brought 3 the shadow ten 4 degrees 4 backward 5, by 5 which it had gone down 5 in 6 the dial 7 of Ahaz 8.

### The DICTIONARY.

(G.) 1 quel, pron. 2 signe,  
n. m. 3 que, pron. 4 seigneur,  
n. m. 5 guérir, v. 2.  
6 dans trois jours. 7 monter,  
v. 1. 8 au. 9 temple.

(H.) 1 pour, prép. 2 prouver,  
v. 1. 3 que, conj. 4 faire,  
v. 5. 5 chose, n. f. 6 dont,  
pron. 7 parler, v. 1. 8  
ombre, n. f. 9 avancer, v. 1.  
10 de dix degrés. 11 ou,  
conj. 12 reculer, v. 1.

(I.) 1 répondre, v. 6. 2 il est  
facile. 3 à, prép. 4 de, prép.  
5 avancer, v. 1. 6 Je sou-  
haitte donc que l'ombre. 7  
reculer, v. 1.

(K.) 1 crier, v. 4. 2 vers,  
prép. 3 faire reculer, v. 5.  
4 des dix degrés. 5 qu'elle  
avoit parcourus. 6 sur,  
prép. 7 quadrant, n. m.  
8 Achaz, n. m.

**XX.** *Shadrach 1, Meshach 2, and Abednego 3 are cast 4 into 5 a burning 7 furnace 6, and come out 9 of it 8 unburt 10.*

(A.) Nebuchadnezzar 1 king 2 of Babylon 3, having made 4 an image 5 of gold 6, whose 7 height 8 was threescore 9 cubits 9, and 10 the breadth thereof 10 six 11 cubits 11, set 12 it up 12 in 13 a plain 14, near 15 Babylon, the capital 16 of his empire 17, and ordered 18 his subjects 19 to 20 worship 21 it.

(B.) Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who 1 had 2 been set over the 2 affairs 3 of the province 4 of Babylon, being in 5 the 5 number 6 of those 7 who 8 refused 9 to 10 fall down 11 before 12 the idol 13, were accused 14 of disobedience 15, and brought 16 before the king, who in 17 his rage and fury 17 spoke 18 thus 19 to them.

### The DICTIONARY.

1. *Chidrac, n. m.* 2 *Méchac,*  
n. m. 3 *Abednego, n. m.*  
4 *jester, v. i.* 5 *dans, prep.*  
6 *fournaise, n. f.* 7 *brulant,*  
adj. 8 *en, pron. conj.* 9  
*sortir, v. 2.* 10 *sans avoir*  
*reçû aucun mal.*

(A.) 1 *Nabucodonosor, n. m.*  
2 *roi, n. m.* 3 *Babilone.*  
4 *faire, v. 5.* 5 *statue,*  
n. f. 6 *or, n. m.* 7 *dont,*  
*pron.* 8 *hauteur, n. f.* 9  
*de soixante coudées.* 10 *&*  
*la largeur.* 11 *de six cou-*  
*dées.* 12 *mettre, v. 4.* 13  
*dans, prep.* 14 *plaine, n. f.*  
15 *près de.* 16 *capitale,*  
n. f. 17 *empire, n. m.* 18

*commander à, v. i.* and *prep.*  
19 *sujet, n. m.* 20 *de prep.*  
21 *adorer, v. i.*

(B.) 1 *qui, pron.* 2 *avoient*  
*été chargés des.* 3 *affaire,*  
n. f. 4 *province, n. f.* 5  
*du, prep.* 6 *nombre, n. m.*  
7 *de ceux.* 8 *qui.* 9 *re-*  
*fuser, v. i.* 10 *de, prep.*  
11 *se prosterner, v. i.* 12  
*devant, prep.* 13 *idole,*  
n. f. 14 *accuser, v. i.* 15  
*désobéissance, n. f.* 16 *ame-*  
*ner, v. i.* 17 *dans la rage*  
*& la fureur dont il étoit*  
*possédé.* 18 *parler, v. i.*  
19 *ainsi, adv.*

(C.) L

(D.)

(C.) Is it true 1, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego? Do ye not serve 2 my gods 3, nor worship the 4 golden image 5, which 6 I have set up 6? Now 7 if 8 at 9 the time ye bear 9 the sound 10 of all 11 kinds 12 of musical 14 instruments 13, ye fall down and worship it, well 15; but 16 if ye worship not, ye shall be cast into 17 the midst 17 of a burning furnace; and who 18 is that God 18 that 19 shall deliver 20 you out of 21 my hands 22?

(D.) Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego answered 1 and said 2 to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we 3 are not careful 3 to 4 answer thee in 5 this matter 6. Our 7 God whom 7 we serve 8, is able 9 to 10 deliver us from 11 the burning furnace, and be will deliver us out of thy hand, O king. But if 12 not 12, be 13 it known unto thee 13 that 14 we will not serve thy gods, nor worship the golden image which 15 thou hast set up.

(E.) Nebuchadnezzar, hearing 1 these words 2, commanded 3 the 3 most mighty 5 men 4 that 6 were in 7 his army 8 to 9 bind 10 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, and to cast them into a burning furnace. It was so 11 hot 11

### The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 vrai, adj. 2 que vous ne servez pas. 3 Dieu, plur. dieux, n. m. 4 la statue d'or. 5 que. 6 éléver, v. 1. 7 maintenant, adv. 8 si, conj. 9 au moment que vous entendrez. 10 son, n. m. 11 tout, adj. 12 sorte, n. f. 13 instrument, plur. ens, n. m. 14 de musique. 15 vous serez pardonnés. 16 mais, conj. 17 au milieu. 18 qui est le dieu. 19 qui. 20 délivrer, v. 1. 21. de, prep. 22 main, n. f.

(D.) répondre, v. 6. 2 dire,

v. 4. 3 nous ne nous soucions pas. 4 de, prep. 5 sur, prep. 6 sujet, n. m. 7 le dieu que. 8 servir, v. 2. 9 capable, adj. 10 de, prep. 11 de, prep. 12 s'il ne nous délivre pas. 13 sacre. 14 que, conj. 15 que, pron.

(E.) 1 entendre, v. 6. 2 parole, n. f. 3 commander aux, v. 1. and art. 4 homme, n. m. 5 fort, adj. 6 qu'il y eut. 7 dans, prep. 8 armée, n. f. 9 de, prep. 10 lier, v. 1. 11 si chaude. 12 que, conj. that

that 12 the flame 13 of the fire 14 slew 15 the executioners 16. As 17 to the 17 three 18 young 19 men 19, they walked 20 in 21 the midst 21 of the fire and 22 received no hurt 22.

(F.) Nebuchadnezzar surprised 1 at 2 this wonderful 4 event 3, came near 5 to 6 the mouth 7 of the furnace, and said, *Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, ye servants 8 of 9 the most high God 9, come forth 10 and come 11 bitter 17.*

(G.) When 1 they came out 2 of the furnace, there 3 was not 3 an hair 4 of their head 5 singed 6, nor 7 were their coats changed 7, nor 8 the smell of fire had passed 8 on 9 them.

(H.) Then 1 Nebuchadnezzar said, *blessed 2 be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who 3 has sent 4 his angel 5 and delivered his servants 6 that 7 have trusted 8 in 9 him, and have changed 10 the king's word 11, and yielded 12 their bodies 13, that 14 they might not serve 14 nor 15 worship any 16 God, except 17 their own God 17.*

### THE DICTIONARY.

13 *flame*, n. f. 14 *feu*, n.m.  
15 *tuer*, v. i. 16 *bourreau*,  
plur. *eaux*, n. m. 17 *quant*  
*aux*. 18 *trois*, adj. 19 *jeunes*  
*gens*. 20 *marcher*, v. i. 21  
*au milieu*. 22 *sans recevoir*  
*aucun mal*.

(F.) 1 *surprendre*, v. 6. 2 *de*,  
prep. 3 *événement*, n. m.  
4 *extraordinaire*, adj. 5  
*s'approcher*, v. i. 6 *de*,  
prep. 7 *embouchure*, n. f.  
8 *serviteur*, n. m. 9 *du très*  
*haut*. 10 *sortir*, v. 2. 11  
*venir*, v. 2. 12 *ici*, adv.  
(G.) 1 *quand*, conj. 2 *sortir*,  
v. 2. 3 *il n'y eut pas*, 4  
*ébeneu*, plur. *eux*, n. m.

5 *tête*, n. f. 6 *de brûlé*,  
7 *leurs habits n'étoient point*  
*changés*. 8 *& l'odeur du*  
*feu n'avoit point passé*. 9  
*sur*, prep

(H.) 1 *alors*, adv. 2 *benir*,  
v. 2. 3 *qui*, pron. 4 *en-*  
*voyer*, v. i. 5 *ange*, n. m.  
6 *serviteur*, n. m. 7 *qui*.  
8 *avoir espérance*, v. aux.  
and n. f. 9 *en*, prep. 10  
*changer*, v. i. 11 *parole*,  
n. f. 12 *abandonner*, v. i.  
13 *corps*, n. m. 14 *afin de*  
*ne servir*. 15 *ni*, conj. 16  
*aucun*, adj. 17 *à l'exception*  
*du leur*.

(I.) *There*.

(I.) Therefore 1 I make 2 a decree 3 that 4 every 5 man 6 who 6 speak 6 any 7 thing amiss 7 against 8 the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, shall be cut 9 in pieces 9 and his house 10 destroyed 11, because 12 there 13 is no other God 13 than 14 can 15 deliver after 16 this sort 16.

(K.) Then the king promoted 1 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.

The DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 c'est pourquoi. 2 faire, v. 5. 3 édit, n. m. 4 par lequel il est ordonné que, 5 tout homme. 6. qui dira. 7 quelque chose de mal. 8 contre, prep. 9 mettre en pieces, v. 4. prep. and n. f.

10 maison, n. f. 11 détruire, v. 4. 12 parceque, conj. 13 il n'y a point d'autre dieu. 14 qui. 15 pouvoir, v. 3. 16 de cette maniere.

(K.) 1 avancer, v. i.

XXI. Daniel 1 is cast 2 into 3 the 4 den of lions 4.

(A.) It pleased 1 king 2 Darius 3 to 4 set 5 over 6 his kingdom 6 an 7 hundred and twenty 7 princes 8, and over 9 these 9 three 10 presidents 11, of whom 12 Daniel was the first 13. This good 14 man 15 was preferred 16 above 17 the 17 presidents and princes, because 18 an 19 excellent spirit was in him 19.

The DICTIONARY.

1 Daniel, n. m. 2 jette, v. 1. 3 dans, prep. 4 la fosse aux lions.

(A.) 1 Il plut au. 2 roi, n. m. 3 Darius, n. m. 4 de, prep. 5 établir, v. 2. 6 pour gouverner son royaume. 7 cent vingt. 8 satrape, n. m.

9 au dessus d'eux. 10 trois, adj. 11 gouverneur. n. m. 12 dont, pron. 13 premier, adj. 14 honnête, adj. 15 homme, n. m. 16 éléver, v. i. 17 au dessus des. 18 parceque, conj. 19 il avoit beaucoup de capacité.

(B.) The presidents and princes sought 1 to 2 find 3 occasion 4 against 5 him 5 concerning 6 the 6 kingdom 7; but 8 seeing 9 that 10 he was faithful 11, they said 12 to 13 one another 13, *we shall not find any 14 occasion 14 against 15 Daniel, except 16 we find it against him 16, concerning 17 the law 18 of his God 19.*

(C.) They waited upon 1 the king and said 2 to him, *king Darius live 3 for 4 ever 5. We have consulted 6 together 7 and made 8 a decree 9 that 10 whosoever 11 shall ask 12 any thing 13 of any 14 god, or man, save 15 of thee 15, O king, be 16 cast 16 into 17 the 18 den of lions 18.*

(D.) Now 1, O king, establish 2 the decree 3, and sign 4 the writing 5; that 6 it 7 be not changed 7, according to 8 the law 9 of the Medes 10 and Persians 11, which 12 altereth 13 not 13.

(E.) Darius signed the decree; and as soon as 1 Daniel heared 2 what 3 had been done 4, he went 5 into 6 his

### The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1. tâcher, v. i. 2 de,  
prep. 3. trouver, v. i. 4  
quelque occasion. 5 de l'accu-  
seur. 6 au sujet du. 7 royaume, n. m. 8 mais, conj.  
9 voyant. 10 que, conj.  
11 fidèle, adj. 12 se dire, v. 4.  
13 les uns aux autres. 14  
rien à dire. 15 contre, prep.  
16 moins que nous ne l'accu-  
seions. 17 sur, prep. 18  
loi, n. f. 19 Dieu, n. m.

(C.) 1 aller trouver, v. i. 1.  
2 dire, v. 4. 3 vivre, v. 4.  
4 pour, prep. 5. toujours,  
adv. 6 consulter, v. i. 7  
ensemble, adv. 8 faire, v.  
5. 9 édit, n. m. 10 par

lequel il est ordonné que. 11  
celui qui. 12 demander, v.  
1. 13 quelque chose. 14  
quelque, adj. 15 moins que  
ce ne soit à toi. 16 jeter,  
v. i. 17 dans, prep. 18  
la fosse aux lions.

(D.) 1 maintenant, adv. 2 con-  
firmer, v. i. 3 ordonnance,  
n. f. 4 signer, v. i. 5 écrit,  
n. m. 6 afin que. 7 on n'y  
change rien. 8 selon, prep.  
9 loi, n. f. 10 Mede, n. m.  
11 Perse, n. m. 12 qui,  
pron. 13 est irrévocabile.

(E.) 1 Désque. 2 apprendre, v.  
6. 3 ce que. 4 faire, v.  
5. 5 entrer, v. i. 6 dans,  
house

house 7; and his windows 8 being open 9 towards 10 Jerusalem 11, he kneeled 12 upon his knees 12 three 13 times a day 13, prayed to 14 his God and gave 15 him thanks 15 as 16 he had done before 17.

(F.) The presidents and princes having found him praying 1 and 2 making supplication before 2 his God, went to 3 the king, and said, *Daniel, O king, regardeth 4 not thee 4, nor 5 the decree that 6 thou hast signed, but maketh bis petition 7 three times a day.*

(G.) When 1 Darius heared these words 2, he 3 was sore displeased 3 with 4 himself 5, and 6 set his heart on Daniel to deliver him 6, but his presidents and princes insisting 7 that 8 the 9 law of the Medes and Persians was, that 9 no 10 decree, which the king establisheth, may be changed 10, he 11 commanded, and they brought Daniel 11, and 12 cast him 12 into the den of lions.

(H.) Now 1 the king spake 2 and said unto Daniel, *thy 3 God 3, whom 4 thou servest 5 continually 6, will deliver 7 thee.*

### The DICTIONARY.

prep. 7 *maison*, n. f. 8  
*fenêtre*, n.f. 9 *ouvrir*, v. 2.  
 10 *vers*, prep. 11 *Jérusalem*.  
 12 *se mettre à genoux*, v. 4. prep. and n. m.  
 13 *trois fois par jour*.  
 14 *prier*, v. i. 15 *rendre graces*, v. 6. and n. f.  
 16 *comme*, conj. 17. *auparavant*, adv.

(F.) 1 *en priere*. 2 *Et demandant des graces à*. 3 *aller trouver*, v. i. 1. 4 *ne se soucie ni de toi*. 5 *ni*, conj. 6 *que*, pron. 7 *prière*, n. f.

(G.) *quand*, conj. 2 *parole*,

n. f. 3 *il fut très fâché*. 4 *contre*, prep. 5 *lui-même*, pron. nom. 6 *Et fit tous ses efforts pour délivrer Daniel*. 7 *soutenant*. 8 *que*, conj. 9 *selon la loi des Medes Et des Perses*. 10 *On ne pouvoit faire de changement à aucun édit du Roi*. 11 *il ordonna qu'on lui amenât Daniel*. 12 *Et qu'on le jettât*.

(H.) 1 *alors*, adv. 2 *parler*, v. i. 3 *le dieu*. 4 *que*, pron. 5 *servir*, v. 2. 6 *sans cesse*. 7 *délivrer*, v. i.

(I.) And 1 a stone was brought 2 and 2 laid 2 upon 3 the mouth 4 of the den 5; and the king sealed 6 it with 7 his own signet 8, and with the signet of his lords 9; that 10 the purpose might not be changed 10 concerning 11 Daniel.

(K.) Then 1 Darius went to 2 his palace 3, passed 4 the night 5 fasting 6, neither 7 were instruments of musick brought before him 7, and his 8 sleep 8 went 9 from 10 him 11.

(L.) Very 1 early in the morning 1 he went to the den of lions, and with 2 a lamentable 4 voice 3, he said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant 4 of the living 5 God, is thy God, whom 6 thou servest continually, able 7 to 8 deliver thee from 9 the 9 lions?

(M.) Daniel answered 1, O king; live for ever. My God has sent 2 his angel 3, and hath shut 4 the lions mouths 5 that 6 they have not hurt me 6: for 7 as much as 7 before 9 him innocency 8 was found in me 8; and also 10 before thee, O king, have I done no hurt 11.

### The DICTIONARY.

(I.) 1 *£* on apporta une pierre.

2 qui fut mise. 3 sur, prep. 4 embouchure, n. f. 5 fosse, n. f. 6 sceller, v. 1. 7 de, prep. 8 sceau, n. m. 9 satrape, n. m. 10 afin que rien ne fut changé. 11 touchant, prep.

(K.) 1 alors, adv. 2 aller, v. 1. 3 palais, n. m. 4 passer, v. 1. 5 nuit, n. f. 6 sans prendre de nourriture. 7 On ne lui fit point venir les instrumens de musique. 8 le sommeil. 9 s'éloigner, v. 1. 10 de, prep. 11 lui,

pron. nom.

(L.) 1 le lendemain de grand matin. 2 de, prep. 3 voix, n. f. 4 triste, adj. 4 serviteur, n. m. 5 vivant, adj. 6 que, pron. 7 capable, adj. 8 de, prep. 9 des.

(M.) 1 répondre, v. 6. 2 envoyer, v. 1. 3 ange, n. m. 4 fermer, v. 1. 5 gueule, n. f. 6 de sorte qu'ils ne m'ont fait aucun mal: 7 parceque. 8 j'ai été trouvé innocent. 9 devant, prep. 10 même, conj. 11 mal, n. m.

(N.) Daniel

(N.) Daniel having been taken out 1 of the den, the king ordered 2 his accusers 4 to 3 be thrown into it 3, which 5 was immediately 7 executed 6, and the lions 8 brake 9 all 10 their bones 11 in 9 pieces 9, the moment 12 they 13 came at the 13 bottom 14 of the den.

## The DICTIONARY.

(N.) 1 *retirer*, v. t. 2 *ordon-* pieces, v. 4. prep. and n. 5. E.  
ner, v. t. 3 *qu'on y jettât*. 10 *tout*, plur. *tous*, adj. 11  
4 *accusateur*, n. m. 5 *ce* 6, n. m. 12 *au moment*.  
*qui*, pron. nom. 6 *exécu-* 13 *qu'ils arrivèrent au*. 14  
7 *sur le champ*. 7 *fond*, n. m.  
8 *lion*, n. m. 9 *mestre en*

## XXII. The wise-men 1 come to 2 Christ 3 and worship 4 him.

(A.) When 1 Jesus was born 1 in 2 Bethleem 3 of Judea 4, in 5 the days 5 of king 6 Herod 7, there 8 came wise-men 8 from the 9 east 10 to 11 Jerusalem 12, saying 13, where 14 is he 15 that 16 is born 17 king of the Jews 18? for 19 we have seen 20 his star 21 in 22 the east, and are come 23 to 24 worship him.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 *mage*, n. m. 2 *venir trou- à*, prep., 12 *Jérusalem*. 13  
*ver*, v. 2. 1. 3 *Jésus dire*, v. 4. 14 *où*, adv. 15  
*Christ*, n. m. 4 *adorer*, *celui*, pron. nom. 16 *qui*,  
v. 1. 17 *naître*, v. 5. 18  
(A.) 1 *Jésus étant né*. 2 *à*, *juif*, n. m. 19 *car*, conj.  
prep. 3 *Béthléem*, 4 *Judée*, 20 *voir*, v. 3. 21 *étoile*,  
n. f. 5 *au tems*. 6 *roi*, n. f. 22 *en*, prep. 23  
*n. m.* 7 *Hérode*, n. m. 8 *venir*, v. 2. 24 *pour*,  
*des mages vinrent*. 9 *de*, prep. 10 *orient*, n. m. 11 *prep.*

(B.) When 1 Herod had heard these things 2, he was troubled 3, and all 3 Jerusalem 3 with 4 him 5; and when 6 he had gathered 6 all the chief 7 priests 8 and scribes 9 of the people 10, he demanded 12 of 11 them 11 where Christ 13 should 14 be born 14.

(C.) And they said unto him, in 1 Bethleem of Judea 2, for 3 thus it is written 3; and thou 4, Betbleem, in 5 the land 6 of Judah 7, art not the least 8 amongst 9 the princes 10 of Juda 11, for out 12 of thee 12 shall come 13 a governor 14 that 15 shall rule 16 my people Israel 17.

(D.) Then 1 Herod, when 2 he had privily called the wise-men 2, enquired 3 diligently 4 what 5 time 5 the 6 star appeared to them 6; and he sent 7 them to Bethleem, and said, go 8, and search 9 diligently 10 for 11 the young child 11; and when 12 you have found him 12, bring 13 me word again 13, that 14 I 15 may come, and worship him also 15.

### The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 Hérode ayant entendu ces choses. 2 troubler, v. i. 3 à toute la ville de Jérusalem. 4 avec, prep. 5 lui, pron. nom. 6 ayant assemblé. 7 principal, plur. aux, adj. 8 sacrificateur, n. m. 9 scribe, n. m. 10 peuples, n. m. 11 leur, pron. plur. 12 demander, v. i. 13 le Christ, n. m. 14 devoir naître.

(C.) 1 à, prep. 2 Judée, n. f. 3 car il est écrit. 4 toi, pron. nom. 5 dans, prep. 6 terre, n. f. 7 Juda, n. m. 8 moindre, adj. 9 entre, prep. 10 les premières villes.

11 de Juda. 12 de toi. 13 sortir, v. 2. 14 conducteur, n. m. 15 qui, pron. 16 gouverner, v. i. 17 Israël, n. m.

(D.) 1 alors, adv. 2 ayant fait venir en secret les mages. 3 s'enquérir, v. 2. 4 exactement, adv. 5 du temps que. 6 l'étoile leur étoit apparue. 7 envoyer, v. i. 8 aller, v. i. 9 s'informer, v. i. 10 avec soin. 11 du petit enfant. 12 quand vous l'aurez trouvé. 13 venez me le dire. 14 afin que. 15 j'aille aussi l'adorer.

(E.) When

(E.) When 1 they had heard 2 the king, they departed 3 ; and the star which 4 they saw 5 in the east, went 6 before 7 them, 'till 8 it came and stood 8 over 9 where 9 the 10 young child was 10.

(F.) When they saw 1 the star, they 2 rejoiced with exceeding great joy 2 ; and when 3 they were come 3 into 4 the house 5 , they saw the young child with Mary 6 his mother 7 , and fell down 8 and worshipped him ; and 9 when they had opened 9 their treasures 10 , they presented 11 unto him gold 12 , frankincense 13 and myrrh 14 .

(G.) And being warned 1 in 2 a dream 2 , that 3 they should not return 3 to 4 Herod, they departed 5 into 6 their 7 own 7 country 8 another 9 way 9 .

### The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 quand, conj. 2 entendre, v. b. 3 s'en aller, v. i. 4 que, pron. 5 ils avoient vu. 6 marcher, v. i. 7 devant, prep. 8 jusqu'à ce qu'elle s'arrêta. 9 sur le lieu où. 10 étoit le petit enfant.

(F.) 1 voir, v. 3. 2 ils en eurent une fort grande joie. 3 étant entrés. 4 dans, prep. 5 maison, n. f. 6 Marie, n. f. 7 mère, n. f. 8 se prosterner,

ner, v. l. 9 & après avoir ouvert. 10 trésor, n. m. 11 présentier, v. l. 12 or, n. m. 13 encens, n. m. 14 murrhe, n. f.

(G.) 1 avertir, v. 2. 2 en songe. 3 de ne pas retourner, 4 vers, prep. 5 se retirer, v. i. 6 dans, prep. 7 leur, pron. adj. 8 pays, n. m. 9 par un autre chemin.

**XXIII.** Christ 1 fasseth 2, is tempted 3, and overcometh 4.

(A.) Jesus 1 was led up 2 of 3 the spirit 4 into 5 the wilderness 6, to 7 be tempted of 8 the devil 9; and when 10 he had fasted 11 forty 12 days 13 and forty nights 14 he 15 was afterward an hungred 15.

(B.) Then 1 the tempter 2 came 3 to 4 him, and said 5, if 6 thou be the son 7 of God 8, command 9 that 10 these stones 11 be made 12 bread 13.

(C.) Jesus answered 1, it is written 2, man 3 shall not live 4 by bread 5 alone 6, but 7 by 8 every word 8 that 9 proceedeth out 10 of the mouth 11 of God.

(D.) Then the devil took 1 him up 1 into 2 the holy 3 ci-  
ty 4, and sat 5 him on 6 the pinnacle 7 of the temple 8, and

The DICTIONARY.

1 Jésus Christ, n. m. 2 Jeuner,  
v. 1. 3 tenter, v. 1. 4  
remporter la victoire, v. 1.  
and n. f. 10 quand, conj. 11 jeuner,  
v. 1. 12 quarante, adj.

und. 13 jour, n. m. 14 nuit,  
n. f. 15 enfin il eut faim.  
(A.) 1 alors, adv. 2 tenta-  
teur, n. m. 3 s'approcher,  
v. 1. 4 de, prep. 5 dire,  
v. 4. 6 si, conj. 7 fils, n.

m. 8 Dieu, n. m. 9 ordon-  
ner, v. r. 10 que, conj. 11  
pierre, n. f. 12 se changer,  
v. 1. 13 en pain.

(C.) 1 répondre, v. 6. 2  
écrire, v. 4. 3 bonne, n.m.  
4 vivre, v. 4. 5 de pain.  
6 seul, adj. 7 mais, conj.  
8 de toute parole. 9 qui,  
pron. 10 sortir, v. 2. 11  
bouche, n. f.

(D.) 1 transporter, v. 1. 2  
dans, prep. 3 saint, adj.  
4 cité, n.f. 5 mettre, v. 4.  
6 sur, prep. 7 pinnacle,  
n. m. 8 temple, n. m. 9 se

said

said to him, if thou be the son of God, cast thyself 9 down 10 ; for 11 it is written, he 12 shall give his angels charge concerning thee 12 ; and in 14 their bands 15 they shall bear 13 thee up 13, lest 16 thou 17 dash thy foot 17 against 18 a stone 19.

(E.) Jesus said to him, it is written again 1, thou shalt not tempt the Lord 2, thy God.

(F.) Again 1 the devil took him up into 2 an 3 exceeding high 3 mountain 4, shewed 5 him all 6 the kingdoms 7 of the earth 8 and their glory 9 and said to him, I will give 10 thee all these things 11, if thou wilt fall down 12 and worship 13 me.

(G.) Jesus said to him, get 1 thee 1 hence 2, satan 3 ; for it is written, thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, and 4 thou shalt only serve him 4. Then 5 the devil left 6 him ; and the angels 7 came 8 and 9 ministred unto him 9.

The DICTIONARY.

jetter, v. i. 10 en bas. 11 car, conj. 12 il commandera à ses anges d'avoir soin de toi. 13 porter, v. i. 14 dans, prép. 15 main, n. f. 16 de peur. 17 que tu ne te heurtes le pied. 18 contre, prép. 19 quelque pierre.

(E.) 1 encore, adv. 2 seigneur, n. m.

(F.) 1 ensuite, adv. 2 sur, prép. 3 und très haute. 4 montagne, n. f. 5 montrer,

v. i. 6 tout, plur. tous, adj. 7 royaume, n. m. 8 terre, n. f. 9 gloire, n. f. 10 donner, v. i. 11 chose, n. f. 12 se prosterner, v. i. 13 adorer, v. i. (G.) 1 se retirer, v. i. 2 d'ici. 3 Satan, n. m. 4 & tu ne serviras que lui seul. 5 alors, adv. 6 quitter, v. i. 7 ange, n. m. 8 venir, v. 2. 9 & le servirent.

## XXIV. John Baptist 1 is beheaded 2.

(A.) Herod 1 the tetrarch 2, hearing 3 of the fame 4 of Jesus 5, said 6 to his servants 7, this 8 is John the Baptist 9 whom 9 I have beheaded; he is risen 10 from 11 the 11 dead 12, therefore 13 mighty 14 works 14 do 15 shew forth themselves 15 in 16 him.

(B.) For 1 Herod had 2 laid hold on 2 John 3, bound 4 him, and put 5 him in 6 prison 7 for 8 Herodias 9 sake 8, his brother 11 Philip's 12 wife 10. For John had said unto him, it 13 is not lawful for thee 13 to 14 have her.

(C.) He 1 would have been glad 1 to 2 put 3 him to 4 death 4, but 5 he feared 6 the multitude 7, because 8 they 9 counted him 9 as 10 a prophet 11.

(D.) When 1 Herod's birth day was kept 1, the daughter 2 of Herodias danced 3 before 4 the assembly 5, and pleased 6

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Jean Baptiste, n. m. 2 décapiter, v. 1.  
 (A.) 1 Hercde, n. m. 2 tétrarque, n. m. 3 entendre parler, v. 6. 1. 4 réputation, n. f. 5 Jésus, n. m. 6 dire, v. 4. 7 serviteur, n. m. 8 c'est jean Baptiste. 9 que, pron. 10 ressusciter, v. 1. 11 des, prep. and art. 12 mort, n. m. 13 c'est pourquoi. 14 merveille, n. f. 15 se montrer, v. 1. 16 en, prep.

(B.) 1 car, conj. 2 se saifir, v. 2. 3 Jean, n. m. 4 lier, v. 1. 5 mettre, v. 4. 6

en, prep. 7 prison, n. f. 8 accuse de. 9 Hérodias, n. f. 10 femme, n. f. 11 frere, n. m. 12 Philippe, n. m. 13 il ne s'est pas permis. 14 de, prep.

(C.) 1 il auroit été bien aise. 2 de, prep. 3 mettre, v. 4. 4 à mort. 5 mais, conj. 6 craindre, v. 6. 7 peupla, n. m. 8 parceque, conj. 9 il le regardoit. 10 comme. 11 prophete, n. m.

(D.) 1 comme on célébroit le jour de la naissance d'Hérode. 2 fille, n. f. 3 danser, v. 1. 4 devant, prep. 5 les 6 Herod

Herod. Whereupon 7 he promised 8 with 9 an oath 9 to 10 give 11 her whatsoever 12 she would ask 13.

(E.) And 1 she 2 being before instructed 2 of 3 her mother 4, said, *give me bere* 5 *John Baptist's head* 6 *in* 7 *a charger* 8.

(F.) And the king 1 was sorry 2; nevertheless 3 for 4 the oath sake 4, and them 5 who 6 sat 7 with 9 him at 8 meat 8, he commanded 10 it 11 to be given her 11. And 12 he sent, and beheaded 12 John in the prison 13.

(G.) And his head was brought 1 in a charger and given to the damsel 2, who 3 carried 4 it to her mother.

(H.) And his disciples 1 came 2, took up 3 the body 4, and buried 5 it.

### The DICTIONARY.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| convives. 6 <i>plaire</i> , v. 5. 7<br>de sorte que. 8 <i>promettre</i> , v.  | 4. 9 <i>avec serment</i> . 10 <i>de</i> ,<br>prep. 11 <i>donner</i> , v. i. 12 <i>tout</i><br><i>ce que</i> . 13 <i>demander</i> , v. i.           | 6 <i>qui</i> , pron. 7 <i>étoient</i> . 8<br><i>à table</i> . 9 <i>avec</i> , prep. 10<br><i>commander</i> , v. i. 11 <i>qu'on</i><br><i>la lui donnât</i> . 12 $\mathcal{E}$ <i>il en-</i><br><i>voya décapiter</i> . 13 <i>prison</i> ,<br>n. f. |
| (E.) 1. or. 2 <i>cette fille étant</i><br><i>auparavant instruite</i> . 3 <i>par</i> ,<br>prep. 4 <i>mère</i> , n. f. 5 <i>ici</i> ,<br>adv. 6 <i>tête</i> , n. f. 7 <i>dans</i> ,<br>prep. 8 <i>plat</i> , n. m. | (G.) 1 <i>Apporter</i> , v. i. 2 <i>de-</i><br><i>moiselle</i> , n. f. 3 <i>qui</i> , pron.<br>4 <i>porter</i> , v. i.                             |  |
| {(F.) 1 <i>roi</i> , n. m. 2 <i>fäcbé</i> , adj.<br>3 <i>cependant</i> , conj. 4 <i>acause</i><br><i>du serment</i> . 5 $\mathcal{E}$ <i>de ceux</i> .  | (H.) 1 <i>disciple</i> , n. m. 2 <i>ve-</i><br><i>nir</i> , v. 2. 3 <i>emporter</i> , v. i.<br>4 <i>corps</i> , n. m. 5 <i>enterrer</i> ,<br>v. i. |  |

**XXV. Five 1 thousand 2 fed 3 with 4 five 5 loaves 6 and two 7 fishes 8.**

(A.) When 1 Jesus heard 2 that 3 John 4 had been beheaded 5, he went 6 into 7 a desert 8 place 9, where 10 a great 11 multitude 12 followed 13 him on 14 foot 15 out 16 of 17 the cities 18. As 19 there were amongst 20 them several 21 sick 22, he was moved 23 with 24 compassion 25 toward 26 them, and healed 27 them.

(B.) When 1 it was evening 2, his disciples 3 came 4 to him, saying 5, this 6 is 7 a desert place 8, and the time 9 is now 10 past 11 8; send 12 the multitude 13 away 14 that 15 they may go 16 into 17 the villages 18, and 19 buy themselves 20 victuals 21.

(C.) Jesus said to them, they need 1 not depart 2, give 3 ye them to 4 eat 5. They said to him, we 6 have here but 6 five 7 loaves and two fishes. He said, bring 8 them hither 9 to me.

The DICTIONARY.

1 cinq mille personnes. 2 rassâ-

guérir, v. 2.

fier, v. 1. 3 avec, prep. 4

(B.) 1 comme il se faisait tard.

cinq, adj. und. 5 pain, n.

2 disciple, n. m. 3 venir,

m. 6 deux, adj. 7 poisson,

v. 2. 4 dire, v. 4. 5 cet

n. m. 8 dans, prep. 9 dé-

9 endroit-ci est désert. 6 tems,

sert, n. m. 10 deus, adj. 11

n. m. 7 maintenant, adv.

12 dans, prep. 13 des. 14

8 passer, v. 1. 9 renvoyer,

ville, n. f. 15 comme, conj. 16

v. 1. 10 cette multitude de

gens. 11 afin que. 12 aller,

v. 1. 13 dans, prep. 14 vil-

lage, n. m. 15 pour s'achet-

ter. 16 vivres, n. m. plur.

(A.) 1 avoir besoin, v. aux.

and n. m. 2 s'en aller, v. 1.

3 donner, v. 1. 4 à, prep.

5 manger, v. 1. 6 nous n'a-

vons ici que. 7 cinq, adj.

und. 8 apporter, v. 1. 9

ici, adv.

(D.) And

(A.)

(D.) And he commanded 1 the multitude to 2 sit down 3 on 4 the grass 5, took 6 the five loaves and the two fishes, and looking up 7 to heaven 8, he blessed 9, brake 10, and gave them to his disciples, and the disciples to the multitude.

(E.) And they did eat 1, and were filled 2; and they took up 3 the 7 fragments that remained 7 twelve 4 baskets 5 full 6; and they 8 that 9 had eaten 10 were about 11 five thousand 12 men 13, besides 14 women 15 and children 16.

## The DICTIONARY.

(D.) 1 commander à, v. i. 2 de, prep. 3 s'asseoir, v. 3. 4 sur, prep. 5 herbe, n. f. 6 prendre, v. 6. 7 lever les yeux, v. i. and n. m. 8 ciel, n. m. 9 binir, v. 2. 10 rompre, v. 6.  
(E.) 1 manger, v. i. 2 raf- saffier, v. i. 3 ramasser, v. i. 4 douze, adj. und.

5 panier, n. m. 6 plein, adj. 7 des morceaux qui estoient. 8 ceux, pron. nom. 9 qui, pron. 10 manger, v. i. 11 environ, adv. 12 mille, adj. und. 13 homme, n. m. 14 sans, prep. 15 femme, n. f. 16 enfant, plur. ans, n. m.

## XXVI. Christ 1 teacheth 2 out 3 of 3 Peter's 5 ship 4. A miraculous 7 draught 6 of fishes 8.

(A.) As 1 the people 2 pressed upon 3 Christ, to 4 hear 5 the word 6 of God 7, he stood 8 by 9 the lake 9 of Genné- fareth 10, and saw 11 two 12 ships standing 13 by the lake 13;

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Jésus Christ, n. m. 2 en- seigner, v. i. 3 du, prep. and art. 4 batteau, n. m. 5 pierre, n. m. 6 pêche, n. f. 7 miraculeux, euse, adj. 8 poisson, n. m.

(A.) 1 comme, conj. 2 peuple,

n. m. 3 presser, v. i. 4 pour, prep. 5 entendre, v. 6. 6 parole, n. f. 7 Dieu, n. m. 8 se tenir, v. 2. 9 sur le bord du lac. 10 Gén- zareth. 11 appercevoir, v. 3. 12 deux, adj. 13 qui but

but 14 the fishermen 15 were gone out 17 of 16 them 16, and were washing 18 their nets 19.

(B.) He entred 1 into 2 one 3 of the ships, which 4 was Simon's 5; and prayed 6 him that 7 he would thrust out 7 a little 8 from the land 9; and he sat down 10, and taught 11 the people out of the ship,

(C.) Now 1 when 2 he had left speaking 2, he said 3 to Simon, lanch out 4 into 5 the deep 5, and let down 6 your nets 7 for 8 a draught 8. Simon said to him, master 9, we have toiled 10 all 11 the night 12, and have taken 14 nothing 13; nevertheless 15 at 16 thy word 17 I will let down the net 18.

(D.) When 1 they had done 2 this, they enclosed 3 a great 4 multitude 5 of fishes; and their net brake 6. And they beckoned 7 to their partners 8 who 9 were in the other 10 ship, that 11 they should come and help them 11. They came 12 and filled 13 both 14 the ships 14, so 15 that 15 they began 16 to 17 sink 18.

### The DICTIONARY.

étoient près du rivage. 14 or.

15 pêcheur, n. m. 16 en,

pron. conj. 17 sortir, v. 2.

18 laver, v. 1. 19 filet,

n. m.

(B.) 1 entrer, v. 1. 2 dans,

prep. 3 un, adj. 4 qui,

pron. 5 à Simon. 6 prier,

v. 1. 7 de l'éloigner. 8 un peu.

9 rivage, n. m. 10 s'af-

feoir, v. 3. 11 enseigner,

v. 1.

(C.) 1 &, conj. 2 quand il

eut cessé de parler. 3 dire,

v. 4. 4 faites avancer le

bateau. 5 en pleine eau.

6 jettter, v. 1. 7 filet, n. m.

8 pour pêcher. 9 maître, n. m.

10 travailler, v. 1. 11 tout,

adj. 12 nuit, n. f. 13 rien,

n. m. 14 prendre, v. 6.

15 cependant, conj. 16 sur,

prep. 17 parole, n. f. 18

filet, n. m.

(D.) 1 quand, conj. 2 faire,

v. 5. 3 prendre, v. 6. 4

grand, adj. 5 quantité, n.

f. 6 rompre, v. 6. 7 faire

figne, v. 5. and n. m. 8

camarade, n. m. 9 qui,

pron. 10 autre, adj. 11 de

venir les aider. 12 venir,

v. 2. 13 remplir, v. 2. 14

les deux batteaux. 15 de

sorte que. 16 commencer, v.

8. 17 à, prep. 18 s'enfon-

cer, v. 1.

(E.)

(E.) When Simon Peter saw 1 it, he fell down 2 at 3 Jesus knees 4, saying, depart 5 from 6 me, O Lord 7, for 8 I am a 9 sinful man 9. For he was astonished 10 at 11 the draught 12 of the fishes which 12 they had taken, as 13 well as 13 those 14 who 15 were with 16 him.

(F.) Jesus said to Simon, fear 1 not; for henceforth 2 thou shalt catch 3 men 4; and when they had brought 5 their ships to 6 land 7, they forsook 8 all 9, and followed 10 him.

The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 voir, v. 3. 2 se jettter, v. 1. 3 aux, prep. and art.	15 qui, pron. 16 avec, prep.
4 genou, plur. eux, n. m. 5 retirer, v.-i. 6 de, prep. 7 seigneur, n. m. 8 car, conj.	(F.) 1 craindre, v. 6. 2 à l'avenir. 3 prendre, v. 6. 4 homme, n. m. 5 amener, v. i. 6 à, prep. 7 terrs,
9 un pêcheur. 10 étonner, v. i. 11 à la vue. 12 que, pron. 13 aussi bien que. 14 ceux, pron. nom.	n. f. 8 abandonner, v. i. 9 tout, n. m. 10 suivre, v. 4.

XXVII. The Centurion's 2 faith 1. Christ 3 healeth 4 his servant 5.

(A.) Christ having entered 1 Capernaum 2, a centurion 3, whose 4 servant was sick 5 and ready 6 to 7 die 8, sent 9 to him the elders 10 of the Jews 11, beseeching 12 him that 13 he would come and heal 13 his servant.

The DICTIONARY.

1 foi, n. f. 2 centurion, n. m. 3 Jésus Christ, n. m. 4 guérir, v. 2. 5 domestique, n. m.	malade, adj. 6 prêt, adj. 7 à, prep. 8 mourir, v. 2. 9 envoyer, v. i. 10 ancien, n. m. 11 Juif, n. m. 12 prier, v. i. 13 de venir guérir.
(A.) 1 entrer, v. i. 2 dans Capernaüm. 3 centurion, n. m. 4 dont, pron. 5	(B.) When

(B.) When 1 these men 2 came 3 to 4 Jesus, they besought 5 him instantly 6, saying 7, that 8 he was worthy for whom he should do this 8; for 9 he loveth 10 our nation 11, and he hath built 12 us a synagogue 13.

(C.) Then 2 Jesus went 1 with 3 them; and when he was not far 4 from 4 the house 5, the centurion sent friends 6 to him, saying to him, trouble 7 not thyself 7, for 8 I q am not worthy that thou shouldest enter 9 under 10 my roof 10. Wherefore 11 neither thought I myself worthy 11 to 12 come 13 unto 14 thee 14; but 15 say in 16 a word 17, and my servant 18 sha'l be healed 19.

(D.) When 1 Jesus heard these things 1, he 2 marvelled at him 2, and said to the people 3 that 4 followed 5 him, I say unto you, I have not found 6 so 7 great 8 faith 9, no 10, not in Israel 10.

(E.) And they 1 that 2 were sent 3 returning 4 to the house, found the servant whole 7, that 5 had been sick 6.

### The DICTIONARY.

(B.) 1 quand, conj. 2 gens,  
n. m. plur. 3 arriver, v.  
1. 4 près de. 5 prier, v.  
1. 6 instantanément, adv. 7  
dire, v. 4. 8 qu'il méritoit  
qu'on lui rendit ce service.  
9 car, conj. 10 aimer, v.  
1. 11 nation, n. f. 12 bâ-  
tir, v. 2. 13 synagogue,  
n. f.

(C.) 1 aller, v. 1. 2 donc.  
3 avec, prep. 4 loin de:  
5 maison, n. f. 6 ami,  
n. m. 7 s'incommoder, v. 1.  
8 car, conj. 9 je ne mérite  
pas que tu entres, 10 dans  
ma maison. 11 c'est pourquoi  
aussi je ne me suis pas jugé

digne. 12 de, prep. 13  
venir, v. 2. 14 te trouver.  
15 mais, conj. 16 dire, v.  
4. 17 parole, n. f. 18 do-  
mestique, n. m. 19 guérir,  
v. 2.

(D.) 1 Jesus ayant entendu  
ces choses. 2 il l'admirâ. 3  
peuple, n. m. 4 qui, pron.  
5 suivre, v. 4. 6 trouver,  
v. 1. 7 aussi. 8 grand,  
adj. 9 foi, n. f. 10 même  
en Israël.

(E.) 1 ceux, pron. nom. 2  
qui. 3 avoient été envoyés.  
4 retourner, v. 1. 5 qui.  
6 malade, adj. 7 guéri,  
p. p.

**XXVIII. Jairus's daughter raised from the dead.**

(A.) A ruler of the synagogue, called Jairus, came to Jesus, fell down at his feet, and besought him that he would come into his house to cure his only daughter who was a dying.

(B.) Jesus consented to go with him; and as they went along, there came one from the ruler of the synagogue's house, saying to his master, thy daughter is dead.

(C.) Jesus hearing this, said to the ruler of the synagogue, fear not, believe only, and thy daughter shall be made whole.

(D.) And when he came to the house, he suffered no man to go in, save Peter, James, John, and the father and mother of the girl.

**The DICTIONARY.**

1 fille, n. f. 2 Jairus, n. m.

3 ressusciter, v. i.

(A.) 1 un chef de synagogue. 2 nommé, p. p.

3 venir troubler, v. z. 4 se jettter, v.

1. 5 à, prep. 6 pied, n.

m. 7 prier, v. i. 8 de vouloir bien venir. 9 dans,

prep. 10 maison, n. f. 11

pour, prep. 12 guérir, v. z.

13 fille, n. f. 14 unique,

adj. 15 qui se mouroit.

(B.) 1 consentir, v. z. 2 de,

prep. 3 aller, v. i. 4 avec,

prep. 5 comme. 6 s'avancer, v. i. 7 il vint. 8 une

personne. 9 de chez le chef

de la synagogue. 10 qui dit.

11 maître, n. m. 12 mor-

rir, v. z. 13 incommoder,

v. i. 14 maître, n. m.

(C.) entendre, v. 6. 2 ceci,

pron. nom. 3 dire, v. 4. 4

croire, v. 5 croire, v.

5. 6 seulement, adv. 7 sera

guérie.

(D.) 1 quand, conj. 2 venir,

v. z. 3 il ne laisse entrer

personne. 4 excepté, conj.

5 Pierre, n. m. 6 Jacques,

n. m. 7 Jean, n. m. 8 pere,

n. m. 9 mere, n. f. 10 fille,

n. f.

(E.)

(E.) They all 2 wept 1 and bewailed 3 her; but 4 he said, *weep 5 not 5; she is not dead, but sleepeth 6;* and they laughed 7 him to 7 scorn 7, knowing 8 that 9 she was dead.

(F.) And he put 1 them all out 1, took 2 the girl by 3 the hand 4, and called 5, saying, *maid 6, arise 7.* And her spirit 8 came again 9; and she arose 10 straightway 11: And he commanded 12 to 13 give 14 her meat 15.

(G.) And her parents 1 were astonished 2; but he charged 3 them that 4 they should tell no man 4 what 5 was done 5.

### The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 *pleurer,* v. i. 2 *tout,*  
plur. *tous,* adj. 3 *plaindre,*  
v. 6. 4 *mai,* conj. 5 *ne*  
*pleurez point.* 6 *dormir,*  
v. 2. 7 *se moquer de,* v. i.  
8 *savoir,* v. 3. 9 *que,*  
conj.

7 *se lever,* v. i. 8 *esprit,*  
n. m. 9 *revenir,* v. 2. 10  
*se lever,* v. i. 11 à l'instant.  
12 *ordonner,* v. i. 13 *de,*  
prep. 14 *donner,* v. i. 15

(F.) 1 *faire sortir,* v. i. 2.  
2 *prendre,* v. 6. 3 *par,*  
prep. 4 *main,* n. f. 5 &  
*il l'appella.* 6 *fille,* n. f.

2 *étonner,* v. i. 3 *comman-*  
*der,* v. i. 4 *de ne dire à per-*  
*sonne.* 5 *ce qui étoit arrivé.*

### XXIX. Christ 1 washes 2 his disciples 4 feet 3.

(A.) Before 1 the 2 feast of the passover 2, Jesus having ended 3 his supper 4, rose 5 from 6 ~~table~~ 7, laid aside 8 his

### The DICTIONARY.

1 *Jésus Christ,* n. m. 2 *laver,*  
v. i. 3 *pied,* n. m. 4 *dis-*  
*ciple,* n. m.

(A.) 1 *avant,* prep. 2 *la*

*fête de pâque.* 3 *achever,* v.  
i. 4 *de souper.* 5 *se lever,*  
v. i. 6 *de,* prep. 7 *table,*  
n. f. 8 *ôter,* v. i. 9  
*garments,*

garments 9, took 10 a towel 11, girded 12 himself 12, pour-  
ed 13 water 14 into 15 a basin 16, and began 17 to 18  
wash his disciples feet, and to wipe 19 them with 20 the  
towel wherewith 21 he was girded 22.

(B.) When 1 he came 2 to Simon 3 Peter 4, Peter said 5  
unto him, *Lord* 6, *doest thou wash my feet?* Jesus answered 7,  
*what 10 I do 11 thou knowest 8 not now 9; but 12 thou 13 shalt*  
*know 13 hereafter 14.*

(C.) Peter said unto him, *thou shalt never 1 wash my feet.*  
Jesus answered him, *if I wash thee not, thou 2 hast no part 2*  
*with me.*

(D.) Simon Peter said unto him, *Lord, not 1 my 2 feet 2*  
*only 1, but 3 also 3 my 4 hands 4 and my 5 head 5.* Jesus said  
to him, *he 6 that 6 is washed 7, needeth 8 not, save to wash*  
*bis feet 8, for 9 he is clean 10 every whit 11; and ye are clean,*  
*but not 12 all 12.* For he knew 13 who 14 should betray  
him 14; therefore 15 said he, *ye are not all 16 clean.*

### The DICTIONARY.

habit, n. m. 10 prendre,  
v. 6. 11 serviette, n. f.  
12 s'en ceignit. 13 verser,  
v. i. 14 eau, n. f. 15 dans,  
prep. 16 bassin, n. m. 17  
commencer, v. i. 18 à prep.  
19 effuyer, v. i. 20 avec,  
prep. 21 dont. 22 cendre,  
v. 6.

(B.) quand, conj. 2 venir, v.  
2. 3 Simon, n. m. 4 Pierre,  
n. m. 5 dire, v. 4. 6 seigneur,  
n. m. 7 répondre, v. 6. 8  
savoir, v. 3. 9 à présent.  
10 ce que, pron. nom. 11  
faire, v. 5. 12 mais, conj.

13 tu le sauras. 14 dans la  
suite.

(C.) 1 Jamais, adv. 2 tu  
n'auras point de part.

(D.) 1 non seulement. 2 les pieds.  
3 mais aussi. 4 les mains.  
5 la tête. 6 celui qui. 7  
purifier, v. i. 8 a seule-  
ment besoin qu'on lui lave  
les pieds. 9 car, conj. 10  
net, adj. 11 partout, adv.  
12 non pas tous. 13 savoir,  
v. 3. 14 qui étoit celui qui  
devoit le trahir. 15 c'est  
pourquoi. 16 tout, plur. tous,  
adj.

(E.) So 1 after he had washed their feet 2, and 2 had taken 2 his garments, and 3 was set down again 3, he said unto them, know ye what I have done to you? ye call 4 me master 5 and lord; and ye say well 6; for so 7 I am 7. If 8 I do then 9, your 11 lord and master 11, have washed your feet, ye also 13 ought 12 to 14 wash one another's feet 14: for I 15 have given you an example 15, that 16 ye should do as 17 I have done to you.

## The DICTIONARY.

(E.) 1 ainsi donc après qu'il leur eût lavé les pieds. 2 qu'il eût repris. 3 & qu'il se fut remis à table. 4 appeller, v. 1. 5 maître, n. m. 6 bien, adv. 7 Je le suis. 8 si, conj. 9 donc. 10 moi, pron.

nom. 11 qui suis votre seigneur & votre maître. 12 devoir, v. 3. 13 aussi. 14 vous laver les pieds les uns aux autres. 15 Je vous ai montré l'exemple. 16 afin que. 17 comme, conj.

## XXX. Judas 1 betrays 2 Jesus 3.

(A.) One 1 of the twelve 2 apostles 3, called 4 Judas Iscariot 5, went unto 6 the chief 7 priests 8, and said 9 unto them, what 10 will you give 11 me, and I will deliver 12 Jesus unto you? and 13 they covenanted with him for 13 thirty 14 pieces 15 of silver 16.

(B.) One day 1 that 2 Jesus was at 3 a place 4 named 5 Gethsemane, a great 6 multitude 7 came 8 from 9 them 9

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Judas, n. m. 2 trahir, v.  
2. 3 Jésus, n. m.  
(A.) 1 un, adj. 2 douze, adj.  
und. 3 apôtre, n.m. 4 appeler,  
v. 1. 5 Iscariot, n.m. 6  
aller trouver, v. 1. 7 principal,  
plur. aux, adj. 8 sacrificeur,  
n. m. 9 dire, v. 4.  
10 que, pron. nom. 11  
danner, v. 1. 12 livrer, v.

1. 13 & ils convinrent de  
lui donner. 14 trente, adj.  
und. 15 piece, n. f. 16 ar-  
gent, n. m.  
(B.) 1 Jour, n. m. 2 que. 3  
à, prep. 4 endroit, n. m.  
5 nommer, v. 1. 6 grand,  
adj. 7 troupe de gens. 8  
venir, v. 2. 9 de leur part.  
with

with 10 swords 11 and staves 12 in 13 order to seize him 13. Judas was with them; and he had given them a sign 14, saying, *whomsoever 15 I shall kiss 16, that 17 same is Jesus 17, hold 18 him fast 18.*

(C.) When 1 he was near 2 Jesus, he said unto him, *bail 3, master 4;* and he kissed 5 him. Jesus said unto him, *friend 6,* *wberefore 7 art thou come?* Then came they, and laid 8 hands 9 on 10 Jesus, and took 11 him.

The DICTIONARY.

10 avec, prep.	11 épée, n.	3 je te salue.	4 maître,
f. 12 bâton. n. m.	13 pour	n. m. 5 baiser, v. 1.	6
Se saifer de lui.	14 signal,	ami, n. m. 7 pourquoi, adv.	
n. m. 15 colui que.	16 bai-	8 mettre, v. 4. 9 main, n. f.	
ser, v. 1. 17 c'est Jésus.	ser,	10 sur, prep. 11 se saifer	
18 saisissez vous de lui.		de, v. 2. and prep.	

(C.) 1 quand, conj. 2 près de.

XXXI. Jesus 1 is crucified 2.

(A.) Jesus being condemned 1 to 2 be crucified 3, the soldiers 4 of the governor 5 of the Jews 6 took 7 him into 8 the common 9 hall 9, stripped 10 him, put on 11 him a scarlet 13 robe 12, put 14 a crown of thorns upon 14 his 15 head 15, and a reed 16 in 17 his right 19 hand 18, bowed 20

The DICTIONARY.

1 Jésus, n. m.	2 crucifier,	v. 1. 11 revêtir de, v. 2. and
		prep. 12 robe, n. f. 13 d'écar-
(A.) 1 condamner, v. 1.	2 à,	late. 14 lui mirent une cou-
prep. 3 crucifier, v. 1. 4		ronne d'épine sur. 15 la tête.
soldat, n. m. 5 gouverneur,		16 roseau, n. m. 17 à,
n. m. 6 juif, n. m. 7 me-		prep. 18 la main. 19
ner, v. 1. 8 dans, prep. 9		droit, adj. 20 flétrir, v. 2.
prétoire, n. m. 10 dépouiller,		

the

240. EXERCISES upon the

the knee 21 before 22 him, and mocked 23 him, saying 24,  
hail 25, king 26 of the Jews.

(B.) They also 2 spit 1 on 3 him 4, took 5 the reed and smote 6 him on 7 the head 7; and after 8 they had mocked him, they 9 took the robe off from him 9, put 10 his own raiment on him 10, and led 11 him away 11 to 12 crucify him.

(C.) There 3 were 3 also 3 two 1 malefactors 2 led 3 with 4 him to 5 be put 6 to death 7; and when 8 the soldiers were come 9 to 10 a place 10 called 11 Calvary 12, they crucified him and 13 the malefactors 13, one 14 on his right 14, and 15 the other on his left 15.

(D.) Then 1 Jesus said 2 father 3, forgive 4 them 4; for 5 they know 6 not what 7 they do 8; and they 9 parted 9 his raiments & 10 cast lots 10.

(E.) The people 1 stood 2 beholding 2; and 3 the rulers 3

The DICTIONARY.

21 genou, n. m. 22 devant, prep. 23 se mocquer de, v. 1. and prep. 24 dire, v. 4. 25 nous te saluons. 26 roi, n. m.

(B.) 1 cracher, v. 1. 2 aussi, 3 sur, prep. 4 lui, pron. nom. 5 prendre, v. 6. 6 frapper, v. 1. 7 sur la tête. 8 après que. 9 ils lui ôtèrent la robe. 10 le revêtirent de ses propres vêtemens. 11 emmener, v. 1. 12 pour, prep.

(C.) 1 deux, adj. 2 malfaiteur, n. m. 3 furent aussi menés. 4 avec, prep. 5 pour, prep. 6 mettre à, v. 4. 7 mort, n. f.

8 quand, conj. 9 arriver, v. 1. 10 au lieu. 11 appeler, v. 1. 12 calvaire, n. m. 13 & crucifierent avec lui les malfaiteurs. 14 l'un à sa droite. 15 & l'autre à sa gauche.

(D.) 1 alors, adv. 2 dire, v. 4. 3 mon pere. 4 pardonne leur. 5 car, conj. 6 savoir, v. 3. 7 ce que pron. nom. 8 faire, v. 5. 9 ils firent plusieurs parts de. 10 & les tirerent au sort.

(E.) 1 peuple, n. m. 2 se tournait debout, en le regardant. 3 & les chefs de la sinagogut.

derided 4 him saying, *he has saved 5 others 6, let him save himself 7, if 8 he be Christ 9 the chosen 10 of God 11*

(G.) The soldiers also mocked him, coming to 1 him, offering 2 him vinegar 3 and saying, *if thou be the king of the Jews, save 4 thyself 4.* They put also over 5 him 5 this superscription 6, *this 7 is the king of the Jews.*

(H.) One 1 of the malefactors, who 2 were crucified with him, railed on 3 him, saying, *if thou be Christ, save thyself and 4 us 4; but 5 the other 6 rebuked 7 him, saying, dost thou not fear 8 God, seeing 9 thou art in 10 the same condemnation 11?* *We 12 indeed justly 12; but this man 13 has 14 done nothing amiss 14.*

(I.) He said unto Jesus, *Lord 1, remember 2 me, when 3 thou comest 3 into 4 thy kingdom 5;* and Jesus said unto him, *verily 6 I say unto thee, to day 7 thou shalt be with me in 8 paradise 9.*

(K.) It 1 was 1 about 2 the sixth 3 hour 4, and 5 there

The DICTIONARY.

4 se moquer de, v. i. 5 sauver, v. i. 6 autre, n. m. 7 lui-même, pron. nom. 8 si, conj. 9 le Christ. 10 élue, n. m. 11 Dieu, n. m.

(G.) 1 s'approcher de, v. i. 2 offrir, v. i. 3 vinaigre, n. m. 4 sauve toi toi-même. 5 au dessus de sa tête. 6 inscription, n. f. 7 celui-ci, pron. nom.

(H.) 1 l'un. 2 qui, pron. 3 railler, v. i. 4 & nous sauve aussi. 5 mais, conj. 6 l'autre. 7 reprendre, v. b. 8 craindre, v. b. 9 vu que.

10 sous, prep. 11 condamna-  
tion, n. f. 12 pour nous, nous  
souffrons justement. 13 homme,  
n. m. 14 n'a point fait de  
mal.

(I.) 1 seigneur, n. m. 2 se souvenir de, v. 2. 3 quand tu seras arrivé. 4 dans, prep. 5 royaume, n. m. 6 en vérité. 7 aujourd'hui, adv. 8 dans, prep. 9 pa-  
radis, n. m.

(K.) 1 ceci arriva. 2 vers,  
prep. 3 sixième, adj. 4  
heure, n. f. 5 il y eut.

212 EXERCISES upon the

Was 5 a darkness 6 all 7 over the earth 7 until 8 the ninth 9 hour 10. When 11 Jefus had faid 11 with 12 a loud voice 12, *father 13, into 16 thy bands 17 I commend 14 my spirit 15,* he gave up 18 the ghost 19.

(E) Now 1 when the centurion saw 1 what 2 was done 3, he glorified 4 God, saying, *certainly 5 this 6 was a righteous 8 man 7.* And all 9 the people 9, that 10 came 11 together 11 to that sight 12, beholding 13 the things 14 which 15 were done 16, smote 17 their breast 17 and 18 returned 18 home 19.

The DICTIONARY.

2 6 des tenebres. 7 par toute  
la terre. 8 jusqu'à. 9 neu-  
vième, adj. 10 heure, n. f.  
11 Jésus ayant dit. 12 à  
haute voix. 13 mon pere.  
14 remettre, v. 4. 15 âme,  
n. f. 16 dans, prep. 17  
main, n. f. 18 rendre, v. 6.  
19 esprit, n. m.  
(la) 1 Le centurion ayant vu.  
2 ce que, pron. nom. 3  
troit arrivé. 4 glorifier, v.

1. 5 certainement, adv. 6  
celui-ci, pron. nom. 7  
bonne, n. m. 8 juste, adj.  
9 tous ceux. 10 qui, pron.  
11 étoient venus. 12  
spectacle, n. m. 13 voir, v.  
3. 14 chose, n. f. 15 qui,  
pron. 16 s'étoient passées.  
17 se frapperent la poitrine.  
18 & s'en retournèrent. 19  
eux eux.



XXXII.

XXXII. Jesus 1 is buried 2.

(A) When 1 the even was come 1, there 2 came 2 a rich 4 man 3 of Arimathea 5, named 6 Joseph 7, who 8 also himself was 8 Jesus disciple 9. He 10 went to 10 Pilate 11, and 12 begged 12 the body 13 of Jesus; then 15 Pilate commanded 14 the 16 body to be delivered 16.

(B.) When 1 Joseph had taken 1 the body, he wrapped 2 it in 3 a clean linnen cloth 3, and laid 4 it in 5 his 11 own 11 tomb 6, which 7 he had hewn out 8 in 9 the rock 10; and he rolled 12 a great 13 stone 14 to 15 the door 15 of the se-pulchre 16 and departed 17.

(C.) Now 1 the next day 1 that 2 followed the day of the preparation 2, the 3 chief priests 3 and the Pharisees 4 came 5 together 6 unto 7 Pilate 7, saying 8,

(D.) Sir 1, we remember 2 that 3 that deceiver 4, said 5,

The DICTIONARY.

1 Jésus, n. m. 2 est mis dans le tombeau.

(A.) 1 le soir étant arrivé. 2 il vint. 3 bonne, n.m. 4 riche, adj. 5 Arimathe, n. f. 6 nommer, v. i. 7 Joseph, n. m. 8 qui étoit aussi. 9 disciple, n. m. 10 il alla trouver. 11 Pilate, n. m. 12 & lui demanda. 13 corps, n. m. 14 ordonner, v. i. 15 donc. 16 qu'on le lui remet.

(B.) 1 Joseph ayant emporté. 2 envelopper. 3 dans un lin-ceil blanc. 4 mettre, v. 4. 5 dans, prep. 6 le tombeau.

7 que, pron. 8 creuser, v. i. 9 dans, prep. 10 roc, n. m. 11 pour lui même. 12 rouler, v. i. 13 grand, adj. 14 pierre, n. f. 15 à l'entrée. 16 sépulcre. 17 s'en aller, v. i.

(C.) 1 le lendemain. 2 qui étoit le jour d'après la prépara-tion. 3. les principaux d'entre les prêtres. 4 pharisen, n. m. 5 aller, v. i. 6 en corps. 7 trouver Pilate. 8 et lui dirent.

(D.) 1 seigneur, n. m. 2 se re-jouvenir, v. 2. 3 que, conj. 4 séduiseur, n. m. 5 dire, v.

244 EXERCISES upon the

whilst 6 he was yet 7 alive 8, after 9 three 10 days 11 I will rise 12 again 12. Command 13, therefore 14 that 15 the sepulchre be made sure 15 until 16 the 16 thrid 17 day, lest 18 his disciples 19 come 20 by night, and steal him away and say 20 unto the people 21, he is risen from 22 the dead 22; so 23 the last error shall be worse than 23 the first 24.

(E.) Pilate said unto them, ye have a watch 1, go 2 your way 2, make 3 it as sure as you can 3. So 5 they went 4 and made 6 the sepulchre sure 6, sealing 7 the stone 8 and 9 setting a watch 9.

The DICTIONARY.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 4. 6 lorsque. 7 encore, adv.<br>8 en vie. 9 dans, prep. 10<br>trois, adj. 11 jour, n. m.<br>ressusciter, v. i. 13 com-<br>mander, v. i. 14 donc, adv.<br>15 qu'on garde le sépulcre.<br>16 jusqu'au. 17 troisième,<br>adj. 18 de peur que. 19<br>disciple, n.m. 20 ne viennent<br>l'enlever de nuit & ne disent,<br>21 peuple, n. m. 22 des | morts. 23 la dernière erreur<br>seroit pire que. 24 première,<br>adj.<br>(E) 1 garde, n. f. 2 s'en aller,<br>v. i. 3 faites le garder aussi<br>bien que vous pourrez. 4 s'en<br>aller, v. i. 5 donc, adv.<br>6 s'assurer du, v. i. prep.<br>and art. 7 en apposant leur<br>sceau sur. 8 pierre. n. f. 9<br>& posant des gardes. |
|---|---|

XXXIII. Jesus 1 riseth 2 from 3 the dead 4.

(A.) In 1 the end 2 of the sabbath 3, as 4 it began to dawn towards the first day of the week 4, came 8 Mary 5 Magdalene 6 and the other 7 Mary to see 9 the sepulchre 10.

(B.) And 1 behold there was 1 a great 2 earthquake 3; for 4 the angel 5 of the Lord 6 descended 7 from 8 heaven 9,

The DICTIONARY.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Jésus, n. m. 2 ressusciter,<br>v. i. 3 des, prep. and art.<br>4 mort, n. m.<br>(A.) 1 à, prep. 2 fin, n. f.<br>3 sabbath, n.m. 4 comme le<br>premier jour de la semaine<br>commençoit à paroître. 5 Ma-<br>rie, n.f. 6 Magdalaine, n.f. 7 | autre, adj. 8 aller, v. i. 9<br>voir, v.3. 10 sépulcre, n. m.<br>(B.) 1 & il se fit. 2 grand,<br>adj. 3 tremblement de terra.<br>4 car, conj. 5 ange, n. m.<br>6 seigneur, n. m. 7 de-<br>cendre, v. 6. 8 du, prep.<br>and art. 9 ciel, n. m. 10 |
|---|--|

and rolled back 10 the 11 stone from the door 11 and sat 12 upon 13 it 13.

(C.) And his countenance 1 was like 2 lightning 3, and his raiment 4 white 5, as snow 5 for 6 fear of him the keepers did shake 6 and 7 became as dead 7 men.

(E.) And the angel said 1 to the women 2, fear 3 not ye, for I know 4 that 5 ye seek 6 Jesus, who 7 was crucified 7. He is not here 8; for he is risen as 9 he said 9; come 10, see 11 the place 12 where 13 the 14 Lord laid 14, and 15 go quickly, and tell 15 his disciples 16 that 17 he is risen from the dead; and 18 behold he goeth 18 before 21 you 21 into 19 Galilee 20, there 22 shall ye see him 22, lo 23, I have told you 23.

(F.) They departed 1 quickly 2 from 3 the sepulchre, with 4 fear 5 and with great 6 joy 7, and did run 8 to bring 9 his 11 disciples 11 word 10. And 12 behold, Jesus met them, saying 12, all 13 hail 13;

(G.) And 1 they came 1, and held 2 him by the feet 2,

### The DICTIONARY.

*renverser*, v. i. 11 la pierre de l'entrée. 12 s'affoier, v. 3. 13 dessus.

(C.) 1 visage, n. m. 2 comme, conj. 3 un éclair. 4 vêtement, n. m. 5 aussi blanc que la neige. 6 ses gardes en furent saisis d'une si grande frayeur. 7 qu'ils devinrent comme morts.

(E.) 1 dire, v. 4. 2 femme, n. f. 3 craindre, v. 6. 4 savoir, v. 3. 5 que, conj. 6 chercher, v. i. 7 qui a été crucifié. 8 ici, adv. 9 comme il l'avoit dit. 10 venir, v. 2. 11 voir, v. 3. 12 lieu, n. m. 13 où, adv. 14 on avoit mis le seigneur.

15 bâterez vous d'aller dire à. 16 disciple, n. m. 17 que, conj. 18 il s'en va. 19 en, prep. 20 Galilée, n. f. 21 où il sera avant vous. 22 vous l'y verrez. 23 c'est de quoi je vous avertis.

(F.) 1 sortir, v. 2. 2 aussitôt. 3 du, prep. and art. 4 avec, prep. 5 crainte, n. f. 6 grand, adj. 7 joie, n. f. 8 courir, v. 2. 9 porter, y. 1. 10 cette nouvelle. 11 à ses disciples. 12 mais Jésus vint au devant d'elles & leur dit. 13 je vous salue.

(G.) 1 Et elles s'approchèrent de lui. 2. lui embrassèrent les pieds. 3 adorer, v. i. 4

and worshipped 3 him. Then 4 Jesus said unto them, be 5  
not afraid 5, go 6 tell 7 my brethren 8 that 9 they go 9 into 10  
Galilee: there 11 shall they see me 11.

## The DICTIONARY

alors, adv. 5 ne craignez m. 9 qu'ils aillent. 10 en,  
rien. 6 aller, v. 1. 7 dire à, prep. 11 ils me verront là.  
v. 4. and prep. 8 frère, n.

## XXXIV. Jesus 1 sendeth 2 his disciples 3 to 4 baptize 5 and teach 6 all 7 nations 7.

(A.) Jesus being risen 1 from 2 the dead 2, some 3 of  
the watch 3 came 4 unto the city 5, and shewed 6 unto the  
chief 7 priests 8 all 9 the things 10 that 11 were 12 done 12.

(B.) And 1 when they were assembled 1 with 2 the el-  
ders 3, and 4 had taken counsel 4, they gave 5 large 6 mo-  
ney 6 unto the soldiers 7, saying 8, say 9 ye, that 10 his dis-  
ciples came 11 by 12 night 12 and 13 stole him away 13 while 14  
we slept 15; and if 16 this 17 come 18 to 19 the governor's 21  
ears 20, give 21 will persuade 22 him and secure 23 you.

## The DICTIONARY.

1 Jésus, n. m. 2 envoyer, v.  
3 disciple, n. m. 4 pour,  
prep. 5 baptiser, v. 1. 6  
enseigner, v. 1. 7 toutes les  
nations.

(A.) 1 ressusciter, v. 1. 2 des  
morts. 3 quelques uns des  
gardes. 4 venir, v. 2. 5  
ville, n. f. 6 rapporter, v.  
1. 7 principal, plur. aux,  
adj. 8 prêtre, n. m. 9 tout,  
adj. 10 chose, n. f. 11 qui,  
pron. 12 étoient arrivées.

(B.) 1 ceux-ci s'étant assemblés.  
2 avec, prep. 3 ancien, n.

m. 4 après avoir délibéré  
ensemble. 5 donner, v. 1. 6  
une grosse somme d'argent. 7  
soldat, n. m. 8 & leur  
dirent. 9 dire, v. 4. 10 que,  
conj. 11 sont venus. 12 pen-  
dant la nuit. 13 & l'ont en-  
levé. 14 pendant que. 15  
dormir, v. 2. 16 si, conj.  
17 ce/la, pron. nom. 18 vir-  
nir, v. 2. 19 aux, art. 20  
oreille, n. f. 21 gouverneur,  
n. m. 22 gagner, v. 1. 23  
mettre à couvert, v. 4. prep.  
and n. m.

(C.)

Various Parts of FRENCH SPEECH. 247

(C.) They took 1 the money 2, and did 3 as 4 they were taught 4; and this saying 5 is 6 reported among the Jews 6 until 7 this day 8.

(D.) Then 1 the eleven 2 disciples 3 went 4 away 4 into 5 Galilee 5, into 6 a mountain 7, where 8 Jesus had 9 appointed them 9; and 10 when they saw him 10, they worshipped 11 him; but 13 some 12 doubted 14.

(E.) And 1 Jesus came, and spoke unto them, saying 1, all 2 power 3 is 4 given unto me 4 in 5 heaven 6 and in 7 earth 8. Go 9 ye therefore 10, and 11 teach 11 all nations 12, baptizing 13 them in 14 the name 14 of the Father 15, of the Son 16 and of the Holy 17 Ghost 18, teaching 19 them to 20 observe 21 all 22 things whatsoever 22 I have commanded 23 you; and 24 lo, I am with you always 24, even 25 unto 25 the end 26 of the world 27.

The DICTIONARY.

(C.) 1 prendre, v. 6. 2 argent, n. m. 3 faire, v. 5. 4 ce qu'on leur avait ordonné. 5 fausseté, n. f. 6 a couru parmi les juifs. 7 jusqu'à. 8 jour, n. m.

(D.) 1 or. 2 onze. adj. und. 3 disciple, n. m. 4 s'en aller, v. i. 5 en Galilée. 6 sur, prep. 7 montagne, n. f. 8 où, adv. 9 leur avoit ordonné de se rendre. 10 & le voyant. 11 adorer, v. i. 12 quelques uns. 13 néanmoins, conj. 14 douter, v. i.

(E.) 1 mais Jésus s'approchant,

leur dit. 2 tout, adj. 3 pouvoir, n. m. 4 m'a été donné. 5 days, prep. 6 ciel, n. m. 7 sur, prep. 8 terre, n. f. 9 aller, v. i. 10 donc. 11 enseigner. 12 nation, n. f. 13 baptiser, v. i. 14 au nom. 15 pere, n. m. 16 fils, n. m. 17 saint, adj. 18 esprit, n. m. 19 enseigner, v. i. 20 à, prep. 21 observer, v. i. 22 toutes les choses que. 23 commander, v. i. 24 & je serai toujours avec vous. 25 jusqu'à. 26 fin, n. f. 27 monde, n. m.

F I N I S.

(C.)

For the Use of SCHOOLS.

BOOKS printed by J. NOURSE, at the  
*Lamb against Katherine Street in the Strand.*

I. LES AVANTURES DE GIL BLAS DE SANTILLANE,  
par M. Le Sage; 4 Vol. 18mo. Nouv. Edition, avec  
des figures.

II. LE DIABLE BOITEUX, par M. Le Sage 18mo avec  
des Figures.

III. LES AVANTURES DE TELEMAQUE Fils d'Ulysse  
par Francois de Salignac de la Mothe Fenelon, 12mo.  
avec un petit Dictionnaire Mythologique, Nouv. Edition  
revue exactement sur les Precedentes & corrigée  
avec soin & enrichie de figures en taille douce, 12mo.

1757.

IV. LES VOYAGES DE CYRUS, avec un discours sur la  
Mythologie, par le-Chevalier Ramsay, 12mo.  
Nouv. Edition.

V. LE NOUVEAU TESTAMENT, Nouv. Edition revue  
sur le Texte de M. Martin, 12mo. par M. D.  
Durand 12mo.

VI. METHODE pour apprendre facilement l'Histoire Ro-  
maine, Sixième Edition, corrigée & augmentée,

1757.

VII. ESTHER, Tragédie tirée de l'Ecriture Sainte par M.  
Racine Nouv. Edition revue avec soin, ponctuée à  
l'usage de la Jeunesse qu'on veut former à une Pro-  
nunciation correcte, par M. D. Durand, 8vo.

VIII. NEW AND FAMILIAR DIALOGUES in French and  
English, by Claudio Arnoux, the Third Edition.

IX. THE GROUNDS of the French Tongue, and the Diffe-  
rence between the English and French Idioms. By  
C. Arnoux.

X. NOUVELLE METHODE pour apprendre à bien lire & à  
bien orthographier en deux parties, par J. Palairat.

XI. LA LITURGIE ou Formulaire des Prieres publiques  
selon l'Usage de l'Eglise Anglicane, 12mo. Nouvelle  
Edition, 12mo.